This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 00605703 2

SIR JOHN FROISSART'S

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,

AND THE

ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

By THOMAS JOHNES

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,
He moste reherse, as neighe as ever he can,
Everich worde, if it be in his charge,
All speke he never so rudely and so large;
Or elles he moste tellen his tale untrewe,
Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE SECOND EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. VII.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW;
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.
1805.

NEW-YORK.

REPAIR No. 0 2 5 4 '07

Brooke, Printer,
Paternoster Row.

THE

CONTENTS

OF

THE SEVENTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I. The Duchess of Anjou urges her Claim to the Possession of Provence.—Galeas Visconti, Count de Vertus, orders his Uncle Barnabo Visconti to be imprisoned - - Page 1

II. William de Lignac, Seneschal of Saintonge for the King of France, conquers from the English the Castle of Aigle.—The Army of the Duke of Bourbon takes Montlieu, and the Bridge of Taillebourg while besieging that place 6

III. Sir John de Vienne, Admiral of France, arrives in Scotland with his Army.—He meets with bad Treatment there - 12

IV. The Town of Ardembourg narrowly escapes being taken by Surprise by Francis Atremen and his Ghent Men 18

V. Lewis of France, Brother to King Charles VI. is married by Procuration to Margaret of Hungary.—Madame de Brabant causes the Daughter of Duke Stephen of Bavaria to come to France to marry King Charles - - 22

CHAP.

CHAP. VI. Francis Atremen takes Damme.—Those of Bruges attempt to retake it 31

VII. King Charles espouses the Lady Isabella of Bavaria.—He besieges Damme - - - 34

VIII. Some Citizens of Sluys are beheaded for Treason to the French.—The Duke of Burgundy acquires Sluys from Sir William de Namur; by an Exchange for the Lands of Bethune 37

IX. Francis Atremen and his Men abandon Damme.—The Town is destroyed by the French: they also ruin the Country of the Quatre Mestiers - 40

X. The King of France leaves Flanders, and disbands his Army.—During the Time he is at Paris, treating with Ambassadors from Hungary, News arrives that the Marquis de Blancquefort had forcibly married the Heiress of Hungary - - 44

XI. The Duke of Bourbon takes Verteuil in Poitou, and returns to the King of France at Paris - - 50

XII. The Scottish Army with that of the Admiral of France enter Northumberland,—but, the English being on their March to meet them, they retreat within the Borders - - 52

XIII. Sir John Holland kills Lord Ralph Stafford.—The Earl of Stafford demands Justice from the King - 59

XIV. The King of England destroys the Abbey of Melrose in Scotland.—The Barons of France and Scotland invade Cumberland - - 64

CHAP.

CHAP. XV. The King of England destroys Edinburgh, and great Part of Scotland.—The French and Scots do the same on the Borders and in Northumberland - - - - 68

XVI. The Earl of Suffolk prevents the King of England from pursuing the French and Scots who had invaded England.—The English Army return Home the same way they had entered Scotland.—The French and Scots return in a similar Manner - 72

XVII. The Scots treat the Admiral of France and his Men very harshly.—They return to France - - 76

XVIII. The State of Flanders.—Two honest Burgesses of Ghent negotiate secretly a Peace with the Duke of Burgundy, with the Assent of Francis Atremen - - - 82

XIX. The two Citizens fix on a Day to assemble their Friends, to accomplish their Plan.—All Ghent are unanimous for Peace, notwithstanding the Attempts to prevent it by the Governor for the King of England and Peter du Bois - - - 89

XX. Sir John d'Elle brings Letters Patent of Peace and Pardon to the Men of Ghent, from the Duke of Burgundy.—This Peace is confirmed at Tournay, by other Letters Patent on each Side - - - 94

CHAP. XXI. The Treaty of Peace between Duke Philip of Burgundy, Earl of Flanders, in right of his Wife, with the Town of Ghent and its Allies - 9

XXII. Peter du Bois, after the conclusion of the Peace, retires to England with the Lord Bourchier, Governor of Ghent - - - 10

XXIII. Froissart gives his Reasons for visiting the Count de Foix - - 11

XXIV. A short Repetition of what is contained in some of the preceding Chapters, for the better Understanding the History of the War between King John of Castille and the Bastard of Portugal, Brother to the late King Don Fernando - 11

XXV. The Count de Foix, at the Entreaty of the Princess of Wales, remits the Count d'Armagnac Sixty Thousand Francs out of his Ransom of Two Hundred and Fifty Thousand.—The English Garrison at Lourde governs the adjoining Country - 12

XXVI. Sir John Froissart, in his Journey towards Bearn, is accompanied by a Knight attached to the Count de Foix, who relates to him how the Garrison of Lourde took Ortingas and Le Pallier, on the renewal of the War in Guyenne, after the Rupture of the Peace of Bretigny - - - - 13

CHAP. XXVII. Sir John Froissart and the Knight of Foix arrive at Casseres, where the Knight relates to him the Capture of the Town by the Armagnacs, and also the Recapture of it by the Count de Foix; and, as they journey, they converse on different Feats of Arms between the Armagnacs and Foixiens - - 139

XXVIII. Froissart continues his Journey with the Knight of Foix, who relates to him several Particulars relative to the Sieges of Brest and Derval, and how the Duke of Anjou recovered Malvoisin and Trigalet from the English - - 149

XXIX. Froissart continues his Journey: in travelling from Tournay to Tarbes, the Knight relates to him how the Garrison of Lourde had a sharp Rencouter with the French from the adjacent Garrisons,—with several Particulars touching the Siege of Lourde, and the Death of the Governor, who would not surrender it to his Relation the Count de Foix - - 162

XXX. During the Journey from Tarbes to Morlens, the Knight of Foix relates to Froissart the Quarrel and Reconciliation between the Duke of Berry and the Count de Foix,—and also the Cause of the War between him and the Count d'Armagnac 178

CHAP. XXXI. Sir John Froissart arrives at Orthes.—An old Squire relates to him the cruel Death of the only Son of the Count de Foix, and how strange Dreams affected Sir Peter de Bearn, Bastard-Brother to the Count - - 192

XXXII. The Count de Foix holds solemn Festivals on the Feast of St. Nicholas and at Christmas; during which Froissart becomes acquainted with Bastot de Mauleon, who relates to him, among other things, how several of the Captains of the free Companies were defeated before the Town of Sancerre,—how he surprised the Town of Thurie in the Albigeois, and how one of the Name of Limousin revenged an Outrage committed against him by Louis Raimbaut - - 212

XXXIII. A short Recapitulation of what has been before said, of the War between King John of Castille and John of Portugal.—This Subject continued - - 237

XXXIV. The Inhabitants of Santaren rebel against some of the Men at Arms of Castille.—The King of Castille, having raised the Siege of Lisbon, marches towards that Town, when it makes its Peace - - - 247

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV. The Spaniards are jealous of the French and Bearnois. — Five Hundred English arrive to serve the King of Portugal - - 254

XXXVI. The King of Portugal issues his Orders for the Army to march towards Santaren.—The King of Castille quits that Place to meet him - - - 259

XXXVII. The Portuguese fortify themselves, near the Church of Aljubarota, by the Advice of the English.—King John of Castille, through the Counsel of the French and Bearnois, resolves to fight them. —The Hatreds and Jealousies of the Castillians still continue against the Foreigners - - 267

XXXVIII. The Battle of Aljubarota, in which the French and Bearnois, in the Interest of Castille, are defeated and slain by the Portuguese, from not being properly supported by the Castillians, who were jealous of them.—They afterwards meet the same Fate - 277

XXXIX. The King of Castille, after his Defeat at Aljubarota, retreats to Santaren.—The King of Portugal returns to Lisbon.—A Truce is concluded between them - 286

XL. The Count de Foix is rapidly, and in a secret Manner, informed of what had happened at Aljubarota.—Froissart, in consequence of this, relates a Story which had been told him of a familiar Spirit, called Orthon, who served the Lord de Corasse in the like manner 292

CHAP

CHAP. XLI. Siege is laid to Brest.—St. Forget and several other English Garrisons in the Environs of Toulouse are recovered by the French - - 303

XLII. The Castle of Convalle is stormed by the French.—Some other Fortresses turn to the French Interest - 317

XLIII. A short Digression on the Manners of the English and Gascons in the Time of Froissart - - 324

XLIV. The Arrival of Leon, King of Armenia, in France: on which Occasion, Froissart describes the State of Genoa in his Time, and relates the Death of the King of Cyprus 327

XLV. The King of Armenia relates many Stories of the Turks and Tartars 333

XLVI. Continuation of the Intelligence which the King of Armenia relates to the Barons of France - 339

XLVII. During these Wars of the Turks, Dissentions continue between the two Popes, Urban VI. and Clement VII.——Friar John de la Roche-Taillard delivers a good Apologue, respecting the Papacy, to the Cardinals - - 349

XLVIII. The Reasons why the Portuguese prefer the Grand Master of Avis for their King to Don John, King of Castille, who had married Beatrice, Daughter of Don Ferdinand, late King of Portugal - 357

XLIX. Froissart travels to Middleburgh in Zealand, to make Inquiries from a Knight, who is going to Prussia, of the Affairs of Portugal - - 361

CHAP.

CHAP. L. The Portuguese, after the Battle of Aljubarota, send Ambassadors to England to inform the King and his Nobles of that Event - - 364

LI. Lawrence Fongasse, one of the Ambassadors from Portugal to England, relates to the Duke of Lancaster the Events which had happened in Portugal since the Earl of Cambridge had left it - - - - 372

THE

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.

CHAP. I.

THE DUCHESS OF ANJOU URGES HER CLAIM TO THE POSSESSION OF PROVENCE.—GALEAS VISCONTI, COUNT DE VERTUS, ORDERS HIS UNCLE BARNABO VISCONTI TO BE IMPRISONED.

THUS was there confuſion in all parts of the world, as well between the kings of France and England as between John king of Caſtille and the king of Portugal, for the war there had been renewed.

Madame d'Anjou, who retained the title of queen of Naples and Jeruſalem, went to Avignon, where the pope reſided, and there kept her ſtate with her ſon Lewis, who ſtiled himſelf king of Sicily, which his father had conquered. The queen had intentions to make war on the Provençals, if they did not acknowledge her as their ſovereign lady and put themſelves under her obedience. Sir Bernard de la Salle had already entered Provence and declared war in her name.

At this time, the lord de Coucy was alſo at

Avignon; for he had been confined to his bed fifteen weeks from a bruiſe he had received on his leg during an excurſion on horſeback. On his recovery, he often viſited the queen, and comforted her much, as he was well able to do. She was expecting the duke of Berry, who was on his road to Avignon to hold a conference with the pope, to aſſiſt her.

The king of France and his uncles had ſent the lord Louis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, to Provence, with five hundred men at arms, to make war on the Provençals, if they did not ſubmit to the queen. Some had done ſo, but not all: however, the city of Marſeilles and the greater part had ſurrendered themſelves to her; but the cities of Aix and Taraſcon, and ſome knights of the country, refuſed to admit her claim to the county of Provence, until ſhe had been peaceably acknowledged as queen, and her ſon as king of la Puglia, Calabria, Naples and Sicily; and they ſaid, that when ſhe ſhould be in quiet poſſeſſion of the above, all Provence, as was juſt would obey her.

The count de Converſano and his ſon ſir John de Luxembourg made war for her in thoſe diſtant parts, againſt the lord Charles Durazzo. Sir John de Bueil remained with the queen, at Avignon, as her counſellor.

At this period, another marvellous event happened in Lombardy, which was the ſubject of general converſation. The count de Vertus, whoſe name was John Galeas Viſconti, and his uncle, were

were the greateſt perſonages in all Lombardy. Sir Galeas and ſir Bernabo were brothers, and had peaceably reigned and governed that country. One of theſe lords poſſeſſed nine cities, and the other ten: the city of Milan was under their government alternately, one year each. When ſir Galeas, the father of the count de Vertus, died, the affections of the uncle for his nephew were much weakened; and ſir Galeas ſuſpected, that now his father was dead, his uncle Bernabo would ſeize his lordſhips, in like manner as ſir Galeas, his father, and uncle Bernabo had done to their brother ſir Matthew, whom they had put to death.

The count de Vertus was very ſuſpicious, and plainly ſhewed that he had his fears of this event taking place. However, by his actions and the capture he made, he proved himſelf the more ſubtle of the two. I will relate the circumſtance.

Sir Bernabo heavily oppreſſed that part of Lombardy of which he was lord, and taxed his vaſſals two or three times a year, a half or a third of their wealth; but none dared to murmur againſt him. Sir Galeas, count de Vertus, to acquire popularity and praiſe, did not levy any taxes on his poſſeſſions, but ſimply lived on his rents. This mode he had followed for five years, ever ſince the death of his father, which gained him ſo much the love of the Lombards, that they all praiſed him, and lived happily under him; whilſt, on the contrary, they abuſed underhand ſir Bernabo, who would not leave them any thing.

The count de Vertus (who had formed his plan, and was acting accordingly, from the ſuſpicions he had of his uncle, and, as ſome ſaid, from appearances having been manifeſted, that confirmed them) iſſued a ſecret ſummons to thoſe in whom he confided the moſt: to ſome of whom he revealed his plan, but not to all, leſt it ſhould be made public. A day had been appointed by ſir Bernabo, to make an excurſion of pleaſure from one of his caſtles to another. Upon this, his nephew placed three ambuſcades on the road ſir Bernabo was to take; ſo that it was not poſſible but he muſt fall into one of them. He had ordered that he ſhould be made priſoner, and on no account killed, unleſs he made too obſtinate a defence.

Thus as ſir Bernabo was riding from one town to another, miſtruſting no evil, nor any way thinking of his nephew, but conſidering himſelf as perfectly ſafe, he entered one of the ambuſcades, when the men planted in ambuſh inſtantly advanced to him full ſpeed and with lances in their reſts. Sir Bernabo had a german knight with him, who cried out, 'My lord, ſave yourſelf! for I ſee people of a bad mien coming towards you, and I know them to be perſons belonging to your nephew ſir Galeas.' Sir Bernabo replied, that 'he was not acquainted with any place where he could ſave himſelf, if they had any evil intentions againſt him, and that he was unconſcious of having done any thing againſt his nephew that ſhould make him fly.' Thoſe who had been placed in ambuſcade continued advancing towards ſir Bernabo. When the German, who

who was a man of honour and knight of the body to ſir Bernabo, ſaw them thus approaching his lord, having the ſword of his maſter before him, he inſtantly drew it out of its ſcabbard and placed it in the hands of ſir Bernabo (which was ſeen by thoſe who were preſſing forward); and then the knight drew his own ſword, like a valiant man, and put himſelf on his defence. This, however, did not avail, for he as well as ſir Bernabo were immediately ſurrounded, and the knight was ſlain, under pretence that at the commencement he meant to defend himſelf; for whoſe death ſir Galeas was afterwards ſorely vexed.

Sir Bernabo was made priſoner without any defence made by him or his attendants, and carried to a caſtle where his nephew was, who much rejoiced on his arrival. That ſame day his wife and children that were marriageable were alſo arreſted, and confined by the lord of Milan, who took poſſeſſion of all the lordſhips, caſtles, towns and cities which ſir Bernabo held in Lombardy. His uncle died ſhortly after; but I know not by what means, though I believe it was from being bled in the neck, for in Lombardy they are accuſtomed to make ſuch bleedings when they wiſh to haſten the death of any one.

News of this was ſoon ſpread abroad: ſome were pleaſed at it, others vexed; for ſir Bernabo had in his time done ſo many acts of cruelty, and without reaſon, that few pitied him, ſaying, he had well deſerved it.

This was the end of ſir Bernabo Viſconti, who had reigned moſt powerfully in Lombardy.

CHAP. II.

WILLIAM DE LIGNAC, SENESCHAL OF SAINTONGE FOR THE KING OF FRANCE, CONQUERS FROM THE ENGLISH THE CASTLE OF AIGLE.—THE ARMY OF THE DUKE OF BOURBON TAKES MONTLIEU, AND THE BRIDGE OF TAILLEBOURG WHILE BESIEGING THAT PLACE.

WE will now return to the army which the duke of Bourbon and the count de la Marche conducted into Poitou and Limouſin. The duke left Moulins in the Bourbonnois, and marched with a handſome company of knights and ſquires to accompliſh his expedition, attended by John de Harcourt his nephew. The duke of Bourbon had iſſued his ſpecial ſummons for thoſe of Berry, Auvergne, Poitou, Rouergue, Saintonge and Limouſin, to aſſemble at Niort, twelve leagues from Poitiers. While this army was aſſembling, ſir William de Lignac, a valiant knight and ſénéſchal for the king of France of Saintonge, and governor of Millan *, reſided in that country. He advanced into the Angoumois with all his men at arms, to the amount of two hundred combatants, and halted before the caſtle of Aigle, which the Engliſh poſſeſſed, and from this place, during the winter and the preceding ſummer, they had exceedingly haraſſed the country.

* Millan. Q. if not Millac, which is in thoſe parts.

Sir

Sir William on his arrival at the caſtle diſmounted, and ordered his men to do the ſame, when they inſtantly began the attack. It was very ſevere and of long continuance, for thoſe within it fought for their lives. Sir William performed ſuch gallant deeds as proved him worthy of being their leader. He did not ſpare himſelf, and ſhewed how they ought to attack it. The place was at laſt taken by ſtorm, and the French, entering it by ladders, made priſoners of all that were found there, or put them to the ſword.

This firſt conqueſt this ſeaſon was made by ſir William de Lignac, as he was waiting for the duke of Bourbon and his army.

On the duke's arrival at Niort, he found plenty of men at arms impatient for his arrival. His couſin the count de la Marche, with a large body, the viſcount de Tonnerre, ſir Henry de Thouars, ſénéſchal of Limouſin, the lords de Pons, de Partenay, de Tours, de Pouſanges, and many other barons of Poitou and Saintonge were there. Sir William de Lignac came thither to wait on the duke, having conquered the caſtle de l'Aigle, for which the duke felt himſelf obliged to him.

When all theſe men at arms were muſtered, they amounted to full ſeven hundred lances, not including the Genoeſe and the luſty varlets: in the whole, two thouſand combatants. They then held a council whither they ſhould turn their arms; to Bertueil, Taillebourg* or Montlieu†. After hav-

* Taillebourg,—a town in Saintonge on the Charente, three leagues from Saintes.

† Montlieu,—a village in Saintonge, election of Saintes.

ing well conſidered each ſituation, they determined to march to Montlieu, becauſe it was a ſtrong caſtle near the moors of Bourdeaux; and, if they ſhould ſucceed in taking it, the others would be weakened, and none able to quit Bourdeaux without their knowledge.

They marched through the Angaumois, and on arriving at Montlieu prepared for the ſiege. Sir James Pouſſart and John Bonnelance were the leaders of the duke of Bourbon's men at arms, and of the whole army. They were not long beſieging Montlieu before they made ready their ladders and other things, neceſſary for an attack.

They ſurrounded the caſtle and began the aſſault, but thoſe within defended themſelves vigorouſly. The combat was very ſharp, long continued, and many gallant deeds were done; for the French mounted their ladders with rapidity, and fought hand to hand on the battlements with their daggers: in ſhort, they exerted themſelves ſo much that the caſtle was fairly won by ſtorm, and moſt within periſhed.

When the lords of France had got poſſeſſion of Montlieu, they reinforced it with a new garriſon and ſtores, and then took the road to Taillebourg on the Charente. Dinandon de la Perate, a Gaſcon, was governor of this fortreſs, an able man at arms, who held the French cheap.

When they came before Taillebourg, the duke de Bourbon and his company took two ſmall forts which had much haraſſed the borders of Poitou and Limouſin, la Froncette and Archac; the garriſons

riſons were ſlain, and the caſtles given up to thoſe of the adjacent countries, who inſtantly razed them to the ground.

The ſiege of Taillebourg was now formed, and four block-houſes were erected before it. Near Taillebourg was a bridge over the Charente, which the Engliſh and Gaſcons had fortified, ſo that no veſſels from la Rochelle or Saintonge could paſs without great danger, unleſs by paying toll. The French lords determined to gain this bridge, to facilitate their other attacks, and to be in greater ſecurity in their block-houſes. They ordered veſſels ready prepared and armed to aſcend the Charente from la Rochelle, in which they had placed large bodies of croſs-bows and Genoeſe, to ſkirmiſh with thoſe at the bridge. The attack was ſevere, for the Engliſh and Gaſcons had well fortified the bridge, and they defended it with ſpirit, as it behoved them to do, for they were vigorouſly attacked by land and water. The eldeſt ſon of the count de Harcourt, named John, was made a knight at this aſſault, by his uncle the duke of Bourbon, and diſplayed his banner.

This attack on the bridge of Taillebourg was long continued: many gallant actions were performed; but the croſs-bows and Genoeſe in the veſſels ſhot ſo ably that thoſe on the bridge ſcarcely dared to appear and defend themſelves: Why ſhould I make a long tale of this? The bridge was carried by ſtorm, and all found there ſlain or drowned: not one eſcaped. Thus did the French gain the bridge of Taillebourg. Their ſiege was carried

on

on more eagerly for this. Taillebourg is ſituated three leagues from St. Jean d'Angely, and two from Saintes, in the fineſt country in the world.

Dinandon, and thoſe in the caſtle were much aſtoniſhed and vexed at the capture of the bridge; and they had reaſon, for they loſt by it the paſſage of the river. However, they would not ſurrender; for they felt themſelves in a ſtrong place, and expected ſuccours from Bourdeaux, as it had been currently reported on the borders of the Bourdelois, and confirmed by all the Engliſh and Gaſcon garriſons, that the duke of Lancaſter, or the earl of Buckingham, was to arrive at Bourdeaux with two thouſand men at arms and four thouſand archers, to combat the French and to oblige them to raiſe all their ſieges: in this they placed great hopes, but it turned out otherwiſe, as I ſhall tell you.

In truth, before the army under the command of the admiral of France was prepared to ſail for Scotland, it had been ordered in England that the duke of Lancaſter, ſir John Holland, brother to the king, ſir Thomas Percy, ſir Thomas Trivet, the lord Fitzwalter, ſir William Windſor, ſir John Silbain, and other barons and knights, to the amount of a thouſand lances and three thouſand archers, ſhould ſail for Bordeaux, and remain there the whole ſummer, to reinforce Mortaigne, Bouteville, and thoſe caſtles which held out for them in Gaſcony and Languedoc: they were to fight with the French, ſhould they find them in the country; and, after having remained there a ſeaſon, they were

were to march to Caſtille by way of Bayonne and Navarre, for there were was a treaty between them and the king of Navarre. All this had been ſettled in the imaginations of the Engliſh, but it proved a diſappointment; for, when they learned for a truth that the admiral of France with a thouſand lances of choſen knights and ſquires were preparing to ſail for Scotland, their councils were changed, and none dared to think of quitting their country, nor of weakening their forces: for they much dreaded the conſequences of this junction of the French with the Scots.

There was alſo a report at this time, that England was to be attacked in three different parts by the French. One expedition was from Brittany, as it was ſaid that the duke of Brittany was become a good Frenchman; another from Normandy, where the conſtable of France was making his preparations at Harfleur, Dieppe, and all along the coaſt, as far as St. Valery and Crotoy; the third from Scotland. From fear of this, the government of England would not allow any knights or ſquires to quit the country, but attended to the fortifying of their harbours. At this ſeaſon Richard, earl of Arundel, admiral of the Engliſh ſea, was cruiſing with ſixty or fourſcore large veſſels, armed and fitted with men at arms and archers: he had, beſides, nine light veſſels off Normandy to gain intelligence.

We will leave for a while the duke de Bourbon and the ſiege of Taillebourg, which laſted upwards of nine weeks, nd relate how the admiral

miral of France, with the army under his command, landed in Scotland, and what a handſome reception, in appearance, they met with from the country.

CHAP. III.

SIR JOHN DE VIENNE, ADMIRAL OF FRANCE, ARRIVES IN SCOTLAND WITH HIS ARMY.—HE MEETS WITH BAD TREATMENT THERE.

THE French army that was bound for Scotland had very favourable winds, for it was in the month of May when the weather is temperate and agreeable. They coaſted Flanders, Holland, Zealand and Friſeland, and advanced until they approached ſo near Scotland as to ſee it; but before they arrived there an unfortunate accident befel a knight of France, and an expert man at arms, named ſir Aubert d'Angers.

The knight was young and active, and to ſhew his agility he mounted aloft by the ropes of his ſhip completely armed; but, his feet ſlipping, he fell into the ſea, and the weight of his armour, which ſunk him inſtantly, deprived him of any aſſiſtance, for the ſhip was ſoon at a diſtance from the place where he had fallen. All the barons were much vexed at this misfortune, but they were forced to endure it, as they could not any way remedy it.

They

They continued their voyage until they arrived at Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland, where the king chiefly reſides when he is in that part of the country. The earls of Douglas and Moray, from the information they had received, were waiting for them in Edinburgh; and as ſoon as they were come, haſtened to meet them at the harbour, and received them moſt amicably, bidding them welcome to their country.

The Scots barons inſtantly recogniſed ſir Geoffry de Charny, for he had reſided full two months with them laſt ſummer in Scotland. Sir Geoffry made them acquainted, as he very well knew how, with the admiral and the barons of France. At that time the king was not at Edinburgh, but in the highlands of Scotland: his ſons received them handſomely, telling them the king would ſhortly be there.

They were ſatisfied with this information, and the lords and their men lodged themſelves as well as they could in Edinburgh, and thoſe who could not lodge there were quartered in the different villages thereabout. Edinburgh, notwithſtanding it is the reſidence of the king, and is the Paris of Scotland, is not ſuch a town as Tournay or Valenciennes; for there are not in the whole town four thouſand houſes. Several of the French lords were therefore obliged to take up their lodgings in the neighbouring villages, and at Dunfermline, Kelſon*, Dunbar, Dalkeith, and in other villages.

* Kelſon. Q. Kelſo would have been too far diſtant.

News

News was ſoon ſpread through Scotland, that a large body of men at arms from France were arrived in the country. Some began to murmur and ſay, 'What devil has brought them here? or who has ſent for them? Cannot we carry on our wars with England without their aſſiſtance? We ſhall never do any effectual good as long as they are with us. Let them be told to return again, for we are numerous enow in Scotland to fight our own quarrels, and do not want their company. We neither underſtand their language nor they ours, and we cannot converſe together. They will very ſoon eat up and deſtroy all we have in this country, and will do us more harm, if we allow them to remain among us, than the Engliſh could in battle. If the Engliſh do burn our houſes, what conſequence is it to us? we can rebuild them cheap enough, for we only require three days to do ſo, provided we have five or ſix poles and boughs to cover them.'

Such was the converſation of the Scots on the arrival of the French: they did not eſteem them, but hated them in their hearts, and abuſed them with their tongues as much as they could, like rude and worthleſs people as they are.

I muſt, however, ſay that, conſidering all things, it was not right for ſo many of the nobility to have come at this ſeaſon to Scotland: it would have been better to have ſent twenty or thirty knights from France, than ſo large a body as five hundred or a thouſand. The reaſon is clear. In Scotland you will never find a man of worth: they are like

ſavages

ſavages, who wiſh not to be acquainted with any one, and are too envious of the good fortune of others, and ſuſpicious of loſing any thing themſelves, for their country is very poor. When the Engliſh make inroads thither, as they have very frequently done, they order their proviſions, if they wiſh to live, to follow cloſe at their backs; for nothing is to be had in that country without great difficulty. There is neither iron to ſhoe horſes, nor leather to make harneſs, ſaddles or bridles: all theſe things come ready made from Flanders by ſea; and, ſhould theſe fail, there is none to be had in the country.

When theſe barons and knights of France, who had been uſed to handſome hôtels, ornamented apartments, and caſtles with good ſoft beds to repoſe on, ſaw themſelves in ſuch poverty, they began to laugh, and to ſay before the admiral, 'What could have brought us hither? We have never known till now what was meant by poverty and hard living. We now have found the truth of what our fathers and mothers were uſed to tell us, when they ſaid,—'Go, thou ſhalt have in thy time, ſhouldſt thou live long enough, hard beds and poor lodgings:' all this is now come to paſs.' They ſaid alſo among themſelves, 'Let us haſten the object of our voyage, by advancing towards England: a long ſtay in Scotland will be neither honourable nor profitable.' The knights made remonſtrances reſpecting all theſe circumſtances to ſir John de Vienne, who appeaſed them as well as he could, ſaying,—'My fair ſirs, it be-

becomes us to wait patiently, and to ſpeak fair, ſince we are got into ſuch difficulties. We have a long way yet to go, and we cannot return through England. Take in good humour whatever you can get. You cannot always be at Paris, Dijon, Beaune or Châlons: it is neceſſary for thoſe who wiſh to live with honour in this world to endure good and evil.'

By ſuch words as theſe, and others which I do not remember, did ſir John de Vienne pacify his army in Scotland. He made as much acquaintance as he could with the ſcottiſh barons and knights: but he was viſited by ſo very few it is not worth ſpeaking of; for, as I have ſaid before, there is not much honour there, and they are people difficult to be acquainted with. The earls of Douglas and Moray were the principal viſitants to the lords of France. Theſe two lords paid them more attention than all the reſt of Scotland. But this was not the worſt, for the French were hardly dealt with in their purchaſes; and whenever they wanted to buy horſes, they were aſked, for what was worth only ten florins, ſixty and a hundred: with difficulty could they be found at that price. When the horſe had been bought there was no furniture nor any houſings to be met with, unleſs the reſpective articles had been brought with them from Flanders. In this ſituation were the French: beſides, whenever their ſervants went out to forage, they were indeed permitted to load their horſes with as much as they could pack up and carry, but they were way-laid on their return, and villanouſly beaten, robbed,

robbed, and ſometimes ſlain, inſomuch that no varlet dared go out foraging for fear of death. In one month the French loſt upwards of a hundred varlets: for when three or four went out foraging not one returned, in ſuch a hideous manner were they treated.

With all this the king required many entreaties before he would come forward: the knights and ſquires of Scotland were the cauſe of this, for they declared, they would not at this ſeaſon wage war with England, that the French might pay more dearly for their coming. Before the king would come to Edinburgh, it was neceſſary to pay him a large ſum of money for himſelf and his courtiers. Sir John de Vienne engaged, under his ſeal, that he would never quit Scotland until the king and his people were perfectly ſatisfied: for, had he not done ſo, he would not have had any aſſiſtance from the Scots. He was obliged to make this bargain or a worſe; but however advantageous it was for them, and whatever affection he gained by it, they made the war ſolely profitable for themſelves, as I ſhall relate in this hiſtory. At preſent I wiſh to return to what was paſſing in Flanders, and to ſpeak of the marriage of the young king of France, which happened at this period.

CHAP IV.

THE TOWN OF ARDEMBOURG * NARROWLY ESCAPES BEING TAKEN BY SURPRISE BY FRANCIS ATREMEN AND HIS GHENT MEN.

AFTER the defeat of the detachment of ſir Rafflart de Flandres, which he had led into the Quarte Meſtiers, ſir Robert de Bethune, viſcount de Meaux came to Ardembourg, whither he had been ſent to garriſon it. He found there ſir John de Jumont and his companions: he had alſo brought with him about forty knights, who were eager to meet with adventures. On the viſcount's arrival, he began to repair and ſtrengthen the fortifications of the town. Francis Atremen and thoſe of Ghent were conſtantly deviſing plans to annoy their enemies, and do them miſchief. Their attention was particularly directed to places in their neighbourhood, ſuch as Oudenarde, Dendremonde, Ardembourg, Damme, Bruges and Sluys. It behoved thoſe towns to keep a ſtrict guard and watch well; for in regard to ſtorming and ſcaling towns, and ſuch like ſubtleties, theſe ghent men were very ſkilful and alert.

* Ardembourg, ten miles N. E. from Bruges, has been diſmantled by the Dutch.

About the end of May, Francis Atremen, with ſeven thouſand armed men, ſallied out of Ghent, with the intent to take Ardembourg by ſurpriſe, and to make all the knights and ſquires there in garriſon priſoners. They were more deſirous to take the governor, ſir John de Jumont, than all the reſt; for he had done them much miſchief, by ſlaying and taking their people, thruſting out their eyes, cutting off their hands or ears, ſo that they could not love him. For this purpoſe, they came on Wedneſday at day-break to Ardembourg, having with them their ladders ready prepared.

Now obſerve what great peril they were in: the viſcount de Meaux, ſir John de Jumont, ſir Rafflart de Flandres, the lord de Daymart, ſir Tiercelot de Montigny, ſir Perducas de Port St. Marc, the lord de Longueval and ſir John his ſon, ſir Hugh Deſnel, the lord de Lalain, ſir Reginald de Lommie and ſeveral more were ſleeping quietly in their beds, truſting to the watchfulneſs of the guard: but the guards of the night were almoſt all retired, and the watchman was mounting his poſt, when Francis Atremen and his ghent men, with their ladders on their ſhoulders had croſſed the ditches and fixed their ladders to the walls, which the foremoſt had begun to mount.

By accident, the lord de St. Aubin and a ſquire from Picardy, called Enguerrand Zedequin, were at this moment parading the town cloſe by the walls: they had with them three picards armed with pikes.

I believe they had been on guard this night, and were then retiring. To ſay the truth, if they had not been where they were, Ardembourg muſt infallibly have been taken, and all the knights in their beds.

When the lord de St. Aubin and Enguerrand Zenequin perceived the ghent men mounting by ladders to the battlements, and that one of them was actually putting his leg over the wall to enter the town, they were very much alarmed, but not ſo much as to prevent them defending the place: they ſaw clearly, that if they fled, the town muſt be conquered; for the ghent men had arrived there ſo opportunely that they were entering it juſt between the time of the diſmiſſal of the night-guard and the watchman mounting his poſt.

'Forward, forward!' cried ſir Enguerrand to the pikemen: 'here are our enemies: let us defend ourſelves and our town, or it is taken.' They then advanced to the place where they had fixed thir ladders and intended entering. The pikemen attacked him who was about to enter ſo vigorouſly with his pike that he tumbled him into the ditch. At this time, the watch was at his poſt, who, noticing the large battalion in the ditches and thereabouts, ſounded his horn, crying out, 'Treaſon, treaſon!'

The town was in motion, and the knights heard in their beds the noiſe and confuſion, and alſo how the ghent men wanted to ſurpriſe their town. They were very much aſtoniſhed, and, having armed themſelves

themſelves as ſpeedily as they could, ſallied forth againſt them.

Notwithſtanding they were diſcovered, the ghent men laboured hard to enter the town; but thoſe five men held out valiantly againſt them for upwards of half an hour, and performed wonders in arms, for which they were highly praiſed.

The lords now advanced in handſome array; the viſcount de Meaux with his banner before him, ſir John de Jumont with his pennon, ſir Rafflart de Flandres and all the others, ſhouting their war-cries, and found the knight and ſquire, with the three pikemen, defending the walls moſt gallantly.

When Francis Atremen and the ghent men found their ſcheme had failed, they called back their men and retreated in a handſome manner into the Quatre Meſtiers.

The garriſon were more attentive in guarding their town for the future, and in poſting their ſentinels. They honoured greatly their five defenders; for, if they had not been there, Ardembourg had been loſt, and all their throats cut.

CHAP. V.

LEWIS OF FRANCE, BROTHER TO KING CHARLES VI. IS MARRIED BY PROCURATION TO MARGARET OF HUNGARY.—MADAME DE BRABANT CAUSES THE DAUGHTER OF DUKE STEPHEN OF BAVARIA TO COME TO FRANCE TO MARRY KING CHARLES.

YOU have before heard how the duke of Anjou, who ſtiled himſelf king of Naples, Sicily and Jeruſalem, had carried on a war for three years in la Puglia, Calabria and Naples, againſt Charles de Durazzo, and that during that war he had died*. His opponent was dead alſo. It was ſaid he was killed in Hungary with the conſent of the queen; for, after the death of the king of Hungary, being the ſon of his brother, he wiſhed to maintain that the kingdom had devolved to him, as the king of Hungary had left no male iſſue. The queen, ſuſpecting his intentions to diſinherit her daughter, had him put to death. This event cauſed much wonder every where; and the war of the queen of Naples and her ſon Lewis, who reſided in Avignon, was more ſtrenuouſly carried on in Provence.

During the lifetime of the late king of Hungary, the great barons and prelates had adviſed

* At the caſtle of Biſeglia, near Bari.

that

that the eldeſt of his daughters, the lady Margaret, who was very handſome, and was likewiſe heireſs to the kingdom, ſhould be given to Lewis count de Valois, brother to the king of France, becauſe they thought he wonld reſide in Hungary, and the king, had he lived, would have followed this advice.

After the deceaſe of the king of Hungary, ambaſſadors were ſent to France, to the king and his uncles, to notify the wiſh of the queen of Hungary to unite the count de Valois with her eldeſt daughter. This ſeemed to the king and the barons of France as if it was very deſirable, except that it would ſeparate and place at too great a diſtance the count de Valois from his family and the powerful kingdom of France. On the other hand, they conſidered it was a grand as well as a profitable offer for the count de Valois to be king of Hungary, which is one of the greateſt realms in Chriſtendom.

The Hungarians ſent by the Queen were magnificently received, and large preſents were made to them. The biſhop de Maillerets and John de Perſonne returned with them as ambaſſadors from France, who, on their arrival in Hungary, eſpouſed by procuration, in the name of the count de Valois, the princeſs Margaret. John de la Perſonne courteouſly lay on a bed beſide her's. They then came back to France, and ſhewed their letters patent and other public inſtruments, which gave great ſatisfaction to all France; and the count de

Valois ſigned himſelf king of Hungary for a long time.

You have before heard how the duke of Burgundy and duke Albert of Bavaria, lord of Hainault, Holland, Zealand and Friſeland, had intermarried their children in the city of Cambray, at which marriage the king of France had aſſiſted with great magnificence. Some ſeemed to ſay, as I was then informed, that the ſame week the king and all his nobles were at this marriage, there was a ſecret negotiation for a marriage between the young king of France and the lady Iſabella, daughter of duke Stephen of Bavaria, chiefly through the means of the ducheſs of Brabant. The late king of France had on his dying bed ordered, that his ſon ſhould be married, if poſſible, to a princeſs of Germany, to ſtrengthen the union of France with that country; for he had ſeen that the king of England, by marrying the ſiſter of the emperor of Germany, had gained by it.

The ducheſs of Brabant was a lady of a very active mind; ſhe converſed with the king's uncles and his council, while in the city of Cambray, on this ſubject, explaining to them, that as this young lady was the daughter of a great lord in Germany, and the moſt powerful in Bavaria, through him great alliances might be made in that country; that duke Stephen was ſo potent, he could well break the purpoſes of the great lords of the empire; for he was as powerful, if not more ſo than the

the emperor. This object made the council of France liſten more readily to the propoſal: it was, however, carried on with the utmoſt ſecrecy, and very few knew any thing of it until it was ſettled. The reaſon for this you ſhall hear. It is cuſtomary in France, for the lady deſtined to be married to the king, however high may be her birth, to be examined quite naked by ladies, whether ſhe be well made, and have no apparent hindrance to her bearing children. As this lady was to come from ſo diſtant a country as Bavaria, they were ignorant if ſhe would be agreeable to the king, for otherwiſe every thing would be broken off.

Theſe were the reaſons why this affair was kept ſo ſecret. About Whitſuntide the young lady was brought to the ducheſs in Brabant, who received her very cordially, and accuſtomed her to the uſages in France. She was accompanied by duke Frederick of Bavaria, her uncle, by whom, in truth, this marriage was firſt moved, for the cauſes which I will explain to you.

When duke Frederick was before Bourbourg, in the ſervice of the king, he was much feaſted by the king's uncles, and the other nobles, for having come two hundred leagues to ſerve France. They conſidered his ſervices as very great; and he always quartered near the king, out of affection to him, and had the greateſt reſpect paid him.

When he left Bavaria, he thought that there muſt be a pitched battle, between the kings of France and of England, either in France or Flanders,

ders, for ſuch had been the current report in Germany. The king of France and his uncles were very thankful for his coming. It happened, that during the expedition to Bergues and Bourbourg, the king's uncles and other nobles, in amicable converſation, had aſked him if he had no daughters to marry? for they wanted a wife for the king of France; and they would prefer marrying him to Bavaria than elſewhere, Bavaria having formerly been in the councils of France.

Duke Frederick, in reply to this ſpeech, ſaid he had none himſelf, but that his brother, duke Stephen of Bavaria, had a very handſome one. 'And how old is ſhe?' demanded the king's uncles. 'Between twelve and fourteen,' replied the duke. Then ſaid the uncles, 'This is what we want. Do you, on your return to Bavaria, talk with your brother, and conduct your niece as if in pilgrimage to St. John at Amiens, and the king ſhall be placed beſide her. Should he find her handſome, we hope he will be deſirous of her, for he loves beauty, and if he appear eager for her ſhe ſhall be queen of France.' This was the beginning of the buſineſs, and neither more nor leſs was ſaid on the ſubject. The king of France was ignorant that any thing had been mentioned reſpecting his marriage.

Duke Frederick, on his return to Bavaria, repeated theſe words to his brother, who pondered ſome time on them, and thus anſwered,—'Fair brother, I believe ſuch ſpeeches have been made to you, and that my daughter would be very fortunate

tunate if ſuch a high honour as to become the queen of France ſhould fall to her lot; but the diſtance is great from hence, and it is a matter of great conſideration to attempt the making a queen. I ſhould be exceedingly vexed if, after having carried my daughter to France, ſhe ſhould be returned to me: and I would rather marry her, at my leiſure, nearer home.'

Such was the anſwer duke Stephen gave his brother, with which he was contented; and he wrote the ſubſtance of it to the uncles of the king, to his own uncle, duke Albert, and to madame de Brabant, to whom he had communicated the buſineſs on his return home.

They thought he had been too indifferent about it, and had made overtures elſewhere, on the ſubject of the king's marriage. A match was ſhortly after propoſed between the king and the daughter of the duke of Lorraine: ſhe was a very handſome lady, and nearly of his own age; of high birth, being of the family of Blois.

The duke of Lancaſter's daughter, afterwards queen of Portugal, was alſo talked of, but this could not be brought about on account of the war: the affair was therefore at a ſtand.

The ducheſs of Brabant, when at theſe marriages at Cambray, and the king and his court preſent, brought this ſubject again on the carpet, ſaying, that an union with Bavaria was the moſt deſirable for the king, on account of the alliances that might be formed with the Germans. 'It is ſo, indeed, lady,' replied the king's uncles; 'but

we

we now hear nothing of it.' 'Be you ſilent,' anſwered the ducheſs, 'and I will make ſuch advances, that you ſhall, without fail, have certain intelligence of it in the courſe of the ſummer.'

The promiſes of the ducheſs were verified; for ſhe managed ſo well, that duke Stephen allowed his brother, duke Frederick, to conduct his niece, as you have before heard: and it was given out on the road, that they were going on a pilgrimage to St. John at Amiens. Every body believed it; for the Germans are fond of performing pilgrimages, and it is one of their cuſtoms.

After duke Frederick and his niece, the lady Iſabella of Bavaria, had been three days at Bruſſels, they took leave of the ducheſs: it was, however, her intention to be at Amiens as ſoon, if not ſooner, than they were.

They went through Hainault to Queſnoy, where they found the duke and ducheſs, and William count of Oſtrevant and his wife; by all of whom they were moſt graciouſly received, for duke Albert was his uncle. They were much ſurpriſed at their coming, and inquired the reaſons of it. 'Certainly,' ſaid duke Frederick, 'I have had much difficulty to perſuade my brother; but, as you ſee, I have at laſt brought him to conſent that I ſhould conduct his daughter hither. On taking leave, he called me aſide and ſaid, 'Now, Frederick, my fair brother, you are carrying away Iſabella, and upon no certain conditions; for if the king of France refuſe her, ſhe will be for ever ruined: therefore, conſider well this buſineſs,

for

for ſhould you bring her back, you will never have a more bitter enemy than me:' and you ſee, my good uncle, the dangerous ſituation I am in.'

'Dear nephew, do not be alarmed; for, if it pleaſe God, ſhe ſhall be queen of France, and you ſtand acquitted of blame, and retain the affections of your brother.'

They remained at Queſnoy for three weeks, during which time the ducheſs, who was very able, tutored the young lady of Bavaria, as to her manners and appearance; and did not allow her to keep the clothes ſhe then wore, as being too plain and ſimple for the French faſhions, but had her dreſſed up and adorned as if ſhe had been her own child. When all had been properly prepared, the ducheſs and her daughter, the future ducheſs of Burgundy, ſet out in great magnificence for Amiens, with the young lady, where the ducheſs of Brabant was already arrived, as were the king, the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy and the council.

The lord de la Riviere, ſir Guy de la Trimouille, with many barons and knights, went out of the city of Amiens to meet the company from Hainault, whom they eſcorted into town with many honours, and they viſited each other out of love and affection.

But the king could hardly cloſe his eyes that night from the deſire of ſeeing her who was afterwards his ſpouſe. He aſked the lord de la Riviere when he ſhould ſee her. This queſtion much amuſed the ladies. And on the Friday when the young

young lady was dreſſed for the occaſion, the three ducheſſes preſented her to the king. She inſtantly kneeled down very low, but the king directly raiſed her up by the hand, and continually kept his eyes upon her: ſo that from that time love and pleaſure pierced his heart.

The conſtable, obſerving what paſſed, ſaid to the lord de Coucy, 'By my faith, this lady will remain with us: the king cannot take his eyes off her.' When the ladies had remained ſome little time with the king, they took leave of him, and carried back the damſel. But, as the intentions of the king were not known, the duke of Burgundy charged the lord de la Riviere to ſound him when he retired to his cloſet, which he diligently did, by ſaying, 'Sire, how do you like this young lady? will ſhe remain with us?' 'Yes, by my troth, will ſhe,' replied the king, 'for ſhe pleaſes us, and you will tell my good uncle of Burgundy to haſten the buſineſs.'

When the lord de la Riviere had heard theſe words, he repeated them to the duke of Burgundy, who announced them to the ladies; and they were ſo well pleaſed thereat, they began carolling. The whole court were joyous on the occaſion; and it was intended by the king's uncles to celebrate the feaſt at Arras, but it did not pleaſe the king to go further. He entreated his uncle to make every haſte, for he aſſured him that he wiſhed no delay, but was anxious to have the buſineſs completed in the good city of Amiens. 'Very well, my lord,' replied the duke, 'it ſhall be done as you order.'

The

The duke of Burgundy, in company with the conſtable, ſir Guy de la Trimouille and ſeveral others waited on madame de Hainault, and found her niece ſeated beſide her. The duke related all that had paſſed, adding, that the king had made him alter his intention as to the place where the marriage ceremony was to be performed; for he was ſo deeply ſmitten, that he had owned he could neither ſleep nor take any repoſe on account of her whom he wiſhed for his wife, but on the morrow they would cure all his ailings. The ducheſs went out in a fit of laughter, and they ſeparated from each other with much joy and ſatisfaction.

CHAP. VI.

FRANCIS ATREMEN TAKES DAMME.—THOSE OF BRUGES ATTEMPT TO RETAKE IT.

ON a Saturday night, Francis Atremen marched with ſeven thouſand men from the Quatre Meſtiers, whither he had retreated after the failure of his attemp: on Ardembourg: he had promiſed his townſmen, on his departure, that he would never return until he had taken ſome good town. The Ghent men were deſirous of finding the French employment, ſo that they ſhould be unable to ſend more men to the admiral in Scotland, to make war on the Engliſh; for it was currently reported,

reported, that the conſtable, together with a large body of men at arms and croſs-bows, was about to embark to reinforce thoſe ſent to Scotland.

Francis Atremen, being an expert man at arms, ſallied out one Saturday evening from the country called Quatre Meſtiers, and when it was dark advanced to the walls of Bruges in hopes of taking it, but could not. When he found he could do nothing, he marched towards Damme, and met his ſpies whom he had ſent thither and round that neighbourhood: they told him he would do well to advance to Damme, for ſir Roger Guiſtelles had left it, and only women were there. This was true; for he had gone to Bruges, thinking the inhabitants were able to defend themſelves, but in this he was diſappointed.

When Francis Atremen heard that ſir Roger de Guiſtelles was not in Damme, he divided his men into two diviſions, and, taking the ſmalleſt, ſaid to the other, 'You will advance to that gate, and make no attack until you hear our trumpets ſound: then attempt the barriers, and cut down and deſtroy all, and on the ſide we will break down the gate, for we ſhall never enter the town by ladders.'

His orders were punctually obeyed. He advanced with the ſmaller diviſion, leaving the other behind him: the foremoſt marched with ladders through the ditches, where they met with no reſiſtance, and, having paſſed the mud, fixed their ladders to the walls: on entering the town, they ſounded their trumpets and made for the gates without

without oppoſition, for they were maſters of the place, the good people being ſtill in their beds.

It was the 17th day of July when Damme was thus ſurpriſed. They advanced to the gate, and broke all the bars of it with ſtrong axes: thoſe without deſtroyed the barriers, and thus all ſorts of people entered the town.

The inhabitants began to be in motion; but it was too late, for they were made priſoners in their houſes, and thoſe whom they found armed were ſlain without mercy. Thus was the good town of Damme taken, wherein they found much wealth: in particular, cellars full of Malmſey and other wines. I heard alſo that thoſe of Bruges had brought thither great riches for fear of a rebellion of the populace whom they ſuſpected.

Francis Atremen was much rejoiced on being maſter of Damme, and ſaid, 'Now I have well kept my promiſe to Ghent: this place will enable us to conquer Bruges, Sluys and Ardembourg.' He inſtantly iſſued a proclamation, that not the ſmalleſt harm or inſult ſhould be offered to the noble ladies in the town; for there were ſeven ladies, the wives of knights, who had come thither to viſit madame de Guiſtelles, who was with child and near lying in. After having pillaged the town and put to death thoſe who would not join their party, they began to repair it.

When thoſe in Bruges heard of this, they were much enraged, and not without cauſe: they inſtantly armed and marched to Damme, and began to ſkirmiſh and attack it; but it was of no avail, for

they loſt more than they gained: they therefore marched back to Bruges.

You may ſuppoſe, when this news reached Ghent, they were much pleaſed, and conſidered it as a valiant enterpriſe and alſo looked on Francis Atremen as a gallant ſoldier.

CHAP. VII.

KING CHARLES ESPOUSES THE LADY ISABELLA OF BAVARIA.——HE BESIEGES DAMME.

WE will return to the marriage of king Charles of France, and relate how it was concluded. The ducheſs Margaret of Hainault, who had the young queen under her care, on the morning of the wedding dreſſed her out handſomely, as ſhe knew well how to do, when the ducheſſes of Brabant and Burgundy came thither grandly attended by ladies and damſels. Theſe three ladies conducted the lady Iſabella of Bavaria in the richeſt covered cars ever ſeen, with a crown on her head, that was worth all the wealth of the country, and which the king had ſent to her a little before. The biſhop of Amiens performed the marriage-ceremony in the preſence of the lords and ladies beforementioned.

After the maſs and other ceremonies thereto appertaining, the king, with the lords, ladies and damſels

damſels went to dinner, which was very ſumptuous and magnificent, and that day the counts and barons ſerved at it in grand array. After dinner, they amuſed themſelves in different manners, which continued with great enjoyment until evening, when the king retired with his bride.

The feaſts were continued until the Tueſday following, when news was brought to the king and to his council that Francis Atremen had taken the town of Damme. A herald arrived at the ſame time from the duke of Bourbon, who brought letters that Taillebourg, with its caſtle and bridge, had been ſubdued, and that the duke, with his army, was on full march to beſiege Verteuil, having already conquered back again in Poitou and Limouſin, ſix fortreſſes.

This news rejoiced ſomewhat the court, and made them indifferent as to the loſs of Damme; but it was determined the king ſhould not undertake any thing until he had marched to Flanders and re-taken Damme. He declared he would enter the Quatre Meſtiers, from whence this miſchief had ſprung, and would not leave any houſe undeſtroyed.

Meſſengers were immediately ſent over the kingdom with ſummons for every man at arms to be in Picardy by the firſt of Auguſt, to march to Damme. This was ſoon ſpread through France, and all knights and ſquires made their preparations for waiting on the king as they had been commanded. This ſame day, duke Frederick of Bavaria, duke Albert and the other barons took

leave of the king and departed for their homes, leaving behind the lady Iſabella of Bavaria, now queen of France as you have heard.

The king of France, who had ſent his ſummons through the realm, declared he would not return to Paris before he had been at Damme. On the twentieth day of July he ſet out from Amiens, with the conſtable and many lords, and came to Arras, where he ſlept one night. On the morrow he went to Lens*, in Artois: men at arms were daily coming to him from all quarters. He continued his march until he arrived at Ypres, ſo that by the firſt of Auguſt he was before Damme, and quartered himſelf ſo near the town that the arrows flew over his head.

Three days afterward arrived William of Hainault, who was very welcome to the king, and to my lord of Burgundy. The ſiege was laid to Damme in a handſome manner, and Francis Atremen was encloſed within it. He behaved very gallantly, for every day there were attacks and ſkirmiſhes, unleſs prevented by ſhort truces.

The lord de Clary, maſter of the ordnance to the lord de Coucy, was hit by an arrow from the town, which cauſed his death: it was a pity, for he was a gallant knight.

Thoſe of Bruges and Ypres came to this ſiege: and there were preſent upwards of one hundred thouſand men. The king was quartered between Damme and Ghent. The lord de St. Py and the

* Lens,—four leagues from Arras.

lord

lord de Guiſtelles were the commanders of the Flemings: they had about twenty-five lances, and quartered themſelves among them for fear of diſſenſions.

An attack was made on Damme at which all the lords were preſent. William of Hainault was made a knight by the king's hand, and that day he diſplayed his banner: during the courſe of the ſiege he ſhewed himſelf an excellent knight. The French, by this aſſault, loſt more than they won, for Francis Atremen had with him ſome Engliſh archers who ſorely galled the aſſailants: he had alſo many pieces of artillery, for the town, before it was ſurpriſed, was well provided; and Francis had ordered more thither from Ghent when he knew it was to be beſieged.

CHAP. VIII.

SOME CITIZENS OF SLUYS ARE BEHEADED FOR TREASON TO THE FRENCH.—THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY ACQUIRES SLUYS FROM SIR WILLIAM DE NAMUR, BY AN EXCHANGE FOR THE LANDS OF BETHUNE.

DURING the ſiege of Damme, ſome of the principal citizens of Sluys who governed it, were accuſed of high treaſon againſt the king of France: they wanted to deliver the town to his enemies, to murder the governor and all his

garriſon in their beds, and to ſet fire to the numerous fleet of France, which was then at anchor in their port, well filled with all ſorts of ſtores.

Before the expedition to Damme, the king of France had intended to follow his admiral to Scotland. Theſe wicked people of Sluys alſo meant to deſtroy the dykes of the ſea, and drown all or the greater part of the army. This had been bargained for by thoſe of Ghent, and it was all to have been done in one night: it would have been executed if one of the inhabitants of the town had not overheard the malice they were deviſing. He directly went to the governor and told him what was intended, and named the greater part of the conſpirators. The knight was much aſtoniſhed when he heard of this, and taking with him his garriſon, which conſiſted of about ſixty lances, went to the houſes of the different conſpirators, whom he arreſted and ſent to ſeparate priſons under a ſtrong guard. He then mounted his horſe, and haſtened to the king's tent, before Damme, where the duke of Burgundy at that time chanced to be. He related to them all that he had heard and done: how near the town was being loſt, and his army drowned. The king and his nobles were much ſurpriſed; and the governor was ordered to return to Sluys, and to keep his priſoners no longer confined, but inſtantly to put them to death, that others might from them take example.

The governor, on his return, had them beheaded, and thus ended the buſineſs. This ſame week, the duke of Burgundy, by the advice of ſir Guy de la Tri-

Trimouille, who had laſt ſummer reſided at Sluys with a conſiderable force, reſolved to open a negotiation with his couſin, ſir William de Namur, to obtain that town by exchange for other lands, to add it to the country of Flanders, which lands were equally profitable as to revenue.

Sir William de Namur was much diſpleaſed when he firſt heard this propoſal for an exchange; for the town of Sluys, with its dependancies and ſea-rights, was a noble and profitable inheritance: it had alſo devolved to him from his anceſtors, which made him like it the more. Notwithſtanding this, ſince the duke of Burgundy was deſirous of it, he found it neceſſary to comply. It was the intention of the duke, when in poſſeſſion of it, to erect there a handſome and ſtrong caſtle, like to Calais and other places, which ſhould command the harbour of Sluys, and garriſon it with men at arms and archers, ſo that none could approach his territories without danger from them. He ſaid, he would build it high enough to ſee from it twenty leagues at ſea.

In ſhort, ſir William was ſo hard preſſed by the duke and his council, that he conſented to the exchange of Sluys for the whole territory of Bethune, which is one of the faireſt inheritances of the whole country. It was given to him and to his heirs. Immediately afterwards, the duke ſet workmen on the caſtle he intended to build at Sluys. We will now return to the ſiege of Damme, and ſay how it proſpered.

CHAP. IX.

FRANCIS ATREMEN AND HIS MEN ABANDON DAMME.—THE TOWN IS DESTROYED BY THE FRENCH: THEY ALSO RUIN THE COUNTRY OF THE QUATRE MESTIERS.

THERE were ſeveral ſkirmiſhes almoſt daily at the barriers of Damme, where many were wounded and ſlain. The walls could not be approached, becauſe the ditches were filled with mud and filth: and, if it had been rainy weather, the army would have had enough to do, and muſt have decamped whether they would or not: but for the ſpace of one month, during which this ſiege laſted, there never fell one drop of rain. They had proviſion in great abundance; but the ſtench of the beaſts killed by the army, and the dead horſes, corrupted the air, and cauſed many knights and ſquires to be ſo ill and low ſpirited that they retired to Bruges or elſewhere: the king was wont to lodge at Marle, notwithſtanding his tents were left ſtanding in the camp.

It was the intention of Francis Atremen to hold out this ſiege till the reinforcements which he expected from England ſhould arrive to raiſe it: for it is certain that Francis, and the men of Ghent, had ſent to England for aſſiſtance. The uncles of the king of England would undoubtedly have carried over a ſufficiency of men at arms and archers,

chers, if the admiral of France had not at that time been in Scotland with ſo large a force.

It was confidently ſaid, that the conſtable was to reinforce the admiral with a greater body: by which means the Flemings were not aſſiſted, and thoſe of Damme were forced to make a bad bargain of it; for on the 29th day of July, 1385, was the town of Damme conquered back again.

When Francis Atremen found, after the king of France had beſieged him for a month, that he was not to expect any ſuccour, and that his artillery began to fail, he was much caſt down, and ſaid to thoſe of his council,—'I will, that all of us from Ghent return home: but let it be made known to them ſecretly, ſo that none of the town be informed of our intended departure, and attempt to ſave themſelves, with their wives and children, by ſacrificing us. They would obtain peace, and we ſhould be ſlain: but I muſt take good care to prevent this; for we will keep in a body, and go round the town to viſit the guard. We will ſecure all the inhabitants, not having arms, in the churches, and give them to underſtand, we do ſo becauſe we expect a grand attack to be made to-morrow, and do not wiſh them to ſuffer from it. We muſt tell the guard of the night that we intend to beat up the enemy's quarters, and the moment we are in the plain we will ſpur for the faſteſt to Ghent.'

His council replied, that he had well ſpoken. Every man made his preparation accordingly, and in the evening packed up their all, and put the women,

women, children and lower ſort of people in the churches: they even ordered thither the ladies of the knights who were priſoners, telling them, that on the morrow there was to be a grand attack, and they wiſhed them not to be frightened: all this was thought very proper.

The firſt hour of the night the Ghent men went their rounds; there were none of their townſmen on the walls, but only thoſe of Damme. Francis Atremen ſaid to them,—'Keep up a ſtrict watch about midnight; and on no account, whatever you may ſee or hear, quit the battlements, for in the morning we ſhall be attacked; but I am reſolved this night to beat up their quarters.' His words were believed, for they thought he was ſpeaking the truth. After Francis Atremen had arranged all his buſineſs, he ordered the gate to be opened, and ſallied forth with thoſe his townſmen from Ghent. They were not half a league from the town when day appeared, and the inhabitants diſcovered that Francis and his companions were gone off: they were much diſheartened; but their leaders began to negotiate with thoſe belonging to the king, and ſaid they had killed Francis Atremen the preceding evening.

Several of the town, underſtanding that Francis Atremen was gone away, and the gate ſtill open, ſet out from the town as faſt as they were able.

When this news arrived at the camp, the Bretons and Burgundians, who were eager for pillage, mounted their horſes, and purſued them within two leagues of Ghent: ſeveral were ſlain, and upwards

wards of five hundred made priſoners: they were not from Ghent, but the inhabitants of Damme who were running away. Whilſt they were purſuing them on all ſides, the town, now defenceleſs, was attacked: the French entered it at different parts by ladders, which they carried over the ditches with much difficulty. When they had entered, they imagined they ſhould roll in riches; but they found nothing, except poor people, women and children, and great quantities of good wines. In ſpite, therefore, they ſet fire to the town, and burnt almoſt the whole of it. The king and duke of Burgundy were much vexed at this, but they could not prevent it. The noble ladies were, however, ſaved, but with ſome difficulty, from having any harm done to their perſons.

After Damme had been thus regained by France, the king was adviſed to decamp and to fix his own quarters at a ſmall town two leagues from Ghent called Artavelle, and that, during the time he ſhould be there, the men at arms ſhould ſcour the country of the Quatre Meſtiers, and completely deſtroy it; becauſe, in former times, all ſorts of proviſion were ſent from thence to Ghent, and more aſſiſtance given to that town from thoſe countries than from any others.

The king of France and his army marched from before Damme: he took up his quarters at Artavelle; during which time the men at arms deſtroyed the country, burning all houſes, monaſteries and forts which had held out for them. They left

left not any houſe whole, and killed or drove into the woods all the women and children.

When the French had completed this deſtruction, they were ordered to march and lay ſiege to the caſtle of Gaure, and afterwards to do the ſame to Ghent. But all this ended in nothing.

CHAP. X.

THE KING OF FRANCE LEAVES FLANDERS, AND DISBANDS HIS ARMY.—DURING THE TIME HE IS AT PARIS, TREATING WITH AMBASSADORS FROM HUNGARY, NEWS ARRIVES THAT THE MARQUIS DE BLANCQUEFORT * HAD FORCIBLY MARRIED THE HEIRESS OF HUNGARY.

INTELLIGENCE was brought to the king, while at Artavelle, that the queen of Hungary had ſent the biſhop of Vaſſereul, attended by ſeveral knights and ſquires as her ambaſſadors, who had brought credential letters to ſay that they were come to ſeek for the lord Lewis of France, count de Valois, and who ſigned himſelf king of Hungary, to conduct him to his wife in Hungary, whom John de la Perſonne, a French knight, had eſpouſed by procuration for the ſaid Lewis count de Valois.

* This, I ſuppoſe, ſhould be Brandenburgh,

This

This news pleaſed greatly the king and his council, who, being deſirous of properly equipping the young count de Valois, reſolved to return to France, ſaying they had done enough for this ſeaſon. The king ſet out from Artavelle the 12th day of September, and diſbanded all his men at arms, when each returned to his home.

The men of Ghent were much delighted at this event. The king went to Cray *, where the queen reſided; for, when he left Amiens to go to Flanders, ſhe was ſent thither to hold her court. I know not how many days he ſtaid there with her; but, when they left it, the king came to Paris, and the queen went to Vincennes, where ſhe reſided a while, for they were buſily employed in the equipment of the young count, as they were anxious he ſhould have furniture and attendants ſuitable to his rank as king of Hungary; but things in a ſhort time turned out differently in Hungary, as you ſhall hear †.

True

---

* Cray. Q. If not Craonne, which is a town in Picardy.

† There muſt be ſome miſtake, or perhaps Froiſſart was miſinformed, for I cannot find any mention of the crown of Hungary being offered to the count de Valois. Underneath is all that is ſaid of the matter in the 'Art de Verifier les Dates.'

Mary, ſurnamed King Mary.—Mary, daughter of Charles the great was crowned in Albe Royale, or Stul Weiſſembourg, in the year 1382, under the name of King Mary. As ſhe was too young to govern the kingdom, the regency was given to her mother queen Elizabeth. Nicholas de Gara having gained the confidence of the two princeſſes, ruled deſpotically in their names, inſomuch that it excited great murmurs among the Hungarians.

True it is, that the queen-mother of Hungary took great delight in the idea of Lewis of France being king of Hungary, and conſidered her daughter as married to him. She wiſhed not for any other but him for her ſon-in-law; and with this intent ſhe had ſent the biſhop of Vaſſereul, with many knights and ſquires, to conduct him to his queen.

It happened, that while theſe ambaſſadors were on their road to France, the emperor of Germany, who ſtiled himſelf king of the Romans, had a brother younger than himſelf, called Henry de Blancquefort. The king of the Romans had been informed of the ſtate of Hungary, of the treaties which had been entered into with the count Louis

---

Hungarians. In the year 1385, Charles le Petit, king of Naples, at the ſolicitation of the diſcontented party, arrives at Buda, ſeizes the government, and cauſes himſelf to be crowned king of Hungary in Albe Royale the 31ſt of September, in the ſame year. On the 5th of February following, he is aſſaſſinated in Buda, by order, and in the preſence of Elizabeth.--On the 1ſt of May 1386, John Horwath, ban of Croatia, ſurpriſes the two queens, attended by Nicholas de Gara, while on a journey: he maſſacres the laſt before their eyes, drowns Elizabeth the enſuing night, and carries off Mary priſoner to Croatia. Sigiſmond, marquis of Brandenbourg, flies, on hearing this, to deliver Mary, to whom he was betrothed. He joins her at Albe Royale, whither ſhe had been ſent, marries her at that town, and is crowned king of Hungary on the 10th of June, Whitſunday, being only twenty years old. The ban of Croatia was this ſame year arreſted by his order, and expiated his crimes by tortures. Mary died at Buda 1392. Her body was buried at Peter-Waradin.

de

de Valois, and that the before named ambaſſador was gone to conduct him to Hungary.

The king of the Romans loved his brother's intereſt more than his couſin's, had long conſidered this buſineſs, and had already arranged it in his mind to bring it cautiouſly and ſecretly about according to his own plan; for, had the queen of Hungary had the ſlighteſt intimation of his intent, ſhe would have guarded effectually againſt it: but it was clear ſhe had not.

It was known to to the council in Germany, that the queen of Hungary and her daughter were gone to a caſtle near the borders of Germany, to amuſe themſelves: upon which, the marquis de Blancquefort ſet off with a large body of men at arms, ten thouſand at leaſt, to lay ſiege to this caſtle and encloſe the ladies within it. The queen, on perceiving her ſituation, was thunderſtruck, and ſent to know from the marquis why he thus kept her confined, and what he wanted. The marquis ſent for anſwer, 'it was done ſolely becauſe ſhe intended marrying her daughter to the brother of the king of France, who was a ſtranger, and from whom ſhe could never have any comfort, adding, that it would be better and more advantageous for the kingdom of Hungary, if he, who was her neighbour, ſhould marry her, than another, who came from ſuch a diſtant country as Louis de Valois.'

The queen anſwered, that 'ſhe had never before heard one word of his pretenſions, and for that reaſon had conſented to her daughter's union with the

the brother of the king of France: beſides, the king of Hungary, during his lifetime, had ordered her ſo to do.'

To this the marquis replied, that 'he paid little attention to what ſhe ſaid; that he had the conſent and good will of the greater part of the hungarian nation, and that he would by fair means or otherwiſe, have her, now ſhe was in his power.' The lady was much caſt down at theſe words, but, notwithſtanding, held out as well as ſhe could; and, though ſhe ſent to her ſubjects to come to her aſſiſtance, none obeyed, nor did they make the leaſt movement againſt the marquis, which plainly ſhewed the Hungarians preferred the Germans to the French.

When the queen found ſhe was not to expect any aſſiſtance from her ſubjects, ſhe began to liſten to reaſon; for the marquis threatened her, that if ſhe ſuffered the caſtle to be taken by ſtorm, he would confine her in a tower, where ſhe ſhould have only bread and water, as long as ſhe lived. Theſe menaces frightened her, for the place was weak, and ſhe had come thither without know of men or proviſion. She therefore entered into a treaty with the marquis; and in this ſituation ſhe gave him her daughter, who was directly married, and he inſtantly went to bed to her.

Thus did ſir Henry of Bohemia, marquis de Blancquefort gain the inheritance of Hungary, of which he was king rather through force than love, with regard to the conſent of the queen-

queen-dowager; but ſhe was obliged to abide by this bargain, or worſe might have happened.

News of this was ſoon publiſhed, and it was ſent to the biſhop and knights of Hungary who were on their return from France; for the count de Valois, having completed his arrangements, had proceeded as far on his journey as Troyes. He was much enraged when this event was told him; but he could not any way remedy it. The Hungarians departed very angry, as indeed they had reaſon; and the young count de Valois returned to his brother and uncles at Paris, who, having never depended much on this marriage, ſaid, 'the count de Valois was fortunate in having his wife taken from him, for Hungary was a diſtant country, and out of reach of the French, from whence they could never have had any aſſiſtance.'

Theſe conſiderations made them indifferent about it, and induced them to think of another connection for him. This was the duke of Milan's daughter, heireſs of Lombardy, which territory is more valuable than all Hungary, and nearer at hand to the French.

We will leave theſe marriages, and ſpeak of the duke of Bourbon, who, having taken Taillebourg, was in Poitou beſieging Verteuil; and return to the admiral of France in Scotland, and ſay how he went on.

CHAP. XI.

THE DUKE OF BOURBON TAKES VERTEUIL IN POITOU, AND RETURNS TO THE KING OF FRANCE AT PARIS.

DURING the time the king was before Damme, the duke of Bourbon, with a handſome body of men at arms, made his excurſion into Poitou and Limouſin, where he took many Engliſh caſtles and forts, ſuch as Archeac, Garnate, Montlieu eight leagues from Bourdeaux, and Taillebourg on the Charente: he then laid ſiege to Verteuil, a ſtrong caſtle in Poitou, on the borders of Limouſin and Saintonge.

Andrew Pinas, an Engliſhman, and Bertrand de Montrinet, a Gaſcon, were governors of Verteuil, and had with them numbers of ſtout companions. There were ſkirmiſhes, therefore, almoſt daily, at the barriers, and many gallant deeds of arms done, in which ſeveral were ſlain or wounded. The duke declared he would not move from thence until he he was maſter of the caſtle, for to this effect had he given his promiſe the laſt time he had converſed with the duke of Berry.

It happened that while Bertrand de Montrinet, one of the governors, was planning a ditch to be made within the caſtle to add to its ſtrength, and ſhewing his people how to bank it, a ſtone, ſhot from a dondaine * by the beſiegers wounded him

* Dondaine,—a large machine to throw ſtones from.

mortally,

mortally, and cauſed his inſtant death. This Bertrand had eſcaped from ſixteen very dangerous ſieges.

His companions lamented much his death; but, as that was now irretrievable. Andrew remained ſole governor. Fifteen days afterwards, negotiations were opened, and a treaty concluded, that the garriſon ſhould ſurrender the caſtle, with all its proviſions, on being conducted in ſafety to Bouteville, of which place Durandon de la Perede was governor.

Thus did the French gain the caſtle of Verteuil, which they afterwards repaired and reinforced with ſtores, artillery and men at arms. They then marched to an adjoining town called Cares, and, when they departed thence, came to Limoges, where the duke of Bourbon remained full eight days. He was adviſed to return to Paris, which he did, and found the king with his nephew the count de Valois, who received him with great joy,

We will now return to the affairs in Scotland, and ſpeak of the admiral of France.

CHAP. XII.

THE SCOTTISH ARMY WITH THAT OF THE ADMIRAL OF FRANCE ENTER NORTHUMBERLAND, —BUT, THE ENGLISH BEING ON THEIR MARCH TO MEET THEM, THEY RETREAT WITHIN THE BORDERS.

YOU have before heard how the Admiral of France, with a large body of men at arms, had landed at the port of Edinburgh, and that they found it a very different country from what they had expected from the accounts of the barons of Scotland.

The king's council and other barons had told thoſe knights who had been in Scotland laſt year, particularly Sir Geoffry de Charny and ſir Amyard de Marſe, that if the ſénéſchal, the conſtable of the admiral of France would croſs the ſea to Scotland with a thouſand good lances and five hundred croſs bows, with armour for a thouſand Scotſmen and proper equipments for the leaders, with their aſſiſtance, the reſt of Scotland would make ſuch a fatal irruption into England, it would never recover the blow.

With this expectation had the French croſſed the ſea, but had not found theſe promiſes realiſed. In the firſt place, they met with ſavage people, bad friends and a poor country; and the knights and ſquires knew not where to ſend their varlets

to

to forage, for they dared not do ſo except in very large parties for fear of the wicked people of the country, who lay in wait for them, attacked and killed them.

At laſt, king Robert of Scotland arrived, with red bleared eyes, of the colour of ſandal wool, which clearly ſhewed he was no valiant man, but one who would rather remain at home than march to the field: he had, however, nine ſons who loved arms. On the king's arrival at Edinburgh, the barons of France waited on him to pay him their reſpects, as they well knew how to do; the earls of Douglas, Moray, Mar, Sutherland, and ſeveral more, were at this interview.

The admiral requeſted the king to fulfil the terms on which they had come to Scotland; for that on his part he was reſolved to enter England. Thoſe barons of Scotland who were eager to advance themſelves were much rejoiced at hearing this, and replied, that if it pleaſed God, they would make ſuch an inroad as ſhould be both profitable and honourable.

The king iſſued his ſummons for a very large armament: on the day fixed for their aſſembling at Edinburgh, there were thirty thouſand men on horſeback, who as they arrived took up their quarters after the manner of the country, but they had not every thing comfortable.

Sir John de Vienne was very impatient to make an excurſion and to afford his men opportunities of performing gallant deeds of arms in England; he no ſooner ſaw the arrival of the Scottiſh men

at arms than he ſaid it was time to march, for they had remained idle too long. The departure was then proclaimed, and they took their march towards Roxburgh.

The king was not with the army, but remained at Edinburgh: however, all his children accompanied it. The thouſand complete ſets of armour brought from France were delivered to the Scottiſh knights who were badly armed, and thoſe who had them were much delighted. They began their march towards Northumberland, which they continued until they came to the Abbey of Melroſe, where they quartered themſelves on each ſide the river Tweed: on the morrow, they advanced to Lambir Law, and then came before Roxburgh.

The governor of the caſtle of Roxburgh for the lord Mountague, to whom it belonged as well as all the circumjacent lands, was a knight called ſir Edward Clifford. The admiral of France with his whole army, as well as the Scots, halted before it, and, having reconnoitred it, thought they ſhould gain nothing by the attack, as the caſtle was large, fair and well provided with artillery. They therefore continued their march down the river, towards Berwick and the ſea, until they came to two ſquare towers, tolerably ſtrong; in in which were two knights, father and ſon, of the name of Strande. A good farm of fine fields of graſs, with a country-houſe, was hard by, which was inſtantly burnt and the towers attacked. Several feats of arms were performed, and many of the Scots wounded by arrows and ſtones; but the towers

towers were at length taken by ſtorm, and the knights within them, who had valiantly defended themſelves as long as they had been able.

After the conqueſt of theſe two towers, the Scots and French came before a very ſtrong caſtle in another part of the country, which is called Werly*: it belonged to ſir John Mountague. Sir John Luſſebourne was the governor for him, and had in it his wife, children and all his family; for he had been informed that the Scots and French were advancing that way. He had, in conſequence, fully provided the place with men at arms and artillery, to the utmoſt of his power, in expectation of the attack.

The army ſoon came and encamped before Werly, ſituated on a handſome river which runs into the Tweed below it. There was one grand aſſault on this caſtle, where the French behaved much more valiantly than the Scots; for they croſſed the ditches, though with much difficulty; and, having fixed their ladders, many gallant deeds were done, for the French aſcended to the battlements, and there fought hand to hand and dagger to dagger with the garriſon.

Sir John Luſſebourne ſhewed himſelf a good knight and powerful in arms, by engaging the French knights as they mounted the ladders. At this attack a German knight, called ſir Alberis Gaſtelain was ſlain, which was a pity: many others were killed and wounded. The enemy, however, were ſo numerous, and the attack ſo

* Werly. Q. if not Wark.

often renewed, that the caſtle was taken, and the knight, his wife and children who were within it. The French who firſt entered made upwards of forty priſoners: the caſtle was then burnt and deſtroyed, for they ſaw they could not keep nor guard it, being ſo far advanced in England.

After the capture of this caſtle, and of ſir John Luſſebourne, the admiral and barons of France and Scotland marched towards Amith *, the eſtate of the lord Percy, and quartered themſelves all around it. They deſtroyed ſeveral villages, and marched as far as Boul †, a handſome and ſtrong caſtle on the ſea-coaſt, belonging to the earl of Northumberland: they did not attack it, for they knew they ſhould loſe their labour, but continued their march to half-way between Berwick and Newcaſtle-on-Tyne, where they learnt that the Duke of Lancaſter, the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, the lord Neville, with the barons of the counties of Northumberland, York and Durham, were haſtening with a large force to meet them ‡.

The admiral and barons of France were much delighted at this intelligence, for they were deſirous of an engagement; but the Scots were of a contrary opinion, and adviſed a retreat towards Scotland, on account of their ſtores, and to have their

* Amith. Q. Alnwick.

† Boul. Q. if not Cornhill.

‡ Mr. Redpath, in his Border Hiſtory, gives a very ſhort account indeed of this expedition, and of theſe places: he adds,—'It is ſaid, they took and deſtroyed the caſtles of Wark, Cornhill and Ford.'

own

they amounted to full forty thouſand lances, without counting thoſe of the Duke of Lancaſter, the earl of Northumberland, the earl of Nottingham, the lord Lucy, the lord Neville, and other barons of the marches, who were in purſuit of the French and Scots, to the number of two thouſand lances and fifteen hundred archers. The king, and the lords who attended him, had full fifty thouſand archers, without including the varlets. He haſtened ſo much the march of his army, after the duke of Lancaſter, that he arrived in the country about York; for he had had intelligence on the road that there was to be an engagement between his men and the Scots in Northumberland; and for this reaſon he had made as much haſte as poſſible. The king lodged at St. John de Brinelle*, beyond the city of York, in the county of Durham, where news was brought him that the Scots had returned to their own country. The army therefore quartered themſelves in the county of Northumberland. I will relate an accident that happened in the Engliſh army, which cauſed a mortal hatred between different lords.

---

† St. John de Brinelle. Q. if not Beverley.

CHAP. XIII.

SIR JOHN HOLLAND KILLS LORD RALPH STAFFORD.—THE EARL OF STAFFORD DEMANDS JUSTICE FROM THE KING.

THE king of England was quartered in the country round Beverley, in the dioceſe of York, with numbers of earls, barons, and knights of his realm; for every one tried to be lodged as near him as poſſible, more eſpecially his two uncles. Sir Thomas Holland, earl of Kent, and ſir John Holland, earl of Huntington, his brothers, were alſo there with a handſome company of men at arms.

With the king was a knight from Bohemia, who had come to pay a viſit to the queen; and, out of affection to her, the king and barons ſhewed him every attention. This knight was gay and handſome in the German ſtile, and his name was ſir Meles. It happened one afternoon that two ſquires attached to ſir John Holland quarrelled in the fields of a village near Beverley, for the lodgings of ſir Meles, and followed him, to his great diſpleaſure, with much abuſe. At this moment two archers belonging to lord Ralph Stafford came thither, who took up the quarrel of ſir Meles becauſe he was a ſtranger: they blamed the ſquires for their language, and added: 'You have uſed this knight very ill by thus quarrelling with

with him, for you know he is attached to the queen and from her country: you would have done better to have aſſiſted him than to act thus.' 'Indeed!' replied one of the ſquires to the archer who had firſt ſpoken, 'thou villanous knave, thou wanteſt to intermeddle: what is it to thee if I laugh at his follies?' 'What is it to me!' anſwered the archer, 'it concerns me enough, for he is the companion of my maſter; and I will never remain quiet and ſee or hear him abuſed.' 'If I thought, knave,' ſaid the ſquire, 'thou wouldſt aid him againſt me, I would thruſt my ſword through thy body.' As he uttered theſe words, he made an attempt to ſtrike him; the archer drew back, and having his bow ready bent, with a good arrow, let fly and ſhot him through the body and heart, ſo that he fell down dead. The other ſquire, when he ſaw his companion fall, ran away. Sir Meles had before returned to his lodgings, and the two archers went to their lord and related to him what had happened. Lord Ralph, when he had heard the whole, ſaid, 'You have behaved very ill.' 'By my troth,' replied the archer, 'I could not have acted otherwiſe, if I had not wiſhed to have been killed myſelf, and I had much rather he ſhould die than that I ſhould.' 'Well,' ſaid lord Ralph, 'go, and get out of ſight, that thou mayſt not be found: I will negociate thy pardon with ſir John Holland, either through my lord and father, or by ſome other means.' The archer replied, 'he would cheerfully obey him.'

News

News was carried to ſir John Holland, that one of lord Ralph Stafford's archers had murdered his favourite ſquire; and that it had happened through the fault of the foreign knight, ſir Meles. Sir John, on hearing it, was like a madman, and ſaid he would neither eat nor drink until he had revenged it. He inſtantly mounted his horſe, ordering his men to do the ſame, though it was now very late, and, having gained the fields, he inquired for the lodgings of ſir Meles: he was told that he was lodged at the rear-guard with the earl d'Euurenieres* and the earl of Stafford, and with their people. Sir John Holland took that road, riding up and down to find ſir Meles. As he was thus riding along a very narrow lane, he met the lord Ralph Stafford; but, being night, they could not diſtinguiſh each other. He called out, 'Who comes here?' He was anſwered, 'I am Stafford:' 'And I am Holland.' Then ſir John added, 'Stafford, I was inquiring after you. Thy ſervants have murdered my ſquire, whom I loved ſo much.' On ſaying this, he drew his ſword and ſtruck lord Ralph ſuch a blow as felled him dead, which was a great pity. Sir John continued his road, but knew not then that he had killed him, though he was well aware he had ſtrucken him down. The ſervants of the lord Ralph were exceedingly wrath, as was natural, on ſeeing their maſter dead: they began to cry out, 'Holland, you have murdered the ſon of

* Earl d'Euurenieres. Q. Earl of Devonſhire.

the

the earl of Stafford: heavy will this news be to the father when he ſhall know it.'

Some of the attendants of ſir John Holland, hearing theſe words, ſaid to their maſter, 'My lord you have ſlain the lord Ralph Stafford.' 'Be it ſo,' replied ſir John. 'I had rather have put him to death than one of leſs rank; for by this I have the better revenged the loſs of my ſquire.' Sir John haſtened to Beverley, to take advantage of the ſanctuary of St. John's church, whither he went, and did not quit the ſanctuary; for he well knew he ſhould have much trouble in the army from the affection it bore lord Ralph, and he was uncertain what his brother the king of England would ſay to it. To avoid, therefore, all theſe perils, he ſhut himſelf up in the ſanctuary.

News was carried to the earl of Stafford, that his ſon had been unfortunately killed. The earl aſked, who had done it. They told him, 'Sir John Holland, the king's brother,' and related why and wherefore. You may ſuppoſe, that the father, having only one beloved ſon, who was a young, handſome, and accompliſhed knight, was beyond meaſure enraged. He ſent for all his friends, to have their advice how he ought to act to revenge this loſs. The wiſeſt and moſt temperate did all they could to calm him, adding, that on the morrow the fact ſhould be laid before the king, and he ſhould be required to ſee law and juſtice put in force.

Thus paſſed the night. In the morning, the lord Ralph Stafford was buried in the church of a village

village near the ſpot where he fell: he was attended by all the barons, knights and ſquires related to him that were in the army. After the funeral, the earl of Stafford, with full ſixty of his own relations, and others connected with his ſon, mounted their horſes, and went to the king, who had already received information of this unfortunate event. They found the king attended by his uncles and many knights. When the earl approached, he caſt himſelf on his knees, and thus ſpoke with tears and anguiſh of heart: 'Thou art king of all England, and haſt ſolemnly ſworn to maintain the realm in its rights, and to do juſtice. Thou art well acquainted how thy brother, without the ſlighteſt reaſon, has murdered my ſon and heir. I therefore come and demand juſtice: otherwiſe thou wilt not have a worſe enemy than me. I muſt likewiſe inform thee, my ſon's death affects me ſo bitterly, that if I were not fearful of breaking up this expedition by the trouble and confuſion I ſhould make in the army, and the defections it would cauſe, by my honour, it ſhould be revenged in ſo ſevere a manner that it ſhould be talked of in England a hundred years to come. For the preſent however, and during this expedition to Scotland, I ſhall not think of it; for I like not that the Scots be rejoiced at the miſery of the earl of Stafford.' *

* The earl of Stafford, in the 9th Ric. II. made a pilgrimage to Jeruſalem, probably on the loſs of his ſon, and died the enſuing year, on his return, at Rhodes.

The

The king replied; 'Be aſſured, I myſelf will do juſtice, and puniſh the crime more ſeverely than the barons would venture to do; and never for any brother will I act otherwiſe.'

The earl of Stafford and his relations anſwered, 'Sir, you have well ſpoken, and we thank you.' Thus were the relations of lord Ralph Stafford appeaſed. He performed the expedition to Scotland, as I ſhall relate to you; and, during that whole time, the earl of Stafford ſeemed to have forgotten the death of his ſon, in which conduct all the barons thought he ſhewed great wiſdom.

CHAP. XIV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND DESTROYS THE ABBEY OF MELROSE IN SCOTLAND.—THE BARONS OF FRANCE AND SCOTLAND INVADE CUMBERLAND.

THE army of the king of England, which conſiſted of ſeven thouſand men at arms and ſixty thouſand archers, kept advancing: none had remained behind, for it had been confidently reported through England that ſir John de Vienne would give them battle. Indeed, ſuch were his intentions, and he had in a manner told this to the barons of Scotland, when he ſaid,—'My lords, make your army as conſiderable as you can; for, if the Engliſh come as far as Scotland, I will offer them combat.' The Scots replied, 'God aſſiſt us!' but they afterwards changed their mind.

The

The king and his army advanced beyond Durham, Newcaſtle-on-Tyne, and through Northumberland to Berwick, of which ſir Matthew Redman was governor. He received him with all due reſpect; but the king did not ſtay there long: he continued his march, and the whole army croſſed the river Tweed, which comes from Roxburgh and the mountains in Northumberland, and took up his quarters in the abbey of Melroſe. This monaſtery, in all the preceding wars of England and Scotland, had been ſpared, but it was now burnt and deſtroyed; for it had been determined by the Engliſh to ruin every thing in Scotland before they returned home, becauſe the Scots had allied themſelves with the French.

The admiral of France, on learning that the king of England and his army had croſſed the Tyne and Tweed, and were now at Lambir Law, ſaid to the Scottiſh barons, 'Why do we remain here, and not reconnoitre our enemies to fight them? You told us, before we came into this country, that if you had a thouſand, or thereabouts, of good men at arms from France, you would be ſufficiently ſtrong to combat the Engliſh. I will warrant you have now a thouſand, if not more, and five hundred croſs-bows; and I muſt tell you, that the knights and ſquires who have accompanied me are determined men at arms, the flower of knighthood, who will not fly, but abide the event, ſuch as God may pleaſe to order it.'

The barons of Scotland, who well knew the ſtrength of the Engliſh army, and had not any

deſire of meeting it, anſwered,—'Faith, my lord, we are convinced that you and your companions are men of valour, and to be depended on; but we underſtand that all England is on its march to Scotland, and the Engliſh were never in ſuch force as at preſent. We will conduct you to a place from whence you may view and conſider them; and if, after this, you ſhould adviſe a battle, we will not refuſe it, for what you have repeated as having been ſaid by us is true.' 'By God, then' ſaid the admiral, 'I will have a battle.'

Not long afterwards, the earl of Douglas and the other Scots barons carried the admiral of France to a high mountain, at the bottom of which was a paſs through which the Engliſh would be forced to march with their baggage. From this mountain, where the admiral was ſtationed, with many of the French knights, they clearly ſaw the Engliſh army, and eſtimated it, as nearly as they could, at ſix thouſand men at arms, ſixty thouſand archers and ſtout varlets. They allowed they were not in ſufficient force to meet them in battle, for the Scots were not more than one thouſand lances, with about thirty thouſand others badly armed. The admiral ſaid to the earls of Douglas and Moray,—'You were in the right in not wiſhing to fight the Engliſh; but let us conſider what muſt be done, for they are numerous enough to overrun your whole country and ruin it. Since we are not able to combat them, I requeſt you will lead us by unfrequented roads into England, and let us carry the war into their own country, as they have

have done here, if ſuch an enterpriſe may be practicable.' The barons told him, it was very practicable.

Sir John de Vienne and the Scots barons reſolved in council, to quit that part of the country and ſuffer the Engliſh to act as they pleaſed in it, and to make an inroad on Cumberland, near Carliſle, where they ſhould find a plentiful country, and amply revenge themſelves. This reſolution was adopted. They marched their men in an oppoſite direction to the Engliſh, through foreſts and over mountains, and laid waſte the whole country on their line, burning towns, villages and houſes. The inhabitants of Scotland carried their proviſions to their retreats in the foreſts, where they knew the Engliſh would never ſeek for them. The Scots barons marched haſtily through their own country; and the king, not being well enough in health to accompany them, retired into the highlands, where he remained during the war, and left his ſubjects to act as well as they could. The French and Scots paſſed the mountains which divide Cumberland from Scotland, and entered England, when they began to burn the country and villages, and to commit great devaſtations on the lands of Mowbray, belonging to the earl of Nottingham, on thoſe of the earl of Stafford, as well as on the lands of the baron of Griſop* and of the lord Muſgrave, and then continued their march to Carliſle.

* Griſop. Q. Greyſtocke.

CHAP. XV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND DESTROYS EDINBURGH, AND GREAT PART OF SCOTLAND. — THE FRENCH AND SCOTS DO THE SAME ON THE BORDERS AND IN NORTHUMBERLAND.

WHILE the admiral of France and thoſe with him, ſuch as the count de Grand Pré, the lord de Sainte Croix, ſir Geoffry de Charny, ſir William de Breune, ſir James de Boenne, the lords de Peigny, de Hees, de Marnel, ſir Valeran de Rayneval, the baron d'Ivry, the baron de Fontaines, the lord de Croy, ſir Braque de Bracquemont, the lord de Lendury, amounting to a thouſand lances at leaſt, of barons and knights of France, with the lords of Scotland and their army, were thus overrunning the northern parts of England, burning and deſtroying the towns, houſes and country; the king of England, with his uncles, barons and knights, had entered Scotland, waſting the country as they advanced. The Engliſh had quartered themſelves at Edinburgh, where the king remained for five days. On their departure, every thing was completely burnt to the ground except the caſtle, which was very ſtrong and well guarded.

During the reſidence of king Richard at Edinburgh, the Engliſh overran the whole country in the neighbourhood, and did great miſchief; but they,

they found none of the inhabitants, for they had retreated into forts and thick foreſts, whither they had driven all their cattle. In the king's army there were upwards of one hundred thouſand men, and as many horſes: of courſe, great quantities of proviſion were wanted; but, as they found none in Scotland, many ſtores followed them from England by ſea and land.

When the king and his lords left Edinburgh they went to Dunfermline, a tolerably handſome town, where is a large and fair abbey of black monks, in which the kings of Scotland have been accuſtomed to be buried. The king was lodged in the abbey, but after his departure the army ſeized it, and burnt both that and the town. They marched towards Stirling and croſſed the river Tay*, which runs by Perth. They made a grand attack on the caſtle of Stirling, but did not conquer it, and had a number of their men killed and wounded: they then marched away, burning the town and the lands of the lord de Verſy.

The intention of the duke of Lancaſter and of his brothers, as well as of ſeveral knights and ſquires, was to lay waſte all Scotland, and then purſue the French and Scots, (for they had had information of their march to Carliſle) and by this means incloſe them between England and Scotland, ſo that they ſhould have ſuch advantage

* There is a miſtake in geography here, for the Tay does not run near the road to Stirling. I ſhould ſuppoſe he muſt mean the Forth.

over them, not one would return, but all ſhould be ſlain, or made priſoners. In the mean time, their army overran the country at their pleaſure, for none ventured to oppoſe them, the kingdom being void of defence, as the men at arms had all followed the admiral of France. The Engliſh burnt the town of Perth, which is on the banks of the Tay, and has a good harbour, from whence veſſels may ſail to all parts of the world. They afterwards burnt Dundee, and the Engliſh ſpared neither monaſteries nor churches, but put all to fire and flame. The light troops of the Engliſh, and the van-guard, advanced as far as the city of Bredane *, which is ſituated on the ſea, at the entrance into the highlands, but they did no harm to it, though the inhabitants were exceedingly alarmed, ſuppoſing they ſhould be attacked, and that the king of England was coming.

Juſt in the ſame manner as the Engliſh conducted themſelves in Scotland, did the French and Scots in Cumberland, and on the borders of England, where they burnt and deſtroyed large tracts of country. They entered Weſtmoreland, paſſing through the lands of Greyſtock, and of the baron Clifford, and burnt on their march ſeveral large villages where no men at arms had before been. They met with no oppoſition, as the country was drained, for all men at arms were with the king in his expedition. They came at length before Carliſle, which is well incloſed with walls, towers,

* Bredane. Q. Aberdeen.

gates and ditches: king Arthur formerly reſided here more than elſewhere, on account of the fine woods which ſurround it, and for the grand adventures of arms which had happened near it *.

There were in the city of Carliſle, ſir Lewis Clifford, brother to ſir William Neville, ſir Thomas Muſgrave and his ſon, David Hollgrave, the earl of Angus, and ſeveral others from that neighbourhood; for Carliſle is the capital of that part of the country, and it was fortunate to have ſuch men to defend it. When the admiral of France and his army arrived, he made a very ſevere attack with ordnance, which laſted ſome time, but there were within thoſe capable of making a good defence, ſo that many handſome feats of arms were performed before Carliſle.

* Froiſſart miſtakes this place, probably, for Carléon.

CHAP. XVI.

THE EARL OF SUFFOLK PREVENTS THE KING OF ENGLAND FROM PURSUING THE FRENCH AND SCOTS WHO HAD INVADED ENGLAND.—THE ENGLISH ARMY RETURN HOME THE SAME WAY THEY HAD ENTERED SCOTLAND.—THE FRENCH AND SCOTS RETURN IN A SIMILAR MANNER.

THE king's uncles and the other lords ſuppoſed the admiral of France and the Scots would continue their march, and that they would do as much miſchief as they could on the borders and in Cumberland. They therefore thought they could not do better, when their ſtores were all arrived, than to follow their line of march until they ſhould overtake and fight them; for, as they could not any way eſcape, they muſt be attacked to a diſadvantage. Of this opinion was the duke of Lancaſter, his brothers, ſeveral of the nobles of the realm, and the greater part of the army. Their ſtores were now all arrived by ſea or land, and the king had, in the preſence of his uncles, ordered this plan to be adopted. But in one night, Michael de la Pole, earl of Suffolk, who at that time was the heart and ſole council of the king, and in whom he placed his whole confidence, undid the whole buſineſs. I know not what his intentions were for ſo doing; but I heard afterwards, he ſhould ſay to the king,—'Ah, ah my lord,

lord, what are you thinking of? You intend then to follow the plan your uncles have deviſed. Know, that if you do ſo, you will never return, for the duke of Lancaſter wiſhes for nothing more earneſtly than your death, that he may be king. How could he dare adviſe your entering ſuch a country in the winter? I would recommend you not to croſs the Cumberland mountains, where are thirty paſſes ſo narrow, that if once you be incloſed within them, you will run into the greateſt danger from the Scots. Never engage in ſuch a perilous expedition, whatever they may ſay to you; and if the duke of Lancaſter be ſo deſirous to go thither, let him, with that diviſion of the army under his command: for never, with my conſent, ſhall you undertake it. You have done enough for one time: neither your father, nor your grandfather Edward, have been ſo far in Scotland as you have now been. This, I ſay, ſhould ſatisfy you. Take care of your own perſon, you are young and promiſing; and there are thoſe who profeſs much, but who little love you.'

Theſe words made ſo ſtrong an impreſſion on the king, he could never get them out of his head, as I ſhall hereafter relate. On the morrow-morning, when the lords of England were preparing for their march towards Carliſle, in ſearch of the French, and to fight with them, as had been reſolved in council the preceding night, the duke of Lancaſter waited on the king, ignorant of what had paſſed between his nephew and lord Suffolk. When the king ſaw him, being peeviſh and chole-

ric from the preceding converſation, he ſaid, harſhly,—'Uncle, uncle of Lancaſter, you ſhall not yet ſucceed in your plans. Do you think that, for your fine ſpeeches, we will madly ruin ourſelves? I will no longer put my faith in you nor in your councils, for I ſee in them more loſs than profit, both in regard to your own honour and to that of our people: therefore, if you be deſirous of undertaking this march, which you have adviſed, do ſo, but I will not, for I ſhall return to England, and all thoſe who love me will follow me.'

'And I will follow you,' replied the duke of Lancaſter; 'for there is not a man in your company who loves you ſo well as I do, and my brothers alſo: Should any other perſon, excepting yourſelf, dare ſay the contrary, or that I wiſh otherwiſe than well to you and to your people, I will throw him my glove.' No anſwer was made by any one. The king was ſilent on the ſubject. He only ſpoke to thoſe who ſerved him, on different matters, and then gave orders for returning to England by the way they had come. The duke left the king quite melancholy, and went to make other preparations; for he had concluded they were to purſue the French and Scots who had advanced beyond the borders; but, as this was altered, they took the direct road to England.

Thus did the earl of Suffolk, who governed the king, break up this expedition. Some lords ſaid, the king had been badly adviſed, not to purſue the Scots, as they had all their ſtores with them, and it was ſtill in their way home. Others, afraid

afraid of the difficulties, ſaid that, conſidering all things, as well the quantity of proviſion neceſſary for ſo large an army, as the hardſhips they would be expoſed to in the winter ſeaſon, when croſſing the Cumberland mountains, they might loſe more than they could gain.

Thus were affairs managed. The Engliſh army returned, with the king and barons, by the way they had entered Scotland, but not before they had deſtroyed the greater part of that country.

News was brought to the admiral of France that the Engliſh were retreating homeward. They called a council to determine how to act, when it was reſolved that, as their proviſion began to fail, they would return to Scotland, for they were now in a poor country, having ruined all round Carliſle, and the lands of lord Clifford, lord Mowbray and the biſhop of Carliſle; but the city of Carliſle they could not conquer. The French ſaid among themſelves, they had burnt in the biſhopricks of Durham and Carliſle more than the value of all the towns in the kingdom of Scotland.

The French and Scots marched back the way they had come. When arrived in the lowlands, they found the whole country ruined; but the people of the country made light of it, ſaying, that with ſix or eight ſtakes they would ſoon have new houſes, and find cattle enow for proviſion: for the Scots had driven them for ſecurity to the foreſts. You muſt, however, know, that whatever the French wanted to buy, they were made to pay very dear for; and it was fortunate the French

and

and Scots did not quarrel with each other ſeriouſly, as there were frequent riots on account of proviſion. The Scots ſaid, the French had done them more miſchief than the Engliſh: and when aſked, 'In what manner?' they replied, 'by riding through their corn, oats and barley, on their march, which they trod under foot, not condeſcending to follow the roads, for which damages they would have a recompenſe before they left Scotland; and they ſhould neither find veſſel nor mariner who would dare to put to ſea without their permiſſion.' Many knights and ſquires complained of the timber they had cut down, and of the waſte they had committed to lodge themſelves.

CHAP. XVII.

THE SCOTS TREAT THE ADMIRAL OF FRANCE AND HIS MEN VERY HARSHLY.—THEY RETURN TO FRANCE.

WHEN the admiral, with his barons, knights and ſquires, were returned to the neighbourhood of Edinburgh, they ſuffered much from famine, as they could ſcarcely procure proviſion for their money. They had but little wine, beer, barley, bread or oats: their horſes, therefore, periſhed from hunger, or were ruined through fatigue;

fatigue; and, when they wiſhed to diſpoſe of them, they could not find a purchaſer who would give them a groat either for their horſes or houſings.

Theſe lords remonſtrated with their commander on the manner in which they were treated, a circumſtance well known to himſelf. They ſaid, 'they could not longer endure ſuch difficulties, for Scotland was not a country to encamp in during the winter; and that, if they were to remain the enſuing ſummer, they ſhould ſoon die of poverty. If they were to ſpread themſelves over the country, to better their condition, they were doubtful if the Scots, who had ſo villanouſly treated their foragers, would not murder them in their beds, when they ſhould be divided.'

The admiral, having fully weighed what they ſaid, ſaw clearly they were juſtified in thus remonſtrating: notwithſtanding, he had intentions of wintering there, and of ſending an account of his ſituation to the king of France and duke of Burgundy, who, as the admiral imagined, would haſten to him reinforcements of ſtores, proviſion and money, with which, in the courſe of the ſummer, he would be enabled to carry on an advantageous war againſt the Engliſh. But having conſidered how ill intentioned the Scots were, and the danger his men were in, as well as himſelf, he gave permiſſion for all who choſe to depart. But how to depart was the difficulty, for the barons could not obtain any veſſels for themſelves and men. The Scots were willing that a few poor knights

who

who had no great command ſhould leave the country, that they might the eaſier govern the reſt. They told the barons of France 'that their dependants, when they pleaſed, might depart, but that they themſelves ſhould not quit the country until they had made ſatisfaction for the ſums that had been expended for the uſe of their army.'

This declaration was very diſagreeable to ſir John de Vienne and the other French barons. The earls of Douglas and Moray, who pretended to be exaſperated at the harſh conduct of their countrymen, remonſtrated with them, that they did not act becoming men at arms, nor as friends to the kingdom of France, by this behaviour to its knights: and that henceforward no Scots knight would dare to ſet his foot in France. Theſe two earls, who were friendly enough to the French barons, pointed out the probable effect their conduct would have on their vaſſals; but ſome replied, 'Do diſſemble with them, for you have loſt as much as we.' They therefore told the admiral, they could not do any thing for him: and, if they were ſo anxious about quitting Scotland, they muſt conſent to make good their damages.

The admiral ſeeing nothing better could be done, and unwilling to loſe all, for he found himſelf very uncomfortable, ſurrounded by the ſea, and the Scots of a very ſavage diſpoſition, acceded to their propoſals, and had proclaimed through the realm, that all thoſe whom his people had injured, and who could ſhew juſt cauſe for amends being made them, ſhould bring their demands

mands to the admiral of France, when they would be fully paid. This proclamation ſoftened the minds of the people: and the admiral took every debt on himſelf, declaring, he would never leave the country until every thing were completely paid and ſatisfied.

Upon this many knights and ſquires obtained a paſſage to France, and returned through Flanders, or wherever they could land, famiſhed, and without arms or horſes, curſing Scotland, and the hour they had ſet foot there. They ſaid they had never ſuffered ſo much in any expedition, and wiſhed the king of France would make a truce with the Engliſh for two or three years, and then march to Scotland and utterly deſtroy it: for never had they ſeen ſuch wicked people, nor ſuch ignorant hypocrites and traitors.

The admiral wrote to the king of France and duke of Burgundy, by thoſe who firſt returned, a full ſtate of his ſituation, and how the Scots had acted towards him: that if they wiſhed to have him back, they muſt ſend him the full amount he had engaged to pay the Scots, and for which he had bounden himſelf to the knights and ſquires of Scotland: for the Scots had declared, that they had at this time made war for the king of France and not for themſelves; and that the damages which the French had committed muſt be ſatisfied before they would be allowed to return, which he had promiſed and ſworn to perform to the barons of Scotland.

It was incumbent on the king of France, the duke of Burgundy and their councils, to redeem the admiral, for they had ſent him thither. They had the money inſtantly raiſed, and depoſited in the town of Bruges, ſo that the whole demand of the Scots was paid to their ſatisfaction. The admiral left Scotland when he had thus amicably ſettled matters, for otherwiſe he could not have done it; and, taking leave of the king, who was in the highlands, and of the earls of Douglas and Moray, was attended by them to the ſea-ſhore. He embarked at Edinburgh, and, having a favourable wind, landed at Sluys in Flanders. Some of his knights and ſquires did not follow the ſame road, as they were deſirous of ſeeing other countries beſide Scotland, and went into different parts; but the greater number returned to France, and were ſo poor they knew not how to remount themſelves: eſpecially thoſe from Burgundy, Champagne, Bar and Lorraine, who ſeized the labouring horſes wherever they found them in the fields.

The young king of France, and the duke of Burgundy, feaſted the admiral ſplendidly on his return, as was but juſt. They made many inquiries reſpecting the ſituation of the king and barons of Scotland. He told them ſ the Scots would naturally incline to the Engliſh, for they were jealous of foreigners: and added, that as God may help him, he would rather be count of Savoy or of Artois, or ſome ſuch country, than king of Scotland: that he had ſeen the whole force of that country

country aſſembled together, as the Scots had aſſured him, but there were never more than five hundred knights and ſquires together, and about thirty thouſand other men, who would be unable to withſtand the Engliſh archers, or a thouſand men at arms.' The admiral was aſked, 'if he had ſeen the Engliſh army.' He replied, he had; 'for when I ſaw the manner in which the Scots fled from the Engliſh, I requeſted they would lead me to a place whence I might ſee and conſider them. They did ſo, and I ſaw them paſs through a defile, to the amount of ſixty thouſand archers, and ſix or ſeven thouſand men at arms. The Scots ſaid, 'that this was the whole ſtrength of England, for none had remained behind.'

The company pauſed a little, and ſaid, 'Sixty thouſand archers and ſix or ſeven thouſand men at arms is a great force.' 'They may be as many as that,' ſaid the conſtable of France; 'but I would rather combat the whole of them in their own country than one half on this ſide the water, for this was the doctrine my maſter taught me in my youth.' 'By my faith, conſtable,' replied ſir John de Vienne, 'if you had been there with a good command of men at arms and Genoeſe, as I propoſed, and as it was agreed on when I undertook this expedition, we would have engaged them when in Scotland, or deſtroyed them from want of proviſion.'

In this manner did the conſtable and admiral converſe, which excited a great deſire in the duke of Burgundy to make a powerful invaſion of Eng-

land. We will now for a while leave them, and return to the affairs of Flanders.

CHAP. XVIII.

THE STATE OF FLANDERS.—TWO HONEST BURGESSES OF GHENT NEGOTIATE SECRETLY A PEACE WITH THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY, WITH THE ASSENT OF FRANCIS ATREMEN.

IN truth, the duke of Burgundy had a ſtrong deſire to undertake a grand expedition againſt England in the enſuing ſummer of 1386, and did all he could to urge the king of France to conſent to it. On the other hand, the conſtable of France, who in his youth had been educated in England, and was a knight of gallant enterpriſe and much beloved in France, adviſed it ſtrongly, as did ſir Guy de la Trimouille and the admiral of France. The duke of Berry was at this time in Poitou, and in the upper parts of Limouſin, ignorant of theſe councils and this intended expedition. The duke of Burgundy was the greateſt perſonage in France, next the king: he had many deſigns, and knew that, as long as the war continued in Flanders, the invaſion of England could not take place: he was therefore much ſoftened, and more inclined to enter into a treaty with the town of Ghent; for they had allied themſelves with the king of England, who had ſent thither a knight, called

called the lord Bourchier, to adviſe and govern them.

The citizens of Ghent were alſo deſirous of peace; for they had ſuffered ſo much from the war that the richeſt and principal perſons of the town were no longer maſters of their property: it was at the command of a few wicked ſoldiers, who governed them at their pleaſure: the wiſeſt foreſaw that this could not laſt long without their being entirely ruined. When they were talking over their affairs among themſelves, ſome wondered they had been thus long kept together in unity; but others knew that unity to have been the effect of force, and more through fear than love, for Peter du Bois would not deſiſt from his wickedneſs, and none dared before him to ſpeak of peace or of treating: the moment he heard of any one thus talking, he was inſtantly arreſted, however reſpectable he might be, and put to death.

This war, which Ghent had carried on againſt its lord the earl Lewis of Flanders and the duke of Burgundy, had laſted near ſeven years; and it would be melancholy to relate all the various unfortunate events which it had cauſed. Turks, Saracens and Pagans would have been ſorrowful on hearing them, for all commerce by ſea was ruined. The ſea-coaſts from eaſt to weſt, and all the north, ſuffered from it; for in truth the riches and merchandiſe of ſeventeen kingdoms were ſent to Sluys, and the whole was unſhipped at Damme or Bruges: Now conſider, that if theſe diſtant countries ſuffered, ſtill more bitterly muſt thoſe nearer have

felt it. No means of peace could be imagined. It was firſt thought on by the grace of God and divine inſpiration, and by the prayers of devout people to the LORD, who, at their requeſt, opened his ears, and took pity on the poor people of Flanders.

I will detail how a peace was made between them and the duke of Burgundy, as minutely as I have before related the cauſe of the war, which originated in the hatreds of Gilbert Mathew, John Lyon and their accomplices, and I ſhall beg you will have the goodneſs to attend to me.

At the time I am now ſpeaking of, the lord Bourchier govered the city of Ghent for the king of England, and Peter du Bois aſſiſted him in maintaining his authority, and retaining the affections of the wicked.

There were ſeveral prudent men that were diſguſted with ſuch diſſenſions, and who had ſuffered much from them: they dared not open themſelves to each other but in ſecret, for if Peter du Bois heard that any perſon was deſirous of peace, he was put to death without mercy, in like manner as he and Philip von Artaveld had ſlain ſir Symon Bete and ſir Gilbert Gente, and latterly, in order to frighten the town of Ghent, they had deſtroyed many of the inhabitants.

When Francis Atremen had been driven from the town of Damme by the king of France, who, having totally burnt and deſtroyed the Quatre Meſtiers, was returned to France, as it has been before related, the principal perſons of Ghent ſuppoſed

poſed the king would, the enſuing ſummer, return before that town with a very powerful army. Peter du Bois and thoſe of his party were unwilling to believe it, adding, they ſhould be very glad to ſee the king come thither, for they had formed ſuch ſtrong alliances with the king of England as to be certain of aſſiſtance. At this time, there were in Ghent two valiant men, of good life and converſation, of moderate birth and fortune, neither of the higheſt nor of the richeſt, who were very much vexed at this war againſt its natural lord the duke of Burgundy, but were afraid openly to declare their ſentiments, from the examples which had been made by Peter du Bois. One of them was a mariner; the other the moſt conſiderable butcher in the market, called James d'Ardembourg. By theſe two men was the buſineſs firſt brought about. In addition to them, I muſt include a worthy knight of Flanders, named ſir John d'Elle, a prudent, intelligent man, who intereſted himſelf much in this affair; but, if it had not been through the means of the two aforementioned perſons, he would not have interfered in it ſo happily; nor, as it may eaſily be believed, could all the knights of Flanders have ſucceeded.

This ſir John d'Elle was much beloved by many in the town Ghent, and he went in and out at his pleaſure without being ſuſpected by any one. At the beginning he was afraid of talking either about war or peace; nor would he have ever done ſo, if it had not been previouſly mentioned by Roger de Cremin and James d'Ardembourg, and

I will tell you how it happened. Theſe two were much diſpleaſed at the continued troubles in Flanders, inſomuch that they converſed together on the ſubject, when Roger ſaid to James, 'Whoever could interfere between this our native town of Ghent, which is ſo much oppreſſed, and the duke of Burgundy our natural lord, would do a deed of great charity, and acquire by it grace from God and praiſe from men; for the differences and confuſion which are ſo unbecoming would by this means be put an end to.'

'You ſpeak truly, Roger,' replied James; 'but it will be a difficult and dangerous thing to do, on account of Peter du Bois: no one dares talk of peace from fear of him, for if he knew of it, thoſe who had meddled in the buſineſs would inſtantly be put to death.' 'What!' ſaid Roger, 'ſhall things then remain always as they are? There muſt be an end to it.' 'Tell me how,' anſwered James, 'and I will cheerfully liſten to you.' Roger replied, 'You are the principal butcher in the market, the richeſt and moſt reſpected: you can talk ſecretly and boldly with your moſt confidential friends and brethren in trade; and, when you ſhall find they underſtand you, by degrees you can draw them more forward. I, on the other hand, who am a mariner, and well beloved by all ſuch ſort of people, whoſe courage I know, and who hate the war, for they have loſt much by it, will remonſtrate with ſome of them on the ſubject, and they will induce others to incline the ſame way: when we ſhall have gained

over

over theſe two trades, which are numerous and powerful, the other trades, and honeſt people who wiſh for peace will join us.' 'Very well,' ſaid James; 'I will ſound my people: do you the ſame by yours.'

Each of them performed his promiſe; and they diſcourſed ſo prudently with their friends on the ſubject that, through the grace of the Holy Spirit, James d'Ardembourg found all his brother butchers well inclined to his way of thinking. Roger, on the other hand, with his eloquence, brought the mariners, who were anxious to regain the pilotage they had been ſo long deprived of, to the ſame opinion. When theſe two honeſt men were converſing on the buſineſs, and had ſhewn how deſirous they had found their people to obtain peace, they ſaid, 'We want a proper perſon to repreſent our ſituation to the duke of Burgundy,' and inſtantly thought of ſir John d'Elle, on whom they determined to call, as he was then in the town. This they did, and loyally told him their whole ſecret, ſaying, 'Sir John, we have ſo effectually worked on our brethren of the trade, they are all eager for peace; but on condition that my lord of Burgundy will engage to pardon every one, and keep to us our ancient privileges, for which we can ſhew ſealed charters.' Sir John replied, 'You ſay well, and I will cheerfully negotiate the matter between you.'

The knight waited on the Duke of Burgundy, who at the time was in France with the king, and related to him all he had heard. He demon-

ſtrated ſo well the advantages of the buſineſs that the duke willingly liſtened to his propoſals. In truth, he was deſirous of peace with Ghent, on account of the intended expedition which he wiſhed the king to make againſt England. His own council adviſed it, as did ſir Guy de la Trimouille, ſir John de Vienne, and alſo the conſtable of France and the lord de Coucy. He therefore told the knight he would aſſent to the terms propoſed, and that he might return with his anſwer to thoſe who had ſent him. The duke inquired if Francis Atremen had been preſent when this matter was brought forward: he ſaid, 'No, my lord: he is governor of the caſtle of Gaure; and I know not if thoſe who have ſent me would like he ſhould be made acquainted with the buſineſs.' 'Tell them,' anſwered the duke, 'to ſpeak to him boldly on the ſubject: he will not do any thing in oppoſition, for I underſtand he moſt earneſtly wiſhes to make his peace with me.'

The knight returned to Ghent with this good news, with which they were well pleaſed. He then went to the caſtle of Gaure to Francis Atremen, when he opened the whole matter to him, but under ſecrecy. Francis, having pauſed a little, replied gaily,—'Since my lord of Burgundy is willing to pardon every thing, and to ſecure to the town of Ghent its privileges, I will no longer be a rebel, but endeavour by all means to obtain my peace.'

The knight left Francis Atremen in Gaure, and returned to the duke of Burgundy in France with the

the account how matters ſtood. The duke heard him with pleaſure, and wrote very amicable letters to thoſe of Ghent, ſealed with his ſeal, and on this iſſue of the treaty the knight went back to Flanders and to Ghent, but he did not carry thither his letters; he, however, gave ſuch aſſurances to Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg that he had them to prodnce, as to lead them to conſider the affair as good as concluded. Now, conſider what great peril theſe men and the knight were in; for, if the lord Bourchier or Peter du Bois had known of it, their lives would have paid the forfeit.

CHAP. XIX.

THE TWO CITIZENS FIX ON A DAY TO ASSEMBLE THEIR FRIENDS, TO ACCOMPLISH THEIR PLAN.—ALL GHENT ARE UNANIMOUS FOR PEACE, NOTWITHSTANDING THE ATTEMPTS TO PREVENT IT BY THE GOVERNOR FOR THE KING OF ENGLAND AND PETER DU BOIS.

ROGER Cremin and James d'Ardembourg, by whom the whole buſineſs was managed, ſaid to ſir John d'Elle; 'Come hither on Thurſday morning exactly at nine o'clock, and bring my lord of Burgundy's letters with you: we will ſhew them, if we ſucceed in our intentions, to the commonalty

alty of Ghent, and have them publicly read; by which means they will put greater confidence in them, for, at the time we mention, we ſhall be maſters of the town, or dead men.' Sir John replied, he would do as they had ſaid, when their council broke up, and ſir John left the town to conſider how he was to act.

Theſe two citizens were very active to complete their plans, and conſtantly buſy with their principal ſupporters the deans of guilds. By their aſſiduity, they had gained over the greater number of the populace; and it was ordered that, at eight o'clock on Thurſday, they ſhould quit their houſes, the banner of Flanders diſplayed before them, and ſhout, 'Flanders for the Lion! the lord of the country grants peace to the good town of Ghent, and pardon to all evil-minded perſons.'

This buſineſs could not be carried on ſo ſecretly but that Peter du Bois knew of it: the moment he had the information, he went to the lord Bourchier, who was governor in chief for the king of England, and ſaid to him,—'My lord, Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg intend aſſembling the inhabitants to-morrow morning, at eight o'clock, in the market-place with the banner of Flanders in their hands, and are to ſhout out through the ſtreets, 'Flanders for the Lion! the lord of the country grants peace and pardon to the good town of Ghent for all miſdemeanours.' What are we now to do? The king of England will no longer be obeyed in this town, if we be not beforehand with them, and drive them out of our territories.'

'How

'How ſhall we do this?' replied the lord Bourchier. Peter ſaid, 'We muſt aſſemble all our people to-morrow morning in the town-houſe, when, after we have armed them, we will march through the town, crying out alſo, 'Flanders for the Lion! the king of England for the country, and lord of the town of Ghent.' When we have got to the market-place, thoſe who are our friends will join us, and then we will kill all traitors and rebels.' 'Be it ſo,' anſwered lord Bourchier: 'you have well imagined it, and it ſhall be done.'

God was wondrous kind to theſe two honeſt citizens; for they had intelligence given them of the arrangement juſt mentioned. On hearing it, they were not diſmayed, but in the evening viſited their friends the deacons, and ſaid to them,—'We had fixed to be in the market-place to-morrow at eight, but we now muſt change it to ſeven o'clock.' This they did to break the meaſures of Peter du Bois, who was on the watch with forty others, and all agreed to change the hour.

On Thurſday morning, the lord Bourchier with ſixty of his men went to the town-houſe. Peter du Bois came thither with his forty, when they all armed and put themſelves in good array.

Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg aſſembled their friends at the place they had fixed on, when the greater part of thoſe who had been deans of guilds joined them. They then diſplayed the banner of the earl, began their march through the town, ſhouting the cry before mentioned. Thoſe that heard it, and ſaw the deacons of their trades

and

and the banner of the earl, mixed with their companions and followed the banner as faſt as poſſible. They arrived at the market-place on the point of ſeven o'clock, where having halted, and placed the banner of the earl before them, they were continually joined by crowds of people, who drew up among them.

News was carried to lord Bourchier and Peter du Bois, who were in the town-houſe muſtering their men, that Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg had taken poſſeſſion of the market-place. On hearing this, they marched out with the banner of England diſplayed; and, as they advanced, they ſhouted their cry. In this manner they arrived in the market-place, and drew up oppoſite to the others, waiting for more to join them; but very few did ſo, for they went to thoſe who had the earl's banner, inſomuch that Roger and James had eighty from every hundred men who came thither. The market-place was full of men at arms, who kept ſilent, eyeing each other.

Peter du Bois was thunderſtruck when he perceived that the deans of guilds, with their men, had united with Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg, and began to fear for his life: for he ſaw that thoſe who had been uſed to follow him now avoided him. He therefore quietly got out of the crowd, and went to hide himſelf for fear of being killed.

Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg finding, from appearances, that almoſt all the inhabitants had put themſelves under their banner, were much

much rejoiced, and with reaſon, for they then well knew things were in a good train, and that the people would keep peace with their lord. They advanced, with a large detachment of their men, leaving the main body behind, with the banner of Flanders carried before them, towards the lord Bourchier and the Engliſh, who did not think their lives very ſecure. Roger halted oppoſite to lord Bouchier, and ſaid, 'What have you done with Peter du Bois? We wiſh to know your intentions, and whether you are friends or enemies?'

The knight replied, that he imagined Peter du Bois was there; but, when he found he was gone, ſaid—'I know not what is become of him: I thought he had been with me; for my part I ſhall be ſteady to the king of England, who is my right natural lord, and who has ſent me hither, at your own entreaties, if you will be pleaſed to remember it.' 'That is true,' they anſwered; 'for, if the good town of Ghent had not ſent for you, we would have put you to death; but in honour to the king of England, who has ordered you hither at our requeſt, neither you nor your men ſhall run the ſmalleſt riſk. We will ſave you from all danger, and conduct you, or have you conducted, as far as the town of Calais. Retire now, therefore, peaceably to your houſes, without ſtirring thence for any thing you may ſee or hear, as we are determined to have for our lord the duke of Burgundy, and no longer to carry on the war.'

The knight was much pleaſed with this ſpeech, and

and ſaid,—'My fair ſirs and good friends, ſince it may not be otherwiſe, God aſſiſt you! and I thank you for the offers you make me.'

CHAP. XX.

SIR JOHN D'ELLE BRINGS LETTERS PATENT OF PEACE AND PARDON TO THE MEN OF GHENT, FROM THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY.—THIS PEACE IS CONFIRMED AT TOURNAY, BY OTHER LETTERS PATENT ON EACH SIDE.

THE lord Bourchier and his men quietly left the market-place, and thoſe of Ghent who had been with him, ſlyly ſlipt away to hide themſelves, or mixed with the others, under their banner.

Shortly afterwards, ſir John d'Elle entered the town and rode to the market-place, bringing with him letters patent, couched in fair language, and properly ſealed, from the duke of Burgundy to the town of Ghent, which were publicly read and ſhewn to all, and gave univerſal ſatisfaction. Francis Atremen was now ſent for from the caſtle of Gaure, who inſtantly came, and agreed to the whole of the treaty, ſaying, 'it was well done.'

Sir John d'Elle now returned to the duke of Burgundy, who was with his ducheſs at Arras: he related to him all that had paſſed at Ghent; that Peter

Peter du Bois had loſt all power there, and would probably have been killed had he been found; that Francis Atremen had behaved gallantly and loyally in reſpect to the peace. The duke was much pleaſed with all this, and ſigned a truce to laſt until the firſt day of January; and ordered a day to be fixed on, in the mean time, for conferences to be holden at Tournay, to confirm the peace. With theſe papers properly ſealed and ſigned, the knight returned to Ghent; which gave ſuch joy to every one, as plainly ſhewed peace was the unanimous wiſh.

The lord Bourchier, the Engliſh, and Peter du Bois, ſtill remained in Ghent, but nothing was done againſt them. Peter du Bois continued in peace, becauſe he had ſworn he would never more interfere in any war with the good people of Ghent againſt their lord the duke of Burgundy. He was, however, much aſſiſted in this peril by Francis Atremen, who had ſpoken handſomely for him to the inhabitants; and for this reaſon Peter remained unmoleſted: beſides, they knew that Peter had only held ſimilar opinions to their own, and that he was a good and loyal captain.

During the truce which had been made between the duke of Burgundy and the town of Ghent, they elected thoſe who were to attend the conference at Tournay. Francis Atremen was choſen as principal, becauſe he was well mannered, of good diſpoſitions, and acquainted with the lords he was to treat with: Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg were elected with him. They arrived at

Tournay

Tournay during the octave of St. Andrew, eſcorted by fifty horſe, and lodged altogether at the Salmon Inn, in the ſtreet of St. Brice.

The duke and ducheſs of Burgundy, with madame de Nevers, their daughter, came thither on the fifth day of December, and entered Tournay by the gate of Lille. The Ghent men inſtantly rode out to meet them, on handſome horſes: they did not diſmount, but, bare-headed, ſaluted the duke and the ladies.

The duke paſſed haſtily through the town, to meet the ducheſs of Brabant, who came that ſame day, and entered it by the Mechlin gate: ſhe was lodged at the biſhop's palace. The conferences now began, relative to the treaty which the duke had granted to Ghent. Sir John d'Elle attended them, as he had, with much difficulty, brought this buſineſs to an end between the two parties. At laſt, at the entreaties of the ducheſs of Burgundy and madame de Nevers, the duke pardoned every thing; and peace was proclaimed, after it had been drawn out and ſealed by both parties, in manner following.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

THE TREATY OF PEACE BETWEEN DUKE PHILIP OF BURGUNDY, EARL OF FLANDERS, IN RIGHT OF HIS WIFE, WITH THE TOWN OF GHENT AND ITS ALLIES.

PHILIP of France, duke of Burgundy, earl of Flanders and Artois, palatine of Burgundy, lord of Salins, count of Rethel and lord of Mechlin, with Margaret, ducheſs and counteſs of the countries aforeſaid, to all whom theſe preſents ſhall come, greeting: be it known, that our well-beloved ſubjects, the ſheriffs, deacons, council and commonalty, of our good town of Ghent, having humbly ſupplicated our lord, the king, and us, to have mercy upon them, and that our ſaid lord together with us having had compaſſion on by them, by other letters than theſe preſent, and for the reaſons contained in them, have pardoned and forgiven all miſdemeanours and offences committed them, our ſubjects of Ghent; and have fully confirmed all their ſaid cuſtoms, privileges and franchiſes, provided they place themſelves wholly under the obedience of our ſaid lord and us. Which grace and pardon the aforeſaid ſubjects of Ghent and their allies have very humbly received from our ſaid lord and us, by their letters and ambaſſadors, which they have ſent to our ſaid lord and us, being at Tournay, and have renounced all wars and diſ-

putes, being returned moſt heartily to their obedience, to the ſaid lord and us, promiſing henceforward to be good friends and loyal ſubjects to our ſaid lord the king, as to their ſovereign lord, and to us as their natural lord, in right of Margaret, our wife, being their natural lady and heireſs. For which cauſe our ſaid lord and ourſelves, have received our ſaid ſubjects of Ghent and their allies into our favour, and have granted them letters of remiſſion for all offences, ſingly and abſolutely, with the reſtitution of all their franchiſes and privileges, as will be more fully apparent in theſe our letters. After which grace and remiſſion, our ſaid ſubjects of our good town of Ghent, having made ſeveral ſupplications which we have received, and have had maturely conſidered by our council, and they according with the common good of the country, in order to put a final end to all diſſentions, from our love and favour to our good ſubjects, have ordered as follows, in regard to theſe ſaid ſupplications:

Firſt, with regard to their requeſt, that we would confirm the privileges of Courtray, Oudenarde, Grammont, Meule, Dendremonde, Ruſſelmonde, Aloſt, Ath, Arclo, Breuilles, Deynſe, and the juriſdictions of theſe towns in the low countries. We order the inhabitants of theſe ſaid towns to wait on us with their ſaid privileges; and, after examination of them by our council, we will ſo act, that our ſaid ſubjects of Ghent, and the other good towns, ſhall be ſatisfied therewith: and ſhould any of the ſaid privileges be loſt or accidentally

dentally deſtroyed, after ſtrict enquiry made on the ſubject, we will provide accordingly, as it has been before mentioned.

Item,—as to their requeſts concerning commerce, we conſent that it have free courſe through our country of Flanders, on paying the uſual duties.

Item,—ſhould any of their friends or allies be hereafter arreſted in any foreign country, on account of the late diſturbances, we will have them ſent home in ſafety. We likewiſe conſent, that if any of them be thus arreſted, we will aſſiſt and defend them to the utmoſt of our power, as good lords ſhould do to loyal ſubjects.

Item,—we are willing that all priſoners of their party, ſuppoſing them to have agreed for their ranſom, ſhall have their liberty, on paying the ſtipulated ſum and other reaſonable expences; provided, however, that if any of the ſaid priſoners, their relations or friends, hold any fortreſſes againſt us, ſuch be firſt given up: and on like terms ſhall thoſe attached to us, and confined by our ſubjects of Ghent or their allies be ſet at liberty.

Item,—out of our abundant goodneſs we have ordered, and by theſe preſents do order, that all thoſe who may have been baniſhed from our good towns of Bruges, Ypres or other places, on account of theſe diſſentions, as well as thoſe who may have been baniſhed by law and juſtice from our good town of Ghent, or who may have voluntarily abſented themſelves, be reſtored, ſo that they may return to the ſaid towns and reſide; provided

thoſe who have held for the party of Ghent be in like manner reſtored to their different towns or country, and when they re-enter the towns to which they are reſtored, they make oath before our officers in the town of Ghent, and ſwear to keep the peace in ſuch towns, and not commit any damage either in a public or private manner on any of the inhabitants. In the like manner will thoſe ſwear who ſhall re-enter Ghent.

Item,—all thoſe who may return to our town of Ghent, with their allies and other inhabitants, will be obedient to our ſaid lord and to us, and will promptly put themſelves under our obedience. With regard to thoſe who may now be abſent, they ſhall be reſtored, in time hereafter to be ſpecified, to their fiefs, houſes, lands and inheritances, in whatever place they may be, notwithſtanding any miſchiefs they may have done during, and on account of theſe diſturbances, in as full a manner as they enjoyed them previous to that period.

Item,—ſhould any of the inhabitants of the ſaid town of Ghent, or their allies, be in Brabant, Hainault, Holland, Zealand, Cambreſis, or in the biſhoprick of Liege, and ſhould they, within two months after the publication of this peace, put themſelves under the obedience of our ſaid lord and us, and furthermore take ſuch oaths as ſhall be hereafter declared before us, or before thoſe whom we may appoint to receive them, they ſhall fully enjoy all the before-mentioned pardons and graces. And thoſe who may be in England,

Friſe-

Friſeland or Germany, ſhould they, within four months as aforeſaid, put themſelves under our obedience, ſhall enjoy the like privileges. If ſuch as may be beyond ſea at Rome, or at St. Jago de Compoſtella, ſhould, within one year from the publication of the peace, without fraud, take the oaths aforeſaid, they ſhall partake of the ſame privileges, and in like manner all thoſe baniſhed by judgment of law, or ſuch perſons as may have voluntarily abſented themſelves on account of the diſſentions; ſhall be reſtored to their fiefs, houſes, lands and inheritances, according to their ſeveral claims.

Item,—with regard to moveable property, which may have been taken on both ſides, no reſtitution ſhall be made, but each party remain acquitted to each other; unleſs, indeed, reſtitutions be made, to diſcharge the conſciences of thoſe who may have taken ſuch things.

Item,—thoſe now in poſſeſſion of the houſes which are to be reſtored, as well on one ſide as on the other, ſhall not carry away any fixture whatever; and ſuch houſes ſhall be reſtored with all their appurtenances and rents which may then be due; and henceforward all rents and profits ſhall be collected peaceably by thoſe to whom they legally belong.

Item,—it having been reported to us, that ſome of our ſubjects of Ghent or their allies, have done homage for fiefs which they hold, to other lords than to thoſe to whom they legally appertain, and by ſuch means have forfeited their

fiefs, notwithſtanding which, we will, out of our grace, that ſuch fiefs remain to them, on performing homage to us, for what had been ours, and of our vaſſals holding from us; and we acknowledge, out of our eſpecial favour, any leaſes or recogniſances as legal between the preſent parties.

Item,—Our ſaid ſubjects of Ghent, the ſheriffs, deacons, council, commonalty and their allies, by our orders, and their own free-will, having renounced all alliances, oaths, obligations, acts and homages, which they, or any of them, may have done to the king of England, to his commiſſioners, deputies or officers, or to others who may not be in the good pleaſure of our ſaid lord or of us, do now make oath that from henceforward they will be good and loyal ſubjects to our ſaid lord, and to his ſucceſſors, the kings of France, as well as to us; and will perform ſuch ſervices to us and to our ſucceſſors, as good and loyal ſubjects are bounden to do to their lord or lady, to defend their perſons, honour, inheritances and rights, and prevent all who may endeavour to invade them, by giving direct information to our officers, ſaving always their own rights and privileges.

Item,—that our ſubjects of our good town of Ghent may remain always in peace, and under the obedience of our ſaid lord the king and us, as well as of our heirs, the earls of Flanders our ſucceſſors, and that all diſturbances which may in future ariſe be prevented, we will that all theſe aforeſaid articles be ſtrictly maintained without any infringe-

fringement. And we forbid our ſubjects, however ill they may have acted towards us in the late diſſentions, to venture in any way, either directly or indirectly, by word or deed, to offer any injury, by reproaches or inſults, to the aforeſaid men of Ghent.

Item,—if any one act contrary to theſe our orders, and injure thoſe of Ghent, under pretence of taking our part, for what may have paſſed during the late diſturbances, ſuch offence ſhall be brought before the lord, and the courts to which it may belong; and ſuch criminal act ſhall be puniſhed by corporal puniſhment and confiſcation of goods, as ſhall in like manner the offences of their accomplices, abettors, and thoſe who may attempt to conceal them, after having been convicted of infringing the peace, as well by the juſtice of our officers or of other lords, as by the laws of the country to whoſe juriſdiction it may more immediately appertain: a reaſonable ſatisfaction ſhall be made to the injured party, from the criminal's effects, and the ſurplus be paid to us, or to whatever lord has the right to it, ſaving the privileges of the towns.

Item,—ſhould any of the citizens of our ſaid town of Ghent be baniſhed from the ſaid town for fraction of the peace; and ſuppoſing that prior to this peace, by the privileges of the town, their effects could not be confiſcated; nevertheleſs, for the better preſerving this peace, they ſhall, for ſuch cauſe, be confiſcated, and from ſuch effects ſhall reparation be made to the party injured, as has been before ſtated, and the reſidue revert to their legal heirs, juſt as if ſuch perſons were de-

ceaſed, ſaving in all other reſpects the privileges of our good town of Ghent: and if ſuch wicked perſons cannot be arreſted, ſo as to ſuffer corporal puniſhment, their effects ſhall be confiſcated as aforeſaid.

Item,—if any abuſive language ſhall be uttered, and come to the ears of any of our civil officers, againſt this our order, we will that the perſon uttering ſuch be puniſhed by arbitrary fine, ſo as to ſerve for an example to others, by the legal judges of ſuch places before whom he or they ſhall have been brought, ſaving the franchiſes and privileges of thoſe places.

Item,—if any churchman be guilty of any acts againſt the ſaid peace, let him be transferred to his ordinary, to be puniſhed as an infringer of the peace, according as the caſe may require.

Item,—this ſame peace ſhall be publicly proclaimed and publiſhed in the ſaid town of Ghent, and in all our other towns in Flanders.

Item—ſhould any doubts or obſcurity appear on the face of the ſaid articles of peace, we declare, and will order our council to declare, that ſuch doubts and obſcurities, ſhould any ſuch ariſe, ſhall be interpreted and explained in ſuch manner as ſhall give ſatisfaction to the complainants.

And we, the deans and commonalty of the town of Ghent, do by theſe preſents accept for ourſelves and for our allies theſe acts of clemency, pardon and grace done to us, by king Charles, our lord paramount, and by the aforeſaid duke and ducheſs, earl and counteſs of Flanders, our lawful

and

and natural lords: and we thank them from the bottom of our hearts, for theſe ſaid graces and pardons. We alſo ſwear obedience, as good and loyal ſubjects ſhould do, to them, and will guard, to the utmoſt of our power, their perſons and honour.

In teſtimony of which, we the duke and ducheſs aforeſaid have had our ſeals put to theſe letters;—and we the ſheriffs, deacons and commonalty of the town of Ghent have alſo affixed the ſeal of the town.

In addition to which, we the duke and ducheſs aforeſaid have entreated and do entreat our very dear and well-beloved aunt the ducheſs of Luxembourg and Brabant, and our very dear and well-beloved brother duke Albert of Bavaria. And we alſo, the ſheriffs, deacons and commonalty of Ghent, entreat the very powerful and puiſſant princeſs the lady ducheſs of Luxembourg and Brabant, and the high and puiſſant prince duke Albert aforeſaid. And alſo we the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy, and we the ſheriffs, council and commonalty of Ghent, entreat the barons and nobles of the country of Flanders, hereafter named, from the good towns of Bruges, Ypres, the Franconate, Mechlin and Antwerp, for the ſecurity of the peace, and aſſurance of the truth of the above-mentioned articles, to affix their own ſeals, and the ſeals of the different towns, to theſe preſents.

And we Jane, by the grace of God, ducheſs of Luxembourg, Brabant and Limbourg; and we duke Albert of Bavaria, bailiff, regent and heir to the countries of Hainault, Holland, Zealand,

and

and lordſhip of Frizeland: we William, eldeſt ſon to the earl of Namur and lord of Sluys; Hugh lord d'Antoing and warden of Ghent, John lord de Guiſtelles and de Harues, Henry de Bruges, lord de Dixmude and de Havre, John lord de Gonuſeberge and de la Jentoiſe, Arnold de Jouſte lord d'Eſtournay, Philip lord d'Axalle, Louis de la Haſle baſtard of Flanders, Girard de Raſenhen lord de Baſerode, Walter lord de Halun, Philip de Hamur lord d'Eque, John Villain, lord de St. Jean d'Outre, warden of Ypres, Lewis lord de Lambres knight: and we the burgomaſters, with the ſheriffs of the towns of Bruges and Ypres: we Philip de Redehen and de Montferrant ſheriffs: Montfranc de Montamar knight, ſheriff of the Franconate, in the name of that territory, which has no common ſeal: and we, the council of the towns of Mechlin and Antwerp,—have at the aforeſaid requeſt, for the good of the peace, and for the greater ſecurity and truth of all the forementioned articles, and every one of them, cauſed to be affixed our ſeals and the ſeals of the aforeſaid towns to theſe preſents.—Executed at Tournay the 18th day of December, in the year of grace 1385.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

PETER DU BOIS, AFTER THE CONCLUSION OF THE PEACE, RETIRES TO ENGLAND WITH THE LORD BOURCHIER, GOVERNOR OF GHENT.

WHEN all theſe ordinances and treaties of peace had been engroſſed and ſealed, they were publiſhed before the parties: the duke of Burgundy had one part, and the deputies from Ghent the other. Francis Atremen and the deputation with him moſt humbly took leave of the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy, and of the ducheſs of Brabant, thanking them repeatedly, and offering their ſervices to them for ever.

The good lady of Brabant returned their thanks, and kindly entreated them firmly to maintain the peace, and induce others to do the ſame, and deſired them never to rebel againſt their lord and lady, for they had ſeen with how much difficulty peace had now been brought about. They thanked her heartily, and the conference broke up, and each retired to his home.

The duke and ducheſs of Burgundy went to Lille, where they ſtaid ſome time, and the deputation returned to Ghent. When Peter du Bois ſaw peace ſo firmly eſtabliſhed that there was not a poſſibility of any future diſturbance or rebellion, he was greatly caſt down: he doubted whether to remain in Ghent, conſidering that now every thing had

had been pardoned under the ſeal of the duke, ſo that none were afraid, or whether to accompany the lord Bourchier and the Engliſh to England. Having paid due attention to all circumſtances; he did not think he could venture to truſt himſelf in Ghent. True it is, that Francis Atremen, when he mentioned his intentions of quitting Ghent, ſaid, 'Peter, every thing is pardoned; and you know, by the treaties made and ſealed with my lord of Burgundy, that no one can ſuffer for what has paſſed.'

'Francis,' replied Peter, 'real pardons do not always lie in letters patent: one may pardon by word of mouth, and give letters to the ſame effect, but hatred may ſtill lie in the heart. I am but a man of low birth, and little conſequence in the town of Ghent, and yet have done all in my power to maintain its rights and privileges. Do you think, that in two or three years hence, the people will remember it? There are perſons of high birth in the town: Gilbert Matthew and his brethren, who were enemies to my maſter John Lyon, will return, and will never view me but with evil eyes; as will alſo the relations of ſir Gilbert Gente and ſir Symon Bete, who were ſlain by me: never can I truſt myſelf ſafely in this town. And will you venture to remain among ſuch traitors, who have broken their faith with the king of England? I ſwear, that you yourſelf will in the end ſuffer.'

'I know not what may happen,' anſwered Francis; 'but I have ſuch faith in the treaty, and

in

in the promiſes of my lord and lady of Burgundy, that I ſhall certainly ſtay here.'

Peter du Bois made a ſupplication to the ſheriffs, deacons, council and governors of Ghent, ſaying, 'My fair gentlemen, I have ſerved the good town of Ghent to the very utmoſt of my power: many times have I hazarded my life for it: and for all theſe ſervices the only reward I aſk is, that you would have me eſcorted in ſafety with the lord Bourchier, whom you have ordered to England.' Thoſe preſent unanimouſly complied with his wiſh; and I muſt ſay, that Roger Cremin and James d'Ardembourg, by whom the peace had been made, were more glad than ſorry at his departure; as were likewiſe the principal perſons in Ghent, who wiſhed peace and love to all.

Peter du Bois made his preparations, and left Ghent in company with lord Bourchier and the Engliſh, carrying with him his whole fortune; for, in truth, he was well provided with gold, ſilver and jewels. Sir John d'Elle eſcorted them, under a paſſport from the duke of Burgundy, as far as the town of Calais, and then returned to Ghent.

The lord Bourchier and Peter du Bois made as much haſte as poſſible to England, where he was preſented to the king and his uncles, to whom he related every thing which had happened in the affairs of Ghent, and the means by which peace had been concluded with the duke of Burgundy. The king, the duke of Lancaſter and his brothers entertained him handſomely, and were well pleaſed that he had come to them. The king retained

him

him in his ſervice, and inſtantly gave him one hundred marcs yearly revenue, aſſigned on the wool-ſtaple of London. Thus did Peter du Bois remain in England, and the good town of Ghent in peace. Roger Cremin was appointed deacon of the pilots of Ghent, which is a moſt profitable office when commerce is uninterrupted; and James d'Ardembourg was made deacon of the ſmall crafts, which is likewiſe an office of great truſt in the town of Ghent.

CHAP. XXIII.

FROISSART GIVES HIS REASONS FOR VISITING THE COUNT DE FOIX.

I HAVE been a conſiderable time without ſpeaking of the affairs of diſtant countries. Thoſe nearer home were at the moment ſo freſh in my memory, and ſo much more agreeable, that I have delayed mentioning others. Such valiant men, however, as were deſirous of advancing themſelves, whether in Caſtille, Portugal, Gaſcony, Rouergue, Quercy, Limouſin, or in Bigorre, did not remain idle, but employed themſelves underhand againſt each other, in the wiſh to perform deeds of arms that might ſurpriſe and conquer towns, caſtles or fortreſſes. And for this reaſon, I, ſir

I, ſir John Froiſſart, having undertaken to indite and chronicle this hiſtory, at the requeſt and pleaſure of the high and renowned prince, Guy de Châtillon, count of Blois, lord of Aveſnes, Beauvois, Eſtonnehonne, de la Geude, my good and ſovereign maſter and lord, conſidered in myſelf that grand deeds of arms would not fall out for a long ſpace of time in the marches of Picardy and the country of Flanders, ſince there was peace in thoſe parts; and it was very tireſome to me to be idle, for I well know, that when the time ſhall come, when I ſhall be dead and rotten, this grand and noble hiſtory will be in much faſhion, and all noble and valiant perſons will take pleaſure in it, and gain from it augmentation of profit. And moreover, ſince I had, God be thanked, ſenſe and memory, and a good collection of all paſt things, with a clear underſtanding to conceive all the facts of which I ſhould be informed, touching my principal matters, and ſince I was of an age and conſtitution of body, and fit to encounter difficulties, I determined not to delay purſuing my ſubject. And in order to know the truth of diſtant tranſactions, without ſending upon the enquiry any other in place of myſelf, I took an opportunity of viſiting that high and redoubted prince Gaſton Phœbus count de Foix and de Béarn; for I well knew, that if I were ſo fortunate as to be admitted into his houſehold, and to remain there in quiet, I could not chooſe a ſituation more proper to learn the truth of every event, as numbers of foreign knights and ſquires aſſembled there from all countries, attracted

tracted by his high birth and gentility. It fell out juſt as I had imagined.

I told this my intention to my very renowned lord the count de Blois, and alſo the journey I wiſhed to undertake, who gave me letters of recommendation to the count de Foix. I began my journey, inquiring on all ſides for news, and, through the grace of God, continued it, without peril or hurt, until I arrived at the count's reſidence, at Orthés in Béarn, on St. Catherine's day in the year of grace 1388.

The count de Foix, as ſoon as he ſaw me, gave me a hearty welcome, adding, with a ſmile and in good French, that he was well acquainted with me, though he had never ſeen me before, but he had frequently heard me ſpoken of. He retained me in his houſehold, and, by means of the letters which I had brought, gave me full liberty to act as I pleaſed as long as I ſhould wiſh to remain with him. I there learnt the greater part of thoſe events which had happened in the kingdoms of Caſtille, Portugal, Navarre, Arragon, even in England, in the Bourbonnois, and every thing concerning the whole of Gaſcony: he himſelf, when I put any queſtion to him, anſwered it moſt readily, ſaying, that the hiſtory I was employed on would in times to come be more ſought after than any other; 'becauſe,' added he, 'my fair ſir, more gallant deeds of arms have been performed within theſe laſt fifty years, and more wonderful things have happened, than for three hundred years before.'

I was

I was thus received by the count de Foix in his hotel, and entertained according to my pleaſure. My wiſh was to inquire after news relative to my hiſtory, and I had at my option, barons, knights and ſquires, who gave me information, as well as the gallant count de Foix himſelf. I will therefore illuſtrate, in good language, all I there learnt, to add to my materials, and to give examples to thoſe worthies who wiſh to advance themſelves in renown. If I have heretofore dwelt on gallant deeds, attacks and captures, of caſtles, towns and forts, on hard-fought battles and ſkirmiſhes, many more will now enſue; all of which, by God's grace, I will truly narrate.

CHAP. XXIV.

A SHORT REPETITION OF WHAT IS CONTAINED IN SOME OF THE PRECEDING CHAPTERS, FOR THE BETTER UNDERSTANDING THE HISTORY OF THE WAR BETWEEN KING JOHN OF CASTILLE AND THE BASTARD OF PORTUGAL, BROTHER TO THE LATE KING DON FERNANDO.

YOU have before ſeen in this hiſtory*, that Edmund earl of Cambridge, ſon of the late king of England, had departed from Portugal, and

* Vol. II. chap. cliv.

embarked with his army at Liſbon, notwithſtanding he had betrothed his ſon John to the lady Beatrice, daughter of don Fernando king of Portugal.

The earl was diſcontented with Fernando, becauſe he had remained for fifteen days encamped with his army before king John of Caſtille, without any engagement, and had entered into a treaty with the Caſtillians againſt his opinion. This had greatly diſpleaſed him; and, when the treaty was negotiating, he thus ſpoke; 'Sir king, take good heed what you do; for we are not come into this country to eat, drink and to rob, but to make war on this ſon of a baſtard who calls himſelf king of Caſtille and count of Tranſtamare, to conquer our lawful inheritance, which this John de Tranſtamare holds and poſſeſſes. You well know, that by marriage with the heireſſes of the kingdom of Caſtille, daughters of don Pedro, who was your couſin-german, my brother and myſelf have the claims of right; and you have offered to aſſiſt in the recovery of this kingdom (for every good lord ought to lean to the lawful right, and not to its oppoſite) by your knight who here ſtands, and whom you ſent to England to ſay, that if we would bring into this country two thouſand lances and from two to three thouſand archers, with the aid you would give us, you had great hopes that we might regain our inheritance. I am therefore come hither, not indeed with as many in number as you wrote for; but thoſe I have are well inclined, and bold enough to abide the event of a battle,

if

if joined by your army, againſt the force which the count de Tranſtamare has at this moment: and we ſhall be much diſſatisfied with your conduct if a battle do not take place.'

Such were the words ſpoken by the earl of Cambridge to the king of Portugal, before his departure, who diſtinctly heard them; but, nevertheleſs, he dared not offer battle to the Caſtillians, although they were within ſight of each other. There were none of his council who did not ſay,—'Sir, the army of the king of Caſtille is at this moment too powerful; and if, by accident, you loſe the day, you will loſe your crown, without any chance of recovering it: you had better, therefore, endure much, than do any thing wherein is ſuch great peril and riſk.'

The earl of Cambridge, finding he could not gain any thing, returned to Liſbon, ordered his veſſels to be made ready, and took leave of the king of Portugal. When he embarked, he would not leave his ſon John with the king and the damſel that was to be his wife, but ſailed for England, leaving none behind. Such was the end of the Portugueſe armament at this ſeaſon.

The earl of Cambridge, on his arrival in England, repreſented to his brother, the duke of Lancaſter, how the king of Portugal had acted, and the ſtate of that country. The duke became very thoughtful, for he ſaw that the conqueſt of Caſtille was very diſtant and doubtful: beſides, his nephew, king Richard, had in his council thoſe who were unfriendly to him, more eſpecially the earl of

Oxford, who had the ſole management of the king. This lord did every thing in his power to make a breach between the king and his uncles. He ſaid to him,—'Sir, if you wiſh to ſupport your two uncles, my lords of Lancaſter and of Cambridge, in their war with Spain, it will coſt you the whole revenue of England, and they will not at laſt gain any thing. It will be more prudent to keep at home men and money, than that they ſhould be ſcattered abroad without any profit to yourſelf: you had better guard and defend your own inheritance, which is invaded on all ſides from France and Scotland, than employ your men elſewhere.'

The young king was well inclined to follow this advice of the earl, for he loved him with his whole heart, they having been brought up together. The earl of Oxford was connected with ſeveral Engliſh knights, and never acted without the advice of ſir Simon Burley, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir Nicholas Bramber, ſir John Beauchamp, ſir John Saliſbury and ſir Michael de la Pole: ſir Thomas Trivet and ſir William Elmham were alſo named among his adviſers. From theſe differences between the king and his uncles, and the nobles with the commonalty, many ſerious ills befel England, as I ſhall hereafter relate in the courſe of this hiſtory.

Not long after the departure of the earl of Cambridge from Portugal king Fernando fell ill. His diſorder, after oppreſſing him with languor for a year,

year, cauſed his death. He had no other children but the queen of Spain.

The king of Caſtille received information that the realm of Portugal was now fallen to him, as the rightful ſucceſſor to the deceaſed king. Many councils were holden on this occaſion; but, when they ſpoke to him on the ſubject, he replied, 'The Portugueſe are an obſtinate race: I ſhall never gain them but by conqueſt.'

The Portugueſe, finding themſelves without a king, took council together, and reſolved to ſend a deputation to a baſtard-brother of king Fernando, a valiant and wiſe man called Denis *; but he was a monk, and maſter of the order of Avis. They declared, they had much rather be under the government of this valiant man, than of the king of Caſtille; for, in the eyes of God, he who acted well was no baſtard.

The grandmaſter was exceedingly rejoiced on hearing the univerſal good will the four principal cities in Portugal bore him; and that the affection

* Froiſſart miſtakes one brother for another. Peter the ſevere had three children by Inès de Caſtro: Denis, the eldeſt, was confined at this time in the priſons of Spain. John, the perſon meant in the text, was the ſon of Peter by Thereſa Lauzezzo, and ſurnamed the Father of his Country. He was grand maſter of the order of Avis; and, after the death of his brother Ferdinand, was choſen king, to the prejudice of Beatrice, only child of Ferdinand. Pope Urban, by diſpenſation, freed him from his religious vows in 1387. He married Philippa, daughter of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaſter, by Blanche of Caſtille, by whom he had ſeveral children.—Moreri—*Art de Verifier les Dates.*

of Liſbon and the others was ſo ſtrong, they were deſirous of crowning him their king. He ſecretly wrote to his friends, and went to Liſbon, which is the principal town in Portugal. The townſmen received him joyfully, and demanded, ſhould they crown him king, would he be good and loyal, and preſerve the country in its privileges? He anſwered, that he would, and be the beſt king they ever had.

Upon this, the citizens of Liſbon wrote to thoſe of Coimbra, Oporto and Ourique, which are the keys of the realm, that for their mutual advantage, they were deſirous to crown king the grand-maſter Denis, who was wiſe and valiant, of good conduct, and brother to king Fernando; for that the kingdom of Portugal could not longer remain without a head, as well for fear of the Caſtillians, as of the infidels at Granada and Bugia, who bordered on the country.

Theſe four principal towns, and the land proprietors of Portugal, excepting a few great barons and knights, were inclined to favour his election; but ſome barons ſaid, it was not right a baſtard ſhould be crowned king, if he were not of the beſt diſpoſitions. The towns replied, that he was ſo qualified, and that it was a caſe of neceſſity, for they had no other choice; that he was a man of ſenſe and of courage in arms; that there was a precedent in Henry of Tranſtamare, who had been crowned king of all Caſtille, by the choice of the country, for its common advantages, even during the lifetime of don Pedro.

The

The election, whether the nobles would or not, took place: and Denis was crowned king in the cathedral church of Coimbra, with the unanimous conſent of the commonalty of Portugal. He ſwore to adminiſter juſtice honeſtly, to maintain the people in all the rights and privileges which they had enjoyed from former times, and which they were entitled to have preſerved to them. This gave great ſatisfaction to all.

When news of this was carried to the king of Caſtille, he was wroth for two reaſons: one, becauſe his queen was the legal heireſs of Portugal; the other, that the people had crowned a king of Portugal by election. He therefore made this a pretext for war, and demanded from the town of Liſbon two hundred thouſand florins, which king Fernando had promiſed him when he eſpouſed his daughter. He ſent as ambaſſadors to Portugal the count de Tierme and de Rebede, and the biſhop of Burgos, with a grand ſuite of attendants. When arrived at Santaren, the laſt town of Caſtille towards Liſbon, they ſent a herald to the king and citizens of Liſbon, to demand paſſports for the ſecurity of their coming and returning. Theſe were inſtantly granted. The council of the town were aſſembled to hear explained the cauſe of their embaſſy: at the end of their harangue they ſaid,—'You Liſboners ſhould properly underſtand this matter, and not be ſurpriſed if our king, in his anger, demands ſo large a ſum from you, which you are bound to pay him, ſince you have thought proper to give the noble crown of

Portugal to a clerk, a monk and a baſtard. This act is not to be ſuffered; for, by rightful election, it belongs to our king, as the natural and true heir: beſides, you have acted contrary to the opinion of the nobility of the kingdom: therefore, he now declares by us, that you have been guilty of a high miſdemeanour, and if you do not haſten to make every reparation, he is reſolved to make war upon you.'

Don Ferdinand Gallopes de Villafons, a noble citizen and of great weight in Liſbon, thus anſwered: 'My lords, you greatly reproach us for our election, but your own is in the ſame predicament, for you have crowned in Caſtille a baſtard, the ſon of a Jeweſs. The fact is univerſally known. With regard to the juſtice of your election, there is none; for your king has no right to the crown of Caſtille: it belongs to the daughters of don Pedro, Conſtance and Iſabella, who are married to the duke of Lancaſter and the earl of Cambridge, to their children, and to their huſbands for them. You may, therefore, depart when you pleaſe, and tell him that ſent you, that our election is good, and ſhall be upholden; for that we will not have any other king as long as the preſent one ſhall chooſe to be ſo. With regard to the ſum of money you demand from us, we ſay that we are no way obliged to pay it: you muſt therefore call upon thoſe who bound themſelves to the payment, and who had all the advantage of it.'

The king of Portugal was not preſent at this aſſembly,

aſſembly, though he well knew what anſwer his people were to make. The ambaſſadors from the king of Caſtille, perceiving they ſhould gain nothing more from the Portugueſe, took leave, as was becoming them, ſet out and returned to Seville, where they had left the king and his council: Having related all that you have juſt heard to the king, he ſummoned a council to deliberate on what was to be done. It was determined to ſend defiances to the king of Portugal and his partiſans, and that the king of Caſtille had juſt reaſons for declaring war againſt them. After theſe defiances had been ſent to Portugal, the king of Caſtille iſſued a ſpecial ſummons for raiſing an army, declaring he would lay ſiege to Liſbon, and not depart thence until he had gained it, for the inſolent replies that had been made to his ambaſſadors, ſo that they ſhould pay dearly if they were obliged to ſue for mercy.

The king of Caſtille advanced to Santaren with his whole force, that being the place of rendezvous. About this period, a knight of Caſtille, of the name of Navaret, was expelled that court; and, if the king in his anger had caught him, he would have had him beheaded. The knight, however, had timely notice, for he had friends on the watch, and, quitting the kingdom of Caſtille, came to Liſbon to the king of Portugal, who was much pleaſed at his arrival, retained him in his ſervice, and made him captain of his knights. He afterwards did much harm to the Caſtillians.

The king of Caſtille marched from Santaren with

with his whole army, to Liſbon, which he beſieged, incloſing within it the king. This ſiege laſted upwards of a year. The count de Longueville was conſtable of the army, and ſir Reginald de Limouſin marſhal of it. This ſir Reginald was a Limouſin knight, whom ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin had carried into Caſtille during the wars of king Henry: he had conducted himſelf ſo faithfully that the king had given him a fair eſtate and a handſome lady to his wife, by whom he had two ſons, Reginald and Henry: he was much eſteemed throughout Caſtille for his proweſs.

With the king of Caſtille, at this ſiege, were Daghenes Mandat, ſir Digho Perſement, don Peter Roſerment and don Marich de Verſaux *, Portugueſe, who had turned to the Caſtillians. The grand maſter of Calatrava, with his brother, a young knight called don Dighemeres, Peter Gouſſart de Seville, John Radigo de Hoyex and the grand maſter of St. Jago. The army before Liſbon amounted to upwards of thirty thouſand men: many were the ſkirmiſhes and gallant deeds of arms performed on each ſide.

The Caſtillians knew well the king of Portugal would not be ſupported by the nobles, for the commonalty had elected him againſt their will; for which reaſon there were great diſſentions between them †; and the king's intentions were to

* Theſe names are probably very much diſfigured, but I am unable to rectify them.

† i. e. The nobles and commonalty.

conquer

conquer Liſbon and the whole country before he returned, for no aſſiſtance, except from England, could come to them. This only he feared; but, having conſidered that the Engliſh were at a great diſtance, and that the king of England and his uncles were not on good terms with each other, he carried on the ſiege with ſecurity. The army was ſo plentifully ſupplied with every ſort of proviſion, there was not a town or market in all Caſtille where was more abundance.

The king of Portugal remained with his people in Liſbon, much at his eaſe, for they could not be deprived of the advantage of the ſea. His council adviſed him to ſend able ambaſſadors to England, to the king and duke of Lancaſter, to renew the alliance which had ſubſiſted between the king of England and his brother Ferdinand; to charge the ambaſſadors to aſk his daughter Philippa from the duke of Lancaſter, who would willingly give her to him for his queen; to offer, under the ſtrongeſt terms, a perpetual alliance between the two countries, and to declare he would exert himſelf ſo effectually, if the duke would come thither with two or three thouſand combatants, and as many archers, that he ſhould recover the kingdom of Caſtille, which was his lawful inheritance.

Two knights of his houſehold, ſir John Rodriguez and ſir John Teſtedor, with a clerk of laws called Marche de la Figgiere, archdeacon of Liſbon, were nominated to go as ambaſſadors to England. Having provided themſelves with all things

things neceſſary, they embarked with a favourable wind and left the harbour of Liſbon, ſteering for the coaſts of England.

On the other hand, the king of Caſtille, during his ſiege of Liſbon, was adviſed to write to France and to Gaſcony for aſſiſtance of knights and ſquires, as the Spaniards naturally imagined the king of Portugal would apply to England for ſuccours to raiſe the ſiege: he was not willing, therefore, to be unprepared, nor that his army ſhould not be in ſufficient ſtrength to reſiſt the united force of the Portugueſe and Engliſh. The king, in conſequence of this advice, ſent letters and meſſengers to many knights who were anxious to diſplay their courage, more particularly to thoſe of Béarn and the county of Foix; for in theſe countries were many good knights, who wiſhed for opportunities of ſhewing their love of arms, but could not find them, as the count de Foix at this period was at peace with the count d'Armagnac.

Theſe looked-for allies of the kings of Spain and Portugal were not ſo ſoon ready, nor near at hand. Hoſtilities ſtill continued to be carried on in Auvergne, the Toulouſain, Rouergue, and in the country of Bigorre.

We will now leave the affairs of Portugal, and ſpeak of others.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

THE COUNT DE FOIX, AT THE ENTREATY OF THE PRINCESS OF WALES REMITS THE COUNT D'ARMAGNAC SIXTY THOUSAND FRANCS OUT OF HIS RANSOM OF TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY THOUSAND.—THE ENGLISH GARRISON AT LOURDE* GOVERNS THE ADJOINING COUNTRY.

BETWEEN the county of Foix and Béarn lies the county of Bigorre, which belongs to France, and is bounded on one ſide by the Toulouſain, and on the other by Comminges and Béarn. In this county of Bigorre is ſituated the ſtrong caſtle of Lourde, which has always been regarded as Engliſh ſince the country was given up to the king of England and the prince, as part of the ranſom for king John of France, according to the treaty of peace made at Bretigny near Chartres, and afterwards ratified at Calais, as it has already been mentioned in the former part of this hiſtory.

When the prince of Wales left England to take poſſeſſion of the duchy of Aquitaine, (which the king his father had given to him to hold as a fief and inheritance under him, in which were two

* Lourde,—capital of the valley of Lavidan, in Gaſcony, dioceſe of Tarbes, near Bagneres.

arch-

archbiſhopricks and twenty-two biſhopricks,) accompanied by the princeſs of Wales, they reſided at Bourdeaux about a year. They were entreated by John count d'Armagnac to come to the handſome city of Tarbes, in the county of Bigorre, to ſee and viſit that part of the country, which the prince had never yet done.

The count d'Armagnac imagined that the count de Foix would pay his reſpects to the prince and princeſs during the time they were in Bigorre; and, as he was indebted to him two hundred and fifty thouſand francs for his ranſom, he thought he would try to prevail on them to requeſt the count de Foix to releaſe him from a part, if not the whole of it. The count d'Armagnac managed ſo well that the prince and princeſs of Wales came with their court, which, at that time, was very numerous and ſplendid, into Bigorre, and fixed their reſidence at Tarbes.

Tarbes is a handſome town, ſituated in a champaign country, among rich vineyards: there is a town, a city, and a caſtle, all ſeparated from each other, and incloſed with gates, walls, and towers: the beautiful river Liſſe, which riſes in the mountains of Béarn and Catalonia, and is as clear as rock-water, runs through and divides the town. Five leagues from thence is ſituated the town of Morlans, in the county of Foix, at the entrance into Béarn and under a mountain. Six leagues diſtant from Tarbes is the town of Pau, which belongs alſo to the count de Foix. During the time the prince and princeſs were at Tarbes, the count

was

was in his town of Pau, erecting a handſome caſtle adjoining to the outſkirts of the town, and on the river Gave.

As ſoon as he was informed of the arrival of the prince and princeſs at Tarbes, he made his preparations and viſited them in great ſtate, accompanied by upwards of ſix hundred horſe and ſixty knights. They were much pleaſed at his viſit, and entertained him handſomely, as he was well deſerving of it, and the princeſs paid him the moſt engaging attentions. The count d'Armagnac and the lord d'Albreth were preſent, and the prince was entreated to requeſt the count de Foix to releaſe the count from all, or part of what he was indebted to him for his ranſom.

The prince being a prudent as well as a valiant man, having conſidered a while, ſaid, he would not do ſo, and added; 'Count d'Armagnac, you were made priſoner by fair deeds of arms, and in open battle: you put our couſin the count de Foix, his perſon and his men, to the hazard of the fight; and, if fortune has been favourable to him and adverſe to you, he ought not to fare the worſe for it. Neither my lord and father nor myſelf would have thanked you if you had entreated us to give back what we had honourably and fortunately won at the battle of Poitiers, for which we return thanks to the Lord God.'

The count d'Armagnac, on hearing this, was quite thunderſtruck: and, notwithſtanding he had failed in his expectations, he made a ſimilar requeſt to the princeſs, who cheerfully entreated the

count

count de Foix to grant her a boon. 'Madam,' replied the count, 'I am but a ſmall gentleman, and an inſignificant bachelor; therefore, I cannot make large gifts; but, if the boon you requeſt do not exceed ſixty thouſand francs, I grant it.' The princeſs was anxious to gain the whole; but the count, being a wary man, paid much attention to all his perſonal affairs: beſides, he ſuſpected this boon regarded the ranſom of the count d'Armagnac: he therefore continued, 'Madam, for a poor knight like me, who am building towns and caſtles, the gift I offer you ought to ſuffice.'

When the princeſs found ſhe could not gain more, ſhe ſaid, 'Count de Foix, I requeſt and entreat you would forgive the count d'Armagnac.' 'Madam,' anſwered the count, 'I ought to comply with your requeſt. I have ſaid, that if the boon you ſolicited did not exceed ſixty thouſand francs, I would grant it: the count d'Armagnac owes me two hundred and fifty thouſand, and at your entreaty I give you ſixty thouſand of them.' Thus ended the matter; and the count d'Armagnac, by the princeſs's entreaty, gained ſixty thouſand francs. The count de Foix, ſhortly afterwards, returned to his own country.

I, ſir John Froiſſart, make mention of all theſe things, becauſe when I viſited Foix and Béarn, I travelled through Bigorre, and made inquiry after all that had paſſed, and what I had not heard before. I there learnt that the prince of Wales, during his reſidence at Tarbes, had a great deſire to ſee the caſtle of Lourde, three leagues diſtant, among

among the mountains. When he had fully examined that caſtle and country, he was much pleaſed, as well with the ſtrength of the place, as its ſituation on the frontiers of ſeveral countries; for thoſe of Lourde can over-run the kingdom of Arragon to a great extent, and as far as Barcelona in Catalonia. The prince called to him a knight of his houſehold, named ſir Peter Arnaut, of the country of Béarn, who had loyally ſerved him, and in whom he had great confidence: he was an expert man at arms and couſin to the count de Foix. 'Sir Peter,' ſaid the prince, 'I nominate and appoint you governor and captain of Lourde, and regent of the country of Bigorre: now guard well this caſtle, ſo as to give a good account of it to my lord and father, and to myſelf.' 'My lord,' replied the knight, 'that I will cheerfully do:' and he inſtantly did homage and pledged his faith, when the prince put him in poſſeſſion of it.

Now, you muſt know, that when the war was renewed between the kings of France and England, as has been before related, the count Guy de St. Pol, and ſir Hugh de Chaſtillon, maſter of the croſs-bows in France, beſieged and took the town of Abbeville, and the whole country of Ponthieu: about the ſame time, two great barons of Bigorre, whoſe names were ſir Marnaut Barbaſan and the lord d'Anchin, turned to the French intereſt, and ſeized the town and caſtle of Tarbes, for they were weakly guarded. The caſtle of Lourde was under the command of ſir Peter Ar-

naut, of Béarn, who would not ſurrender on any terms, but carried on a ſharp conteſt againſt France. He ſent to Upper Gaſcony and Béarn, for ſome knight-adventurers to aſſiſt him in the war; and many able men came to him. He had ſix captains, each of whom had fifty lances or more under his command: his brother, John de Béarn, a gallant ſquire, Peter d'Anchin de Bigorre, brother-german to the lord d'Anchin, who would never turn to the French, Ernauton de Sainte Colombe, Ernauton de Montagu, de Sainte Baſile, and le Bourg de Carnela.

Theſe captains made many excurſions into Bigorre, the Toulouſain, the Carcaſſonois, and on the Albigeois; for the moment they left Lourde they were on enemy's ground, which they overran to a great extent, ſometimes thirty leagues from their caſtle. In their march they touched nothing, but on their return all things were ſeized, and ſometimes they brought with them ſo many priſoners, and ſuch quantities of cattle, they knew not how to diſpoſe of, nor lodge them. They laid under contribution the whole country except the territory of the count de Foix; but there they dared not take a fowl without paying for it, nor hurt any man belonging to the count, or even any who had his paſſport; for it would have enraged him ſo much that they muſt have been ruined.

Theſe companions in Lourde had the ſatisfaction of over-running the whole country wherever they pleaſed. Tarbes, which is ſituated, as I have ſaid, hard by, was kept in great fear, and was obliged

obliged to enter into a compoſition with them. Between Tarbes and their caſtle is a large village, with an handſome abbey, called Guyors, to which they did much miſchief, but they alſo compounded with them. On the other ſide of the river Liſſe is a goodly incloſed town called Bagneres, the inhabitants of which had a hard time of it; for they were much haraſſed by thoſe of Malvoiſin, which is ſituated on a mountain, the river Liſſe running at the foot of it, in its courſe towards Tournay, an incloſed town.

This town of Tournay was the common paſs for thoſe of Lourde and Malvoiſin, to which they did no harm, becauſe they had a free paſſage, and the townſpeople had good bargains of their pillage: they were, therefore, forced to diſſemble with them, if they were deſirous of living, for they did not receive aid or ſuccour from any one. The governor of Malvoiſin was a Gaſcon, called Raymonet de l'Eſpée, an able man at arms. Thoſe of Lourde and Malvoiſin put under contribution the merchants of Arragon and Catalonia equally with thoſe of France.

CHAP. XXVI.

SIR JOHN FROISSART, IN HIS JOURNEY TOWARDS BEARN, IS ACCOMPANIED BY A KNIGHT ATTACHED TO THE COUNT DE FOIX, WHO RELATES TO HIM HOW THE GARRISON OF LOURDE TOOK ORTINGAS AND LE PALLIER, ON THE RENEWAL OF THE WAR IN GUYENNE, AFTER THE RUPTURE OF THE PEACE OF BRETIGNY.

AT the time I undertook my journey to viſit the count de Foix, reflecting on the diverſity of countries I had never ſeen, I ſet out from Carcaſſone, leaving the road to Toulouſe, on the right hand, and came to Monteroral, then to Tonges, then to Belle, then to the firſt town in the county of Foix; from thence to Maiſieres, to the caſtle of Sauredun, then to the handſome city of Pamiers *, which belongs to the count de Foix, where I halted, to wait for company that were going to Béarn, where the count reſided.

I remained in the city of Pamiers three days: it is a very delightful place, ſeated among fine vineyards, and ſurrounded by a clear and broad river, called the Liege. Accidentally, a knight attached to the count de Foix, called ſir Eſpaing du Lyon, came thither, on his return from Avignon: he was a prudent and valiant knight, handſome in

* Pamiers,—three leagues from Foix, eighteen from Toulouſe.

perſon,

perſon, and about fifty years of age. I introduced myſelf to his company, as he had a great deſire to know what was doing in France. We were ſix days on the road travelling to Orthez. As we journeyed, the knight, after ſaying his oriſons, converſed the greater part of the day with me, aſking for news; and when I put any queſtions to him, he very willingly anſwered them. On our departure from Pamiers we croſſed the mountain of Ceſſe, which is difficult of aſcent, and paſſed near the town and caſtle of Ortingas, which belongs to the king of France, but did not enter it. We went to dine at a caſtle of the count de Foix, half a league further, called Carlat, ſeated on a high mountain.

After dinner, the knight ſaid; 'Let us ride gently, we have but two leagues of this country (which are equal to three of France) to our lodging.' 'Willingly,' anſwered I. 'Now,' ſaid the knight, 'we have this day paſſed the caſtle of Ortingas, the garriſon of which did great miſchief to all this part of the country. Peter d'Anchin has poſſeſſion of it: he took it by ſurpriſe, and has gained ſixty thouſand francs from France.'

'How did he get ſo much?' ſaid I. 'I will tell you,' replied the knight. 'On the feaſt of our lady, the middle of Auguſt, a fair is holden, where all the country aſſemble, and there is much merchandiſe brought thither during that time. Peter d'Anchin, and his companions of the garriſon of Lourde, had long wanted to gain this town and caſtle, but could not deviſe the means. They had,

however, in the beginning of May, ſent two of their men, of very ſimple outward appearance, to ſeek for ſervice in the town: they ſoon found maſters, who were ſo well ſatisfied with them, that they went in and out of the town whenever they pleaſed, without any one having the ſmalleſt ſuſpicion of them.

'When mid-Auguſt arrived, the town was filled with foreign merchants from Foix, Béarn and France: and, you know, when merchants meet, after any conſiderable abſence, they are accuſtomed to drink plentifully together to renew their acquaintance, ſo that the houſes of the maſters of theſe two ſervants were quite filled, where they drank largely, and their landlords with them. At midnight Peter d'Anchin and his company advanced towards Ortingas, and hid themſelves and horſes in the wood through which we paſſed. He ſent ſix varlets with two ladders to the town, who, having croſſed the ditches where they had been told was the ſhalloweſt place, fixed their ladders againſt the walls: the two pretended ſervants, who were in waiting, aſſiſted them (whilſt their maſters were ſeated at table) to mount the walls. They were no ſooner up, than one of the ſervants conducted their companions towards the gate where only two men guarded the keys: he then ſaid to them,—'Do you remain here, and not ſtir until you ſhall hear me whiſtle; then ſally forth and ſlay the guards. I am well acquainted with the keys, having more than ſeven times guarded the gate with my maſter.'

'As

'As he had planned ſo did they execute, and hid themſelves well. He then advanced to the gate, and, having liſtened, found the watch drinking: he called to them by their names, for he was well acquainted with them, and ſaid, 'Open the door: I bring you the beſt wine you ever taſted, which my maſter ſends you that you may watch the better.' Thoſe who knew the varlet imagined he was ſpeaking truth, and opened the door of the guard-room: upon this, he whiſtled, and his companions ſallied forth and puſhed between the door, ſo that they could not ſhut it again. The guards were thus caught cunningly, and ſo quietly ſlain that no one knew any thing of it. They then took the keys and went to the gate, which they opened, and let down the draw-bridge ſo gently it was not heard. This done, they ſounded a horn with one blaſt only, which thoſe in ambuſcade hearing, they mounted their horſes and came full gallop over the bridge into the town where they took all its inhabitants either at table or in their beds.

'Thus was Ortingas taken by Peter d'Anchin of Bigorre and his companions in Lourde.'

I then aſked the knight, 'But how did they gain the caſtle?' 'I will tell you,' ſaid ſir Eſpaing du Lyon. 'At the time the town was taken, by ill luck the governor was abſent, ſupping with ſome merchants from Carcaſſone, ſo that he was made priſoner, and on the morrow Peter d'Anchin had him brought before the caſtle, wherein were his wife and children, whom he frightened by declaring he would order the governor's head to be

ſtruck off, if they did not enter into a treaty to deliver up the caſtle. It was concluded, that if his lady would ſurrender, the governor ſhould be given up to her, with permiſſion to march unmoleſted away with every thing that belonged to them. The lady, who found herſelf in ſuch a critical ſituation, through love to him who could not now defend her, in order to recover her huſband and to avoid greater dangers, ſurrendered the caſtle, when the governor, his wife and children ſet out with all that belonged to them, and went to Pamiers.' By this means, Peter d'Anchin captured the town and caſtle of Ortingas; and, when they entered the place, he and his companions gained thirty thouſand franes, as well in merchandiſe which they found there as in good French priſoners. All thoſe who were from the county of Foix or Béarn received their liberty, with their goods untouched.

'Peter d'Anchin held Ortingas for full five years; and he and his garriſon made frequent excurſions as far as the gates of Carcaſſone, which is ſixteen long leagues diſtant, greatly ruining the country, as well by the ranſoms of towns which compounded, as by the pillage they made.

'During the time Peter d'Anchin garriſoned Ortingas, ſome of his companions made a ſally, being deſirous of gain, and came to a caſtle a good league off, called le Paillier, of which Raymond du Paillier, a French knight, was the lord. They this time accompliſhed their enterpriſe, having before attempted it in vain; and, by means of a

ſcalado,

ſcalado, they took the caſtle, the knight and his lady in bed. They kept poſſeſſion of it, allowing the lady and the children to depart, but detained the knight four months in his own caſtle, until he had paid four thouſand francs for his ranſom. In ſhort, after they had ſufficiently haraſſed the country, they ſold theſe two caſtles, Ortingas and le Paillier, for eight thouſand francs, and then retired to Lourde, their principal garriſon. Such feats of arms and adventures were theſe companions daily practiſing.

'It happened likewiſe at this time, that a very able man at arms, one of the garriſon of Lourde, a Gaſcon, called le Mengeant de Sainte Baſile, ſet out from Lourde with twenty-nine others, and rode towards the Toulouſain and the Albigeois, ſeeking adventures. His wiſhes were to ſurpriſe the caſtle of Penne in the Albigeois, which he was nearly doing, but failed. When he found he was diſappointed, he rode up to the gate, where he ſkirmiſhed, and ſeveral gallant deeds were done.

'At this ſame hour, the caſtellan of Toulouſe, ſir Hugh de Froide-ville, had alſo made an excurſion with ſixty lances, and by accident arrived at Penne whilſt this ſkirmiſh was going forward. He and his men inſtantly diſmounted, and advanced to the barriers. Le Mengeant would have made off; but, as that was impoſſible, he fought valiantly hand to hand with the knight; he behaved gallantly, and wounded his adverſary in two or three places, but at laſt was made priſoner; for he was not the ſtrongeſt; and of his men few eſcaped being

being killed or taken. Le Mengeant was carried to Toulouſe; and the ſénéſchal had great difficulty to ſave him from the populace, who wanted to put him to death when they ſaw him in the hands of their own officer, ſo much was he hated at Toulouſe.

'Fortunately for him, the duke of Berry chanced to come to that city, and he had ſuch good friends that the duke gave him his liberty in conſideration of a thouſand francs being paid the ſénéſchal for his ranſom. Le Mengeant, on gaining his liberty, returned to Lourde, where he ceaſed not from his uſual enterpriſes. One time he ſet out with others, without arms, diſguiſed as an abbot attended by four monks; for he and his companions had ſhaven the crowns of their heads, and no one would have imagined who ſaw them but that they were real monks, for they had every appearance in dreſs and look. In this manner he came to Montpelier, and alighted at the hôtel of the Angel, ſaying he was an abbot from Upper Gaſcony going to Paris on buſineſs. He made acquaintance with a rich man of Montpelier, called ſir Beranger, who was likewiſe bound for Paris on his affairs. On the abbot telling him he would carry him thither free from all expenſe, he was delighted that the journey would coſt him nothing, and ſet out with le Mengeant attended only by a ſervant. They had not left Montpelier three leagues when le Mengeant made him his priſoner, and conducted him through crooked and bye roads to his garriſon of Lourde, whence he afterwards ranſomed him for five thouſand francs.'

'Holy

'Holy Mary!' cried I, 'this le Mengeant muſt have been a clever fellow.' 'Aye, that he was indeed,' replied he; 'and he died in his armour at a place we ſhall paſs in three days, called Larre in Bigorre, below a town called Archinach.' 'I will remind you of it,' ſaid I, 'when we ſhall arrive at the ſpot.'

CHAP. XXVII.

SIR JOHN FROISSART AND THE KNIGHT OF FOIX ARRIVE AT CASSERES, WHERE THE KNIGHT RELATES TO HIM THE CAPTURE OF THE TOWN BY THE ARMAGNACS, AND ALSO THE RE-CAPTURE OF IT BY THE COUNT DE FOIX; AND, AS THEY JOURNEY, THEY CONVERSE ON DIFFERENT FEATS OF ARMS BETWEEN THE ARMAGNACS AND FOIXIENS.

THUS rode we on to Monteſquieu, a good incloſed town belonging to the count de Foix, which the Armagnacs and Labriſſiens* took by ſurpriſe, but held it only three days, in the morning we left Monteſquieu, and rode towards Palaminich, another incloſed town, ſituated on the Garonne, and belonging to the count de Foix. When

* Labriſſiens,—thoſe attached to the family of Labreth, which we call Albreth.—D. S.

we

we were close to it, and thought of entering it by the bridge over the Garonne, we found it impossible; for the preceding day it had rained so heavily in the mountains of Catalonia and Arragon, that a river, called the Saluz, which rises among them, and falls into the Garonne with great rapidity, was so much swelled as to carry away one of the arches of the bridge, which was of wood. We were therefore forced to return to Montesquieu to dinner, and remain there the whole day.

On the morrow, the knight was advised to cross the Garonne, opposite the town of Casseres in a boat: we therefore rode thither, and by our exertions the horses passed, and we ourselves afterwards with some difficulty and danger; for the boat was so small that only two horses and their men could cross at a time with those who managed the boat. When we had crossed, we made for Casseres, where we staid the whole day. While our servants were preparing the supper, sir Espaing du Lyon said, 'Sir John, let us go and see the town.' 'Come then,' replied I. We walked through the town to a gate which opens towards Palaminich, and, having passed it, went near the ditches. The knight, pointing to the walls, said, 'Do you observe that part of the walls?' 'Yes, sir: why do you ask?' 'I will tell you: because it is newer than the rest.' 'That is true,' answered I. 'I will relate to you how this happened ten years ago. You have heard of the wars between the count d'Armagnac and the count de Foix, which took place in the country of Bearn, that appertains

pertains to the count de Foix: the count d'Armagnac over-ran it, though at preſent he is quiet on account of the truces made between them. I muſt ſay, the Armagnacs and Labriſſiens gained nothing, but had often great loſſes.

'On the night of the feaſt of St. Nicholas, in the winter of the year 1362, the count de Foix made priſoners, near to Montmarſen, the count d'Armagnac and his nephew the lord d'Albreth, and many nobles with them, whom he carried to Orthez, and confined them in the tower of the caſtle; by which capture he received ten times told one hundred thouſand francs.

'It happened afterwards that the count d'Armagnac, father of the preſent, called ſir John d'Armagnac, ſet on foot an armament, with which he came and took Caſſeres by ſcalado: they were full two hundred men at arms, who ſeemed reſolved to keep the place by force. News was brought to the count de Foix, at Pau, that the Armagnacs and Labriſſiens had taken his town of Caſſeres. He, who was a prudent and valiant knight, and prepared for all events, called to him two baſtard brothers whom he had among his knights, ſir Arnault Guillaume and ſir Peter de Béarn, and ordered them to march inſtantly to Caſſeres, telling them he would ſend men from all parts, and in three days would be there in perſon. 'Be careful, therefore,' added he, 'that none get out of the town without being fought with, as you will have ſtrength enough; and on your arrival at Caſſeres, make the country people bring

bring you plenty of large pieces of wood, which you will fix ſtrongly round the gates, and completely bar them up; for I am reſolved that thoſe now in the town ſhall be ſo ſhut up in it, that they never paſs through the gates: I will make them take another road.'

'The two knights obeyed his orders, and marched to Palaminich, accompanied and followed by all the men at arms in Béarn. They encamped before the town of Caſſeres; but thoſe within paid no attention to them, nor obſerved that they were ſo completely ſhut in, they could not paſs through the gates. On the third day the count de Foix came with five hundred men at arms, and on his arrival had the town encompaſſed with fortifications of wood, as well as by his army, that no ſally might be made from it in the night. In this ſtate, without making any attack, he blockaded them until their proviſions began to fail; for though they had wine in plenty, they had nothing to eat, and could not eſcape by fording the river, which was then too deep. They therefore thought it better to ſurrender themſelves as priſoners, than ſhamefully periſh with hunger.

'The count de Foix liſtened to their offers. He had them informed, that as they could not paſs through any of the town-gates, he would make a hole in the wall through which the garriſon, one by one, muſt paſs, without arms, in their common dreſs. They were forced to accept of theſe terms, otherwiſe the buſineſs was at an end: and, if the count de Foix had not been thus

ap-

appeaſed, all within were dead men. He had a hole made in the wall, which was not too large, through which they came out one by one. The count was there, with his forces drawn up in battle-array; and as they came out of the town they were brought before him, and ſent to different caſtles and towns as priſoners. He took there his couſin, ſir John d'Armagnac, ſir Bernard d'Albreth, ſir Manaut de Barbaſan, ſir Raymond de Benach, ſir Benedict de la Corneille, and about twenty of the moſt reſpectable, whom he carried with him to Orthez, and received from them, before they gained their liberty, one hundred thouſand francs, twice told. For this, my fair ſir, was this wall broken down, as a paſſage for thoſe of Armagnac and Albreth: afterwards it was rebuilt and repaired.' When he had finiſhed his hiſtory we returned to our lodgings, and found the ſupper ready.

On the morrow we mounted our horſes, and, riding up the ſide of the Garonne, paſſed through Palaminich, and entered the lands of the counts de Comminges and d'Armagnac. On the oppoſite ſide, fronting us, was the Garonne, and the territories of the count de Foix. As we rode on, the knight pointed out to me a town, which appeared tolerably ſtrong, called Marteras le Touſſac, which belongs to the count de Comminges; and on the other ſide of the river, two caſtles of the count de Foix, ſeated on a mountain, called Montaural and Monclare. As we were riding among theſe towns and caſtles, in a beautiful meadow by the

ſide

ſide of the Garonne, the knight ſaid,—'Sir John, I have witneſſed here many excellent ſkirmiſhes and combats between the Armagnacs and the Foixiens; for there was neither town nor caſtle that was not well garriſoned with men at arms, who engaged with and purſued each other. Do you ſee yonder thoſe ruins? they are the remains of a fort which the Armagnacs raiſed againſt theſe two caſtles, and which they filled with men at arms, who did much damage to the lands of the count de Foix, on the other ſide of the river; but I will tell you how they paid for it.

'The count de Foix one night ſent his brother, ſir Peter de Bearn, with two hundred lances and four hundred peaſants, laden with faggots, and as much wood as they could cut from the hedges, which they piled around this fort and ſet on fire, ſo that the fort was burnt with all in it, for none received quarter; and ſince that time no one has dared to rebuild it.'

With ſuch converſation did we daily travel, travelling towards the ſource of the river Garonne, on each ſide of which were handſome caſtles and forts. All on the left hand belonged to the count de Foix, and on the other to the count d'Armagnac. We paſſed Montpeſac, a fine ſtrong caſtle, ſeated on the top of a rock, below which is the road and the town. On the outſide of it, at the diſtance of a croſs-bow, there is a paſs called la Garde, with a tower between the rock and the river, and an iron gate: ſix men could defend this paſs againſt all the world, for only two perſons

perſons a-breaſt can advance between the rock and river.

Upon ſeeing this, I ſaid to the knight, 'Sir, this is a ſtrong paſs, and a difficult country.' 'It is indeed,' anſwered the knight; 'but, ſtrong as it is, the count de Foix and his men once forced it, and advanced to Palaminich, Monteſquieu, and even to Pamiers. The paſs was very ſtrong, but the Engliſh archers greatly aſſiſted him in this conqueſt. Come and ride by my ſide, and I will tell you all about it.' I then rode by the ſide of ſir Eſpaing du Lyon, who thus continued his narration:

'The count d'Armagnac and the lord d'Albreth, invaded the country of Foix, with upwards of five hundred men, and advanced into thoſe parts near Pamiers. It was in the beginning of Auguſt, when the corn was harveſting and the grapes ripe: in that year there was great abundance of both. Sir John d'Armagnac and his people were encamped before the town and caſtle of Sauredun, a ſhort league diſtant from Pamiers. They made an attack on it, and ſent word to Pamiers, that if they did not pay a compoſition for their corn and wines, they would burn and deſtroy all. Thoſe of Pamiers were afraid of waiting the event, as their lord was at too great a diſtance, being then in Bearn, ſo that they thought it more prudent to pay the ranſom, which was ſettled at five thouſand francs; but they demanded a delay of fifteen days, which was granted to them.

'The count de Foix heard of all this, and, by great haſte and ſending to all parts for aid he got into Pamiers through this difficult paſs. Aſſiſtance came to him from ſeveral quarters, ſo that he found himſelf at the head of twelve hundred lances: he would have given battle, without fail, to ſir John d'Armagnac, if he had waited for it; but they retreated into the country of Comminges, leaving behind the money from Pamiers, as they had no time to ſtay for it. The count de Foix, however, did not hold them quit, but claimed the ranſom, as he ſaid he had deſerved it; for he had come to their aſſiſtance, and to drive his enemies out of the country. He paid with it his men at arms, and remained there until the good people had harveſted their corn, finiſhed their vintage, and put all their effects in ſafety.'

'By my faith,' ſaid I to the knight, 'I have heard you with pleaſure.' Thus diſcourſing, we paſſed near a caſtle called la Bretite, and then another caſtle called Bacelles, all in the county of Comminges.

As I rode on, I ſaw on the other ſide of the river a very handſome and large caſtle, with a town of goodly appearance. I aſked the knight the name of this caſtle. He told me it was called Monteſplain*, and belonged to a couſin of the count de Foix, who bears the cows in his arms, named ſir Roger d'Eſpaign. He is a great baron and land proprietor in this country and in the

* Monteſplain. Monteſpan, in the dioceſe of Comminges.

Toulouſain,

Toulouſain, and at this moment is ſénéſchal of Carcaſſone. Upon which I aſked, 'What relation was this ſir Roger d'Eſpaign to ſir Charles d'Eſpaign, conſtable of France?' 'He is not of that family,' replied the knight; 'for ſir Lewis and ſir Charles d'Eſpaign, of whom you are ſpeaking, came originally from Spain, and were of Spaniſh extraction; but by their mother are of French alſo, and couſin germans to king Alfonſo of Spain. I ſerved in my youth under ſir Lewis d'Eſpaign, in the wars of Brittany: for he was always of the ſide of St. Charles de Blois againſt the count de Montfort.'

Here ended our converſation on this ſubject. We came that day to St. Gouffers, a good town belonging to the count de Foix, and on the morrow to dinner at Moncuil, a ſtrong town alſo, which belongs to the king of France and is held by ſir Roger d'Eſpaign. After dinner, we mounted and took the road towards Lourde and Malvoiſin, and rode over heaths that extend fifteen leagues: they are called Lane-bourg, and are well calculated for thoſe who are evil inclined. Amid the heaths of Lane-bourg is ſituated the caſtle de la Meſere, belonging to the count de Foix, a good league above the town of Tournay and below Malvoiſin, which caſtle the knight ſhewed me, ſaying,—'See, yonder is Malvoiſin: have you not inſerted in your hiſtory (of which you have been ſpeaking to me) how the duke of Anjou, when he was in this country, advanced to Lourde, beſieged and conquered it, as well as the caſtle of Trigalet on

the river before us, and which belongs to the lord de la Barde ?'

I conſidered a little, and replied; 'I believe I have not mentioned it, nor have I ever been informed of ſuch an event. I therefore pray you relate the buſineſs, to which I ſhall attentively liſten; but tell me, leſt I forget it, what is become of the river Garonne? for I can no longer ſee it.' 'You ſay truly,' anſwered the knight: 'it loſes itſelf between theſe two mountains. It riſes from a ſpring three leagues off, on the road to Catalonia, below a caſtle called St. Béart, the laſt caſtle of France on the frontiers of Arragon. The governor of it and the ſurrounding country at this time is a ſquire named Ernauton, who is called the Baſtard of Spain, and couſin-german to ſir Roger d'Eſpaign. The moment you ſee him you will ſay, he is formed for a downright man at arms. This baſtard of Spain has done more miſchief to the garriſon of Lourde than all the knights and ſquires of this country together; and I muſt ſay, the count de Foix loves him well, for he is his brother in arms. I will not ſay more of him, for, at the enſuing Chriſtmas, you will ſee him yourſelf at the hôtel of the count; but I will tell you what the duke of Anjou did when he was in this country.'

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

FROISSART CONTINUES HIS JOURNEY WITH THE KNIGHT OF FOIX, WHO RELATES TO HIM SEVERAL PARTICULARS RELATIVE TO THE SIEGES OF BREST AND DERVAL, AND HOW THE DUKE OF ANJOU RECOVERED MALVOISIN AND TRIGALET FROM THE ENGLISH.

WE then rode gently, and he began his narration as follows: 'At the firſt renewal of the war, the French conquered back again from the Engliſh all their poſſeſſions in Aquitaine, and ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, having turned to the French intereſt, conducted the duke of Anjou, as you know, into Brittany to the eſtates of ſir Robert Knolles and to the ſiege of Derval; all which, I dare ſay, you have in your hiſtory, as well as the treaty made by ſir Hugh Broc, couſin to ſir Robert, to ſurrender the caſtle, for which he had given hoſtages, imagining the duke of Anjou to be in ſuch ſtrength that the ſiege could not be raiſed; and you probably relate how ſir Robert Knolles, having entered th caſtle of Derval, refuſed to abide by this treaty.' 'Truly, ſir, I have heard all you have juſt related.' 'And have you noticed the ſkirmiſh which took place before the caſtle, when ſir Oliver de Cliſſon was wounded?' 'I cannot ſay,' replied I, 'that I have any remembrance of it. Tell me, then, what paſſed at this ſkirmiſh and at the ſiege; per-

haps you may know more particulars than I do; and you can return afterwards to the hiſtory of Lourde and Malvoiſin.'

'That is true,' ſaid the knight: 'I muſt tell you, however, that ſir Garſis du Châtel, a very valiant knight of this country and a good Frenchman, had gone to ſeek the duke, to conduct him before Malvoiſin, when the duke had iſſued his ſummons to march to Derval: he made ſir Garſis marſhal of his army for his valour. It is a truth, as I was informed afterwards, that when ſir Garſis found ſir Robert determined not to keep the treaty, and the caſtle of Derval not likely to ſurrender, he came to the duke and aſked, 'My lord, what ſhall we do with theſe hoſtages? It is no fault nor crime in them if the caſtle be not ſurrendered; and it will be a great ſin if you put them to death, for they are gentlemen undeſerving ſuch puniſhment.' The duke replied, 'Is it right then, that they ſhould have their liberty?' 'Yes, by my faith,' ſaid the knight, who had much compaſſion for them. 'Go,' replied the duke, 'and do with them what you pleaſe.' At theſe words, as ſir Garſis told me, he went to deliver them, but in his road met ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, who aſked him whence he came, and whither he was going. 'I come from my lord of Anjou, and am going to ſet at liberty the hoſtages.' 'To ſet them at liberty?' ſaid ſir Oliver; 'ſtop a little, and come with me to the duke.'

'On his return, he found the duke very penſive. Sir Oliver ſaluted him, and then ſaid, 'My lord, what

what are your intentions? ſhall not theſe hoſtages be put to death? By my faith ſhall they in ſpite of ſir Robert Knolles and ſir Hugh Broc, who have belied their faith: and I would have you know, if they do not ſuffer death, I will not, for a year to come, put on a helmet to ſerve you; they will come off too cheaply, if they be thus acquitted. This ſiege has coſt you ſixty thouſand francs, and you wiſh to pardon your enemies who keep no faith with you.' At theſe words, the duke of Anjou grew wroth, and ſaid, 'Sir Oliver, do with them as you liſt.' 'I will, then, that they die; for there is cauſe for it, ſince they keep not their faith.'

'He then left the duke, and went to the ſquare before the caſtle; but ſir Garſis never dared to ſay one word in their favour, for it would have been loſt labour, ſince ſir Oliver was determined upon it. He called to him Jocelin, who was the headſman, and ordered him to behead two knights and two ſquires, which cauſed ſuch grief that upwards of two hundred of the army wept.

'Sir Robert Knolles inſtantly opened a poſtern-gate of the caſtle, and had, in revenge, all his priſoners beheaded, without ſparing one. The great gate was then opened, and the draw-bridge let down, when the garriſon made a ſally beyond the barriers to ſkirmiſh with the French, which, according to ſir Garſis, was a ſevere buſineſs: the firſt arrow wounded ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, who retired to his quarters. Among the wounded were two ſquires from Béarn, who behaved themſelves

well: their names were Bertrand de Barege and Ernauton du Pin.

'On the morrow, they decamped. The duke marched with his men at arms from Derval to Toulouſe, and from thence to this country, with intent to deſtroy Lourde, for the Toulouſains made great complaints of it. What happened there I will tell you. The duke loſt no time in marching his army to the caſtle of Malvoiſin, which we ſee before us, and laying ſiege to it. He had in his army full eight thouſand combatants, without reckoning the Genoeſe and the commonalty from the principal towns in that country.

'A Gaſcon ſquire and able man at arms, named Raymonet de l'Epée, was at that time governor of Malvoiſin. There were daily ſkirmiſhes at the barriers, where many gallant feats were done by thoſe who wiſhed to advance themſelves. The duke and his army were encamped in theſe handſome meadows between the town of Tournay and the caſtle, on the banks of the Liſſe.

'During this ſiege, ſir Garſis du Châtel, who was marſhal of the army, marched with five hundred men at arms, two hundred archers and croſs bows, and full two thouſand common men to lay ſiege to the caſtle of Trigalet, which we have left behind us. A ſquire of Gaſcony had the command of it, for his couſin the lord de la Barde, and was called le Baſtot de Mauléon; he had about forty companions with him, who were lords of Lanebourg; for no one could march through theſe parts except a pilgrim to the ſhrine of St. Jago, without being

being made a priſoner, and, if not ranſomed, put to death.

'There was another ſtrong place, near to le Meſen, of which thieves and robbers from all countries made a garriſon, called le Nemilleux; it is very ſtrong, but always in diſpute between the count d'Armagnac and the count de Foix; and for this reaſon the nobles paid not any attention to it when the duke of Anjou came into the country.

'Sir Garſis, on arriving at Trigalet, had it ſurrounded on all ſides but that towards the river, which they could not approach, and a ſharp attack commenced, in which many of each party were wounded. Sir Garſis was five days there, and on every one of them were ſkirmiſhes; inſomuch that the garriſon had expended all their ammunition, and had nothing left to ſhoot with, which was ſoon perceived by the French.

'Upon this, ſir Garſis, out of true gallantry, ſent a paſſport to the governor to come and ſpeak with him. When he ſaw him, he ſaid; 'Baſtot, I well know your ſituation; that your garriſon have no ammunition, nor any thing but lances to defend themſelves with when attacked. Now, if you be taken by ſtorm, it will be impoſſible for me to ſave yours or your companions lives from the fury of the common people, for which I ſhould be very ſorry, as you are my couſin. I therefore adviſe you to ſurrender the place, and even entreat you ſo to do: you cannot be blamed by any one for it, and ſeeking fortune elſewhere, for you have held out long enough.'

'My

'My lord,' replied the ſquire, 'any where but here I would freely do what you adviſe, for in truth I am your couſin: in this inſtance, I cannot act from myſelf, for thoſe who are with me have an equal command, though they affect to conſider me as their captain. I will return, and tell them what you have ſaid: if they agree to ſurrender, I ſhall conſent: if they be reſolved to hold out, whatever may be my fate, I muſt, with them, abide the event.' 'This is well ſaid,' anſwered ſir Garſis: 'you may depart whenever you pleaſe, ſince I know your intention.'

'The Baſtot de Maulèon returned to the caſtle, and aſſembled all his companions in the court-yard, to whom he related what ſir Garſis had ſaid, and then demanded their opinions, and what they would do. They debated for a long time: ſome ſaid they were ſtrong enough to wait the event: others wiſhed to withdraw, ſaying it was full time for it, as they had no longer any ammunition, and the duke of Anjou was ſevere, and the whole country of Toulouſe and Carcaſſone enraged againſt them for the miſchiefs they had done. Every thing having been conſidered, they agreed to ſurrender the caſtle, but on condition they ſhould be eſcorted, themſelves and baggage, to château Cullie *, which their friends were in poſſeſſion of, on the Toulouſain frontier.

'Upon this baſtot de Maulèon returned to ſir Garſis, who granted their demand; for he ſaw

* A caſtle in Auvergne.

the

the caſtle was not eaſy to win by ſtorm, and it would probably have coſt him many lives. They made their preparations to depart, packing up every thing they could. Of pillage they had enough, and carried away the beſt part of it, leaving the reſt behind them. Sir Garſis had them ſafely eſcorted as far as château Cullie.

'By this means did the French gain the caſtle of Trigalet, which ſir Garſis gave to the commonalty of the country who had accompanied him, to do with it what they choſe. They determined to deſtroy and raze it, in the manner you have ſeen, which was ſo completely done, that no one ſince has ever thought of rebuilding it.

'Sir Garſis would have marhed from thence to caſtle Nautilleux*, which is ſituated on the moors, near to the caſtle of Lamen†, to free it from thoſe companions who had poſſeſſion of it; but on the road they told him,—'My lord, you have no need to advance further, for you will not find any one in caſtle Nautilleux: thoſe who were there are fled, ſome one way, ſome another, we know not whither.' Sir Garſis, on hearing this, halted in the plain to conſider what was beſt to be done.

'The ſénéſchal de Nobeſen happened to be preſent, who ſaid,—'Sir, this caſtle is within my juriſdiction, and ſhould be held from the count de

---

* Nautilleux.—† Lamen.—Denys Sauvage adds a marginal note: 'Judge whether theſe two places may not be what he before calls Nemilleux and Meſen.'

Froiſſart calls it Natilleux and Nantilleux.

Foix:

Foix: give it me, I beg of you, and I will have it ſo well guarded, at my coſts, that no perſon who wiſhes ill to the country ſhall ever enter it.' 'My lord,' added thoſe from Toulouſe who were by, 'he ſpeaks well: the ſénéſchal is a valiant and prudent man, and it is better he ſhould have it than another.' 'I conſent to it,' ſaid ſir Garſis.

'Thus was the caſtle of Nantilleux given to the ſénéſchal de Nobeſen, who rode thither, and, having found it empty, had repaired what had been deſtroyed. He appointed governor a ſquire of the country named Fortifie de St. Pol, and then returned to the ſiege of Malvoiſin where the duke was. Sir Garſis and his men had already related to the duke their ſucceſsful exploits. The caſtle of Malvoiſin held out about ſix weeks: there were, daily, ſkirmiſhes between the two armies at the barriers, and the place would have made a longer reſiſtance, for the caſtle was ſo ſtrong it could have held a long ſiege; but, the well that ſupplied the caſtle with water being without the walls, they cut off the communication: the weather was very hot, and the ciſterns within quite dry, for it had not rained one drop for ſix weeks; and the beſiegers were at their eaſe on the banks of this clear and fine river, which they made uſe of for themſelves and horſes.

'The garriſon of Malvoiſin were alarmed at their ſituation, for they could not hold out longer: they had a ſufficiency of wine, but not one drop of ſweet water. They determined to open a treaty; and Raymonet de l'Epée requeſted a paſſport

a paſſport to wait on the duke, which having eaſily obtained, he ſaid, 'My lord, if you will act courteouſly to me and my companions, I will ſurrender the caſtle of Malvoiſin.' 'What courteſy is it you aſk?' replied the duke of Anjou: 'get about your buſineſs, each of you to your own countries, without entering any fort that holds out againſt us; for if you do ſo, and I get hold of you, I will deliver you up to Jocelin, who will ſhave you without a razor.' 'My lord,' anſwered Raymonet, 'if we thus depart, we muſt carry away what belongs to us, and what we have gained by arms and with great riſks.'

'The duke pauſed a while, and then ſaid,—'I conſent that you take with you whatever you can carry before you in trunks and on ſumpter horſes, but not otherwiſe; and, if you have any priſoners, they muſt be given up to us.' 'I agree,' ſaid Raymonet. Such was the treaty, as you hear me relate it; and all who were in the caſtle departed, after ſurrendering it to the duke of Anjou and carrying all they could with them. They returned to their own country, or elſewhere, in ſearch of adventures: but Raymonet l'Epée turned to the French: he ſerved the duke of Anjou a long time, paſſed into Italy with him, and was killed in a ſkirmiſh before the city of Naples.

'Thus, my fair ſir, did the duke of Anjou at that time conduct himſelf, and win the caſtle of Malvoiſin, which gave him great joy. He made governor of it a knight of Bigorre, called ſir Ciquart de Luperiere, and afterwards gave it to the

the count de Foix, who ſtill holds it, and will do ſo as long as he lives; for it is well guarded by a knight of Bigorre, a relation of his, called ſir Raymond de Lane.

'The duke of Anjou having gained poſſeſſion of Malvoiſin, and freed the country, and all Lanebourg, of the Engliſh and other pillagers, laid ſiege to the town and caſtle of Lourde. The count de Foix, ſeeing him ſo near his territories, began to be very doubtful what his intentions might be. He therefore iſſued his ſummons to his knights and ſquires, and ſent them into different garriſons. He placed his brother, ſir Arnaut William, with two hundred lances, in Morlens; his other brother, ſir Peter de Béarn, with the ſame number of lances, in Pau; ſir Peter de Cabeſten, with the like number, in the city of l'Eſtrade; ſir Mouvant de Novalles in the town of Hertillet with one hundred lances; ſir Crual Geberel in Montgerbiel with the like number; ſir Fouquat d'Orterey in the town of Sauveterre* with the ſame; and I, Eſpaing du Lyon, was ſent to Mont-de-marſen with two hundred lances. There was not a caſtle in all Béarn that was not well provided with men at arms: he himſelf remained to guard his florins in the caſtle of Orthez.'

'Sir,' ſaid I to the knight, 'has he a great quantity of them?' 'By my faith,' replied he, 'the count de Foix has at this moment a hundred

* Situated on the gave of Oleron, ſeven leagues from Pau.

thouſand

thouſand thirty times told; and there is not a year but he gives away ſixty thouſand; for a more liberal lord, in making preſents, does not exiſt.' Upon this I aſked, 'To whom does he make theſe gifts?' He anſwered, 'To ſtrangers, to knights and ſquires who travel through his country, to heralds, minſtrels, to all who converſe with him: none leave him without a preſent, for he would be angered ſhould any one refuſe it.'

'Ha, ha, holy Mary!' cried I, 'to what purpoſe does he keep ſo large a ſum? where does it come from? Are his revenues ſo great to ſupply him with it? I ſhould like to know this, if you pleaſe.' 'Yes, you ſhall know it,' anſwered the knight; 'but you have aſked two queſtions: if you wiſh them anſwered, I muſt begin with the firſt. You aſk, for what purpoſe he keeps ſo large a ſum of money: I muſt tell you, that the count de Foix is doubtful of war between him and the count d'Armagnac, and of the manœuvres of his neighbours the kings of France and of England, neither of whom he would willingly anger; and hitherto he has not taken any part in their wars, for he has never borne arms on either ſide, and is on good terms with both. I tell you, (and you yourſelf will agree with me when you have made acquaintance with him, and have converſed together, and ſeen the eſtabliſhments of his houſehold,) that he is the moſt prudent prince living, and one whom neither the king of France nor king of England, would willingly make an enemy. With regard to his other neighbours, the kings

of

of Arragon and Navarre, he thinks but little of them, for he could inſtantly raiſe more men at arms (ſo many friends has he made by his gifts, and ſuch power has money,) than theſe kings could ever do. I have heard him ſay, that when the king of Cyprus was in Béarn and explained to him the intended expedition to the holy ſepulchre, he was ſo anxious to make that valuable conqueſt, that if the kings of France and England had gone thither, he would have been the moſt conſiderable lord after them, and have led the largeſt army. He has not yet given up this idea, and it is for this reaſon alſo he has amaſſed ſuch wealth. The prince of Wales likewiſe, when he reigned in Aquitaine, and reſided at Bourdeaux, induced him to collect large ſums; for the prince menaced him in regard to his country of Béarn, and ſaid he would force him to hold it from him: but the count de Foix declared he would not, for Béarn was free land, and owed no homage to any lord whatever. The prince, who was then very powerful and much feared, ſaid he would make him humble himſelf; for the count d'Armagnac and the lord d'Albreth, who hated the count de Foix for the victories he had gained over them, poiſoned the prince's mind. The expedition of the prince into Spain prevented hoſtilities; and ſir John Chandos, who was the principal adviſer and much beloved by the prince, ſtrenuouſly oppoſed this intended war. The count de Foix and ſir John Chandos loved each other for their gallant deeds.

'The

'The count, however, was ſuſpicious of the prince, whom he knew to be powerful and warlike, and began to amaſs large ſums to aid and defend himſelf ſhould he be attacked. He impoſed heavy taxes on the country and on all the towns, which now exiſt, and will do ſo as long as he lives: each hearth pays two francs per annum, one with the other; and in this he has found and finds a mine of wealth, for it is marvellous how cheerfully his ſubjects pay it. With this, there is not any Engliſhman, Frenchman nor pillager, who rob his people of a ſingle farthing: his whole country is protected and juſtice well adminiſtered, for in matters of juſtice he is the moſt ſevere and upright lord that exiſts.'

With theſe words we found ourſelves in the town of Tournay, where our lodgings were prepared: the knight, therefore, ceaſed ſpeaking; and I made no further inquiries, for I had well remarked where he left off, and could again remind him of it, as we had yet to travel together.

We were comfortably lodged at the hôtel of the Star. When ſupper was ſerved, the governor of Malvoiſin, ſir Raymond de Lane, came to ſee us, and ſupped with us: he brought with him four flaggons of excellent wine, as good as any I drank on the road. Theſe two knights converſed long together, and it was late when ſir Raymond departed and returned to his caſtle of Malvoiſin.

CHAP. XXIX.

FROISSART CONTINUES HIS JOURNEY: IN TRAVELLING FROM TOURNAY TO TARBES, THE KNIGHT RELATES TO HIM HOW THE GARRISON OF LOURDE HAD A SHARP RENCOUNTER WITH THE FRENCH FROM THE ADJACENT GARRISONS,—WITH SEVERAL PARTICULARS TOUCHING THE SIEGE OF LOURDE, AND THE DEATH OF THE GOVERNOR, WHO WOULD NOT SURRENDER IT TO HIS RELATION THE COUNT DE FOIX.

IN the morning, we mounted our horſes, ſet out from Tournay, paſſed the river Liſſe at a ford; and, riding towards the city of Tarbes, entered Bigorre, leaving on our left the road to Lourde, Bagneres, and the caſtle of Montgaillard. We made for a village called in the country Terra Cimitat, and ſkirted a wood, which we afterwards entered, on the lands of the lord de Barbaſan; when the knight ſaid, 'Sir John, this is the paſs of Larre: look about you.' I did ſo, and thought it a very ſtrange country, and ſhould have imagined myſelf in great danger if I had not had the company of the knight.

I recollected what he had ſaid ſome days before reſpecting the country of Larre and Mengeant de Lourde, and, reminding him of them, ſaid, 'My lord, you promiſed, that when we came to the country

country of Larre, you would tell me more of Mengeant de Lourde, and the manner of his death.' 'It is true,' replied the knight: 'come and ride by my ſide, and I will tell it you.' I then puſhed forward to hear him the better, when he began as follows:

'During the time Peter d'Anchin held the caſtle and garriſon of Ortingas, as I have before related, thoſe of Lourde made frequent excurſions at a diſtance from their fort, when they had not always the advantage. You ſee thoſe two caſtles of Barbaſan and Marteras, which had always conſiderable garriſons: the towns of Bagneres, Tournay, Montgaillard, Salenges, Benach, Gorre, and Tarbes, were alſo full of French troops. When they heard that thoſe of Lourde had made any excurſion towards Toulouſe or Carcaſſone, they collected themſelves and formed an ambuſcade, to ſlay them and carry off what pillage they ſhould have collected: ſometimes ſeveral on each ſide were killed, at others thoſe of Lourde paſſed unmoleſted.

'It happened once, that Ernauton de Sainte Colombe, le Mengeant de Sainte Corneille, with ſix ſcore lances, good men at arms, ſet out from Lourde, and advanced round the mountains between the two rivers Liſſe and Leſſe, as far as Toulouſe. On their return, they found in the meadows great quantities of cattle, pigs, and ſheep, which they ſeized, as well as ſome ſubſtantial men from the flat countries, and drove them all before them.

'It was told to the governor of Tarbes, a ſquire of Gaſcony, called Ernauton Biffete, how thoſe of Lourde were over-running and haraſſing the country, and he ſent information of this to the lord de Benach and to Enguerros de Lane, ſon of ſir Raymond, and alſo to the lord de Barbaſan, adding, he was determined to attack them. Theſe knights and ſquires of Bigorre, having agreed to join him, aſſembled their men in the town of Tournay, through which the garriſon of Lourde generally returned. The bourg d'Eſpaign had come thither from his garriſon of St. Béart, and they were in the whole two hundred lances. They had ſent ſpies into the country to ſee what appearance their enemies made on their return.

'On the other hand, thoſe from Lourde had likewiſe ſpies on the watch, to obſerve if there were any men at arms out to intercept them: Both parties were ſo active that each knew the force of the other. When thoſe of Lourde heard that the French garriſons were waiting for them at Tournay, they began to be alarmed, and called a council to determine how to conduct their pillage in ſafety. It was reſolved to divide themſelves into two parties: one, conſiſting of ſervants and pillagers, was to drive their booty, and take bye roads to Lane-bourg, croſſing the bridge of Tournay, and the river Leſſe between Tournay and Malvoiſin: the other diviſion was to march in order of battle on the high grounds, and to make an appearance as if they meant to return by the paſs of Larre below Marteras, but to fall back between

between Barbaſan and Montgaillard, in order that the baggage might croſs the river in ſafety. They were to meet all together at Montgaillard, from whence they would ſoon be at Lourde. This plan they executed; and the baſtard de Carnillac, Guillonet de Harnes, Perot Bourſier, John Calemin de Baſſelle, and le Rouge Ecuyer, collected forty lances, with all the ſervants and pillagers, and ſaid to them,—'You will conduct our plunder and priſoners by the road to Lane-bourg, and then deſcend between Tournay and Malvoiſin, where you will croſs the river at the bridge: follow then the bye road between Cimitat and Montgaillard; we will go the other road by Marteras and Barbaſan, ſo as to meet all together at Montgaillard.' On this they departed; and there remained with the principal diviſion Ernauton de Reſten, Ernauton de Sainte Colombe, le Mengeant de Sainte Corneille, and full eighty companions, all men at arms: there were not ten varlets among them. They tightened their armour, fixed their helmets, and, graſping their lances, marched in cloſe order as if they were inſtantly to engage: they indeed expected nothing elſe, for they knew their enemies were in the field.

'The French, in like manner as thoſe of Lourde, had called a council reſpecting their mode of acting. Sir Monant de Barbaſan and Ernauton Biſcete* ſaid; 'Since we know the men of Lourde are bringing home great plunder and

* Biſcete,—before Biffete.

many priſoners, we ſhall be much vexed if they eſcape us: let us, therefore, form two ambuſcades, for we are enow for both.' Upon this it was ordered, that le bourg d'Eſpaign, ſir Raymond de Benach, and Enguerros de Lane, with one hundred ſpears, ſhould guard the paſſage at Tournay, for the cattle and priſoners muſt neceſſarily croſs the river; and the lord de Barbaſan, and Ernauton Biſcete, with the other hundred lances, ſhould reconnoitre, if perchance they could come up with them.

'They ſeparated from each other, and the lord de Benach and le bourg d'Eſpaign placed themſelves in ambuſcade at the bridge between Tournay and Malvoiſin. The other diviſion rode to the ſpot where we now are, which is called the Larre, and there the two parties met. They inſtantly diſmouted, and, leaving their horſes to paſture, with pointed lances advanced, for a combat was unavoidable, ſhouting their cries, 'St. George for Lourde!' 'Our lady for Bigorre!'

'They charged each other, thruſting their ſpears with all their ſtrength, and, to add greater force, urged them forward with their breaſts. The combat was very equal; and for ſome time none were ſtruck down, as I heard from thoſe preſent. When they had ſufficiently uſed their ſpears, they threw them down, and with battle-axes began to deal out terrible blows on both ſides. This action laſted for three hours, and it was marvellous to ſee how well they fought and defended themſelves. When any were ſo worſted or out of breath, that they

they could not longer ſupport the fight, they ſeated themſelves near a large ditch full of water in the middle of the plain, when, having taken off their helmets, they refreſhed themſelves: this done, they replaced their helmets, and returned to the combat. I do not believe there ever was ſo well fought or ſo ſevere a battle, as this of Marteras in Bigorre, ſince the famous combat of thirty Engliſh againſt thirty French knights in Brittany *.

'They fought hand to hand, and Ernauton de Sainte Colombe, an excellent man at arms, was on the point of being killed by a ſquire of the country called Guillonet de Salenges, who had puſhed him ſo hard that he was quite out of breath, when I will tell you what happened: Ernauton de Sainte Colombe had a ſervant who was a ſpectator of the battle, neither attacking nor attacked by any one; but, ſeeing his maſter thus diſtreſſed, he ran to him, and, wreſting the battle-axe from his hands, ſaid, 'Ernauton, go and ſit down; recover yourſelf: you cannot longer continue the battle.'

'With this battle-axe he advanced upon the ſquire, and gave him ſuch a blow on the helmet as made him ſtagger and almoſt fall down. Guillonet, ſmarting from the blow, was very wroth, and made for the ſervant to ſtrike him with his axe

* This celebrated combat took place between thirty Engliſh under the command of Bembro (who ſeems inconſiderately to have engaged in it), and thirty French under Beaumanoir, at the oak half way between Ploërmel and Joſſelin, in the year 1351.—See note in the ſecond volume, page 237.

on the head; but the varlet avoided it, and grappling with the ſquire, who was much fatigued, turned him round, and flung him to the ground under him, when he ſaid, 'I will put you to death, if you do not ſurrender yourſelf to my maſter.' 'And who is thy maſter?' 'Ernauton de Sainte Colombe, with whom you have been ſo long engaged.' The ſquire, finding he had not the advantage, being under the ſervant, who had his dagger ready to ſtrike, ſurrendered on condition to deliver himſelf priſoner within fifteen days, at the caſtle of Lourde, whether reſcued or not. Of ſuch ſervice was this ſervant to his maſter; and I muſt ſay, ſir John, that there was a ſuperabundance of feats of arms that day performed, and many companions were ſworn to ſurrender themſelves at Tarbes and at Lourde. Ernauton Biſcete and le Mengeant de Sainte Baſile fought hand to hand, without ſparing themſelves, and performed many gallant deeds, while all the others were fully employed: however, they fought ſo vigorouſly that they exhauſted their ſtrength, and both were ſlain on the ſpot. Thus fell Ernauton Biſcete and le Mengeant de Sainte Baſile.

'Upon this, the combat ceaſed by mutual conſent, for they were ſo worn down that they could not longer wield their axes: ſome diſarmed themſelves, to recruit their ſtrength, and left there their arms. Thoſe of Lourde carried with them the dead body of le Mengeant, as the French did that of Ernauton to Tarbes; and, in order that the memory of this battle ſhould be preſerved, they

they erected a croſs of ſtone on the place where theſe two knights had fought and died. See, there it is: I point to it.' On this, we turned to the right, and made for the croſs, when each ſaid an Ave Maria and a Pater-noſter for the ſouls of the deceaſed. 'By my faith,' ſaid I to the knight, 'I have liſtened to you with pleaſure; and in truth it was a very ſevere affair for ſo ſmall a number; but what became of thoſe who conducted the pillage?' 'I will tell you,' replied he. 'At the bridge of Tournay, below Malvoiſin, where they intended to croſs, they found the bourg d'Eſpaign in ambuſcade, who, on their arrival, ſallied out upon them, being in ſufficient force. Thoſe of Lourde could not retreat, and were obliged to abide the event. I muſt truly ſay, that the combat was as ſevere and as long, if not longer than that at Marteras. The bourg d'Eſpaign performed wonders: he wielded a battle-axe, and never hit man with it but he ſtruck him to the ground. He was well formed for this, being of a large ſize, ſtrongly made, and not too much loaded with fleſh. He took with his own hand the two captains, the bourg de Cornillac * and Perot Palatin de Béarn. A ſquire of Navarre was there ſlain, called Ferdinand de Miranda, an expert man at arms. Some who were preſent ſay the bourg d'Eſpain killed him, others that he was ſtifled through the heat of his armour. In ſhort, the pillage was reſcued, and all who conducted it

* Before Carnillat.

ſlain

ſlain or made priſoners; for not three eſcaped, excepting varlets, who ran away and croſſed the river Leſſe by ſwimming. Thus ended this buſineſs, and the garriſon of Lourde never had ſuch a loſs as it ſuffered that day. The priſoners were courteouſly ranſomed, or mutually exchanged; for thoſe who had been engaged in this combat had made ſeveral priſoners on each ſide, ſo that it behoved them to treat each other handſomely.'

'Holy Mary!' ſaid I to the knight, 'this bourg d'Eſpaign, is he ſo ſtrong a man as you tell me?' 'Yes, that he is, by my troth,' ſaid he, 'and you will not find his equal in all Gaſcony for vigour of body: it is for this the count de Foix eſteems him as his brother in arms. Three years ago, I ſaw him play a ridiculous trick, which I will relate to you. On Chriſtmas-day, when the count de Foix was celebrating the feaſt with numbers of knights and ſquires, as is cuſtomary, the weather was piercing cold; and the count had dined, with many lords, in the hall. After dinner he roſe and went into a gallery, which has a large ſtair-caſe of twenty-four ſteps: in this gallery is a chimney where there is a fire kept when the count inhabits it, otherwiſe not; and the fire is never great, for he does not like it: it is not for want of blocks of wood, for Béarn is covered with wood in plenty to warm him if he had choſen it, but he has accuſtomed himſelf to a ſmall fire. When in the gallery he thought the fire too ſmall, for it was freezing and the weather very ſharp, and ſaid to the knights around

ground him, 'Here is but a ſmall fire for this weather.' Ernauton d'Eſpaign inſtantly ran down ſtairs; for from the windows of the gallery, which looked into the court, he had ſeen a number of aſſes laden with billets of wood for the uſe of the houſe, and ſeizing the largeſt of theſe aſſes, with his load, threw him over his ſhoulders, and carried him up ſtairs, puſhing through the crowd of knights and ſquires who were around the chimney, and flung aſs and load, with his feet upwards on the dogs of the hearth, to the delight of the count, and the aſtoniſhment of all, at the ſtrength of the ſquire, who had carried with ſuch eaſe, ſo great a load up ſo many ſteps.'

This feat of ſtrength did I hear; and all the hiſtories of ſir Eſpaing du Lyon gave me ſuch ſatisfaction and delight, I thought the road was much too ſhort. While this was relating, we croſſed the paſs of Larre, and leaving the caſtle of Marteras, where the battle was fought, paſſed very near the caſtle of Barbaſan, which is handſome and ſtrong, a league diſtant from Tarbes. We ſaw it before us, and had a good road, eaſy to be travelled, following the courſe of the river Leſchez, which riſes in the mountains. We rode at our leiſure, not to fatigue our horſes; and he pointed out to me, on the other ſide of the river, the caſtle and town of Montgaillard, and the road which goes ſtraight to Lourde. It then came into my mind to aſk the knight about the duke of Anjou, when the caſtle of Malvoiſin had ſurrendered to him, and how he had acted on his march

march to Lourde. He very cheerfully told me as follows:

'When the duke of Anjou marched his army from before Malvoiſin, he croſſed the river Leſchez by the bridge of Tournay, and lodged at Bagneres, (where there is a handſome river which runs by Tarbes; for that of Tournay takes a different courſe, and falls into the Garonne, below Montmillion) in his way to lay ſiege to Lourde.

'Sir Peter Arnaut de Béarn, with his brother John, Peter d'Anchin, Ernauton de Reſtin, Ernauton de Sainte Colombe and le Mengeant, who was then alive, Ferdinand de Miranda, Oliver Barbe, le bourg de Cornillac, le bourg Camus, and the other companions within Lourde, had good information of his arrival, and had much ſtrengthened the place, in all reſpects, againſt his coming. Lourde held out, in ſpite of all the attacks they could make on it, for fifteen days conſecutively. Many gallant deeds were done, and much miſchief to the town by the machines which the duke brought to bear againſt it, ſo that at length it was conquered; but the garriſon ſuffered nothing, nor loſt man, woman, nor child, for they had all retreated to the caſtle, as they knew well the town could not always hold out, being only fortified with paliſadoes.

'When the French had won the town of Lourde they were much pleaſed, and, having fixed their quarters in it, they ſurrounded the caſtle, which was impregnable but by a long ſiege. The duke was there upwards of ſix weeks, and loſt more

more than he gained; for the beſiegers could not hurt thoſe within the caſtle, as it is ſituated on a perpendicular rock, and can only be approached by ladders, or by one paſs. There were at the barriers ſeveral handſome ſkirmiſhes and deeds of arms, when many ſquires of France were killed and wounded from having advanced too near.

'The duke of Anjou, ſeeing he could not gain the caſtle of Lourde by force, opened a negotiation with the governor, offering him large ſums of money if he would ſurrender his garriſon. The knight was a man of honour, and excuſed himſelf by ſaying, 'the garriſon was not his; and that he could neither ſell, give, nor alienate the inheritance of the king of England, unleſs he were a traitor, which he ſcorned to be, and would remain loyal to his natural lord. When the fort was intruſted to him, it was on condition that he ſwore ſolemnly on his faith, in the hands of the prince of Wales, to guard and defend the caſtle of Lourde until death, againſt every man whatever, unleſs he were ſent to him from the king of England.'

'No other anſwer could be had from him, in reply to all the offers and promiſes they made; ſo that, when the duke and his council ſaw they could not gain any thing, they broke up the ſiege of the caſtle of Lourde; but, on their decamping, they burnt the town to the ground.

'The duke retreated with his army along the frontiers of Béarn towards Montmarſen: he had heard that the count be Foix had reinforced all his garriſons with men at arms. This did not diſpleaſe

pleaſe him ſo much as that the Béarn men ſhould hold out Lourde againſt him; but he could never obtain any thing ſatisfactory on this head.

'The count de Foix, as I have mentioned before, was very ſuſpicious of the intentions of the duke, who did him no harm, though the count d'Armagnac and the lord d'Albreth wiſhed him to act otherwiſe; but he was not ſo inclined. While he was encamped between Montmarſen and the high lands of Albreth, he ſent ſir Peter de Beuil to Orthès, where on his arrival he was handſomely received by the count de Foix and lodged in the caſtle. He entertained him ſplendidly, and preſented him with fine horſes and mules, and to his people gave other gifts: he ſent by him to the duke of Anjou four beautiful horſes and two Spaniſh greyhounds, ſo handſome and good there were none like them. Some ſecret negotiations paſſed between the count and ſir Peter de Beüil, of which we knew nothing for a long time; but, from circumſtances which ſhortly happened, we ſuſpected what I will now tell you, and by that time we ſhall arrive at Tarbes.

'Soon after the duke of Anjou had ended his expedition and was returned to Toulouſe, the count de Foix ſent letters by a truſty meſſenger to his couſin ſir Peter Arnaut de Béarn at Lourde, for him to come to Orthès. The knight, on receiving theſe letters and noticing the bearer, who was a man of high rank, became very thoughtful and doubtful whether to go or not: however, on full conſideration, he ſaid he would go, for he

was

was unwilling to offend the count de Foix. When on the point of departure, he called his brother, John de Béarn, and ſaid to him, in preſence of the garriſon; 'My lord, the count de Foix has ſent for me; on what account I know not, but, ſince he is deſirous I ſhould come to him, I will go. I ſuſpect very much that I ſhall be required to ſurrender this caſtle; for the duke of Anjou has marched along the frontiers of his country without entering it, and the count de Foix has long wiſhed for the caſtle of Malvoiſin, in order to be maſter of Lanebourg and the frontiers of Bigorre and Comminges. I am ignorant if any treaties have been made between him and the duke of Anjou; but I declare, that as long as I live, I will never ſurrender the caſtle of Lourde but to my natural lord the king of England. I therefore order you, brother John, ſhould I appoint you to the command of it, that you ſwear to me upon your faith and gentility, you will hold it in the ſame manner as I do, and that you will never fail in ſo doing for life or death.' John took the oath as his brother required, who then ſet out for Orthès, where on his arrival he diſmounted at the hôtel of the Moon.

'When he thought it was decent time to wait on the count, he went to him at the caſtle, who received him moſt amicably, made him ſit at his table, and ſhewed him every mark of attention. Dinner being over, the count ſaid, 'Peter, I have many things to talk with you upon: therefore, you muſt not go away without my leave.' The knight anſwered, 'My lord, I will cheerfully

ſtay until I have your permiſſion to depart.' The third day the count addreſſed him, in the preſence of the viſcount de Gouſſerant, his brother, the lord d'Anchin in Bigorre, and ſeveral knights and ſquires, and ſo loud that all heard him: 'Peter, I have ſent for you, to acquaint you, that my lord of Anjou is very angry with me on account of the garriſon of Lourde which you command. Through the good offices of ſome friends I have in his army, my territories have narrowly eſcaped being overrun; and it is his opinion, and others in his company who hate me, that I ſupport you, becauſe you are of Béarn. Now I do not wiſh to incur the anger of ſo powerful a prince as the duke of Anjou: I therefore command you, under pain of my diſpleaſure, and by the faith and homage you owe me, to give up the caſtle of Lourde to me.'

'The knight was thunderſtruck on hearing this ſpeech, and thought awhile what anſwer to make; for he perceived the count had ſpoken in a determined manner. Having fully conſidered, he ſaid, 'My lord, in truth I owe you faith and homage, for I am a poor knight of your blood and country; but, as for the caſtle of Lourde, I will never ſurrender it to you. You have ſent for me, and you may therefore do with me as you pleaſe. I hold the caſtle of Lourde from the king of England, who has placed me there; and to no other perſon but to him will I ever ſurrender it.'

'The

'The count de Foix, on hearing this answer, was exceedingly wroth, and ſaid, as he drew his dagger, 'Ho, ho! doſt thou then ſay no? By this head, thou haſt not ſaid it for nothing.' And, as he uttered theſe words, he ſtruck him foully with the dagger, ſo that he wounded him ſeverely in five places, and none of the barons or knights dared to interfere. The knight replied, 'Ha, ha, my lord, this is not gentle treatment: you have ſent for me hither, and are murdering me.' Having received theſe five ſtrokes from the dagger, the count ordered to him to be caſt into the dungeon, which was done; and there he died, for he was ill cured of his wounds.'

'Ha, holy Mary,' ſaid I to the knight, 'was not this a great act of cruelty?' 'Whatever it was,' replied he, 'ſo it happened, and ill betide him who angers the count, for then he pardons none. He kept his couſin german the viſcount de Châteaubon, even though he is his heir, eight months priſoner in the tower of the caſtle of Orthès, and then ranſomed him for forty thouſand francs.' 'What, ſir,' ſaid I, 'has not the count de Foix any children?' 'Eh, in God's name, not in lawful marriage; but he has two young knights, baſtards, ſir Jenuain and ſir Gracien, whom you will ſee, and whom he loves as well as himſelf.' 'And was he never married?' 'Yes, and is ſo ſtill, but madame de Foix does not live with him.' 'Where does ſhe reſide?' 'She lives in Navarre, for the king of Navarre is her brother: ſhe was daughter of king Louis of Na-

varre.' 'The count de Foix, had he never any children by her?' 'Yes; a very fine ſon, who was the delight of his father and of the country: through him the country of Béarn, which is in diſpute, would have been ſettled, for his wife was ſiſter to the count d'Armagnac.' 'And pray, ſir, may I aſk what became of this ſon?' 'Yes,' replied he; 'but the ſtory is too long at preſent, for we are, as you ſee, arrived at the town.'

At theſe words, I left the knight quiet; and we ſoon after entered Tarbes, where we were very comfortable at the hotel of the Star. We remained there the whole of that day, for it was a commodious place, to refreſh ourſelves and horſes, having good hay, good oats, and a handſome river.

CHAP. XXX.

DURING THE JOURNEY FROM TARBES TO MORLENS, THE KNIGHT OF FOIX RELATES TO FROISSART THE QUARREL AND RECONCILIATION BETWEEN THE DUKE OF BERRY AND THE COUNT DE FOIX,—AND ALSO THE CAUSE OF THE WAR BETWEEN HIM AND THE COUNT D'ARMAGNAC.

ON the morrow after maſs, having mounted our horſes and left Tarbes, we came to Jorre, a town which has always gallantly defended itſelf

againſt

againſt the garriſon of Lourde. We paſſed by it, and entered Béarn, when the knight ſtopped in the plain, and ſaid, 'We are now in Béarn.' There were two roads that croſſed each other, and we knew not which to take, whether that to Morlens or to Pau: at laſt, we followed that to Morlens.

In riding over the heaths of Béarn, which are tolerably level, I aſked, in order to renew our converſation, 'Is the town of Pau near us?' 'Yes,' ſaid he, 'I will ſhew you the ſteeple; but it is much farther off than it appears, and the roads are very bad to travel on account of the deep clays, and it would be folly for any one to attempt going through them that is not well acquainted with the country. Below are ſeated the town and caſtle of Lourde.' 'And who is governor of it now?' 'John de Béarn, brother to ſir Peter de Béarn that was murdered, and he ſtiles himſelf ſénéſchal of Bigorre for the king of England.' 'Indeed!' ſaid I, 'and does this John ever viſit the count de Foix?' 'Never ſince the death of his brother; but his other companions, ſuch as Peter d'Anchin, Ernauton de Reſtin, Ernauton de Sainte Colombe and others go thither whenever they have occaſion.' 'Has the count de Foix made any amends for the murder of the knight? or has he ever again been in ſuch paſſions?' 'Yes, very often,' replied the knight; 'but as for amends, he has never made any, except indeed by ſecret penances, maſſes and prayers: he has with him the ſon of John de Béarn, a young and courteous ſquire, whom he greatly loves.'

'Holy Mary!' exclaimed I, 'ſince the duke of Anjou was ſo deſirous to gain Lourde, he ought to be well pleaſed with the count de Foix, who could murder a knight and his couſin, to accompliſh the duke's wiſhes.' 'By my faith, he was ſo; for, ſoon after the event of his nephew coming to the crown of France, he ſent ſir Roger d'Eſpaign and a preſident of the parliament of Paris, with fair letters patent engroſſed and ſealed, of the king's declaration that he gave him the county of Bigorre during his life, but that it was neceſſary he ſhould become liege man and hold it of the crown of France.

'The count de Foix was very thankful to the king for this mark of his affection, and for the gift of Bigorre, which was unſolicited on his part; but, for any thing ſir Roger d'Eſpaign could ſay or do, he would never accept it. He only retained the caſtle of Malvoiſin, becauſe it was free land, and the caſtle and its dependencies held of none but God, and formerly had been part of his patrimony.

'The king of France, to pleaſe the duke of Anjou gave it to the count de Foix; but the count ſwore he would only hold it on condition never to admit into it any one ill inclined to France; and in truth he had it well guarded. The garriſon of Malvoiſin would have been as much afraid of the Engliſh as any other French or Gaſcon garriſon, but they dared not invade the territories of Foix.'

I was

I was much pleaſed with this hiſtory of ſir Eſpaign du Lyon, which I have well remembered; for, as ſoon as we diſmounted at our inns, I wrote all down, whether it was late or early, that poſterity might have the advantage of it, for there is nothing like writing for the preſervation of events.

We rode this morning to Morlens; but, before we arrived, I again began the converſation by ſaying, 'My lord, I have forgotten to aſk you, when you were telling me the hiſtory of Foix and Armagnac, how the count de Foix was able to diſſemble with the duke of Berry, who had married a daughter and ſiſter to the counts d'Armagnac? and, if the duke of Berry made war on him, how he behaved?' 'How he behaved?' ſaid the knight; 'I will tell you; in former times, the duke hated him mortally; but at this moment, by means which you will hear, when at Orthès they are very good friends.' 'My lord, was there any reaſon for the duke's hatred?' 'Father of God! no,' replied the knight; 'I will tell you the cauſe of it.

'When Charles king of France, father to the preſent king, died, the kingdom was divided into two parties reſpecting its government. My lord of Anjou, who was impatient to go to Italy, and indeed this he afterwards did, took poſſeſſion of it, and ſet aſide his two brothers the dukes of Berry and Burgundy. The duke of Berry had the government of thoſe parts within the Langue d'Oc,

and the duke of Burgundy of the Langue d'Ouy and all Picardy*.

'When the inhabitants of Languedoc heard that my lord of Berry was to govern them they were much alarmed, eſpecially thoſe of Toulouſe and its dependencies; for they knew the duke to be a ſpendthrift, who would get money any way he could without caring how he oppreſſed the people. Some Bretons ſtill remained in the Toulouſain, Carcaſſonois and Rouergue, whom the duke of Anjou had left, and they pillaged the whole country: it was reported the duke of Berry ſupported them, in order to be maſter of the principal towns. The duke himſelf was not at the

* 'It is very probable theſe two denominations had been in uſe before the ordinance of Philip le bel in 1304 and 1305. It is in another ordinance of Charles VI. 1394, which ſtates the crown of France to be divided into Langue d'Oc and Langue d'Oil. The word Langue was employed anciently for nation or province: in the order of Malta, this term is preſerved at preſent. Guillaume de Nangis, in his chronicle, points out the environs of Paris by the name of Langue d'Oil, in the year 1343, where an epidemical diſorder began to deſolate the country towards the end of Auguſt. In la Salade, by Anthony de la Salle, about 1440, he ſpeaks of an unknown knight, whom he ſuppoſes from Languedoc, 'becauſe he and the greater part of his attendants uſed in their ſpeech Oc, the language which is ſpoken at Sant-Jago of Compoſtella.'

'All theſe general diſtinctions ceaſed from the time of Francis I. There is not any mention after that period, in the treaſury receipts, of the Langue d'Oc nor of the Langue d'Oil. The Langue d'Oc was conſidered as the country ſouth of the Loire, and the Langue d'Oil, or Picarde, to the north of it.'—*St. Palaye Mem. de l'Academie*, vol. xxiv.

time

time I am ſpeaking of in Languedoc, but attending the king in the wars in Flanders.

'The citizens of Toulouſe, who are a powerful body, perceiving how young the king was and how much occupied with the affairs of his uncle the duke of Burgundy in Flanders, and that they were perpetually plundered by Bretons and other pillagers, ſo that they knew not how to prevent it, ſent to the count de Foix offers of paying him a certain ſum monthly, if he would undertake the government and defence of their city and the other neighbouring towns. They entreated him very earneſtly to comply with their requeſt, becauſe they knew him to be an upright man, a great lover of juſtice, fortunate in his affairs, and much feared by his enemies. The inhabitants of Toulouſe have always borne him great affection, for he has been ever a good neighbour to them.

'He undertook the charge of their government, and ſwore to hold and defend the country in its right againſt all who were ill inclined, with the reſervation of the rights of the king of France. He inſtantly ordered conſiderable detachments of men at arms on the different roads the pillagers uſed to take; and one day he had hanged or drowned upwards of four hundred of them at Robeſten in the Toulouſain, which gained him ſo much the love of thoſe of Toulouſe, Carcaſſone, Beziers, Montpellier and the other towns, that it was reported Languedoc had revolted and choſen for its lord the count de Foix.

'The duke of Berry, who had the government of it, was ill pleaſed at this intelligence, and conceived a great hatred to the count de Foix, for interfering ſo much in the affairs of France, and for his ſupporting the people of Toulouſe in their revolt. He ordered men at arms into that country, but they were ſeverely repulſed by the partiſans of the count de Foix, and were forced to retreat, or they would have ſuffered for it. This angered the duke ſtill more: he ſaid the count de Foix was the proudeſt and moſt preſumptuous man in the world; and he would not ſuffer his name to be mentioned with praiſe in his preſence; but he did not make war againſt him, for the count had all his towns and caſtles ſo well garriſoned, none dared to invade his territories.

'When the duke of Berry entered Languedoc, the count reſigned the government, and would not any way meddle, in prejudice to the duke; but his diſlike ſtill continued as great as ever. I will now ſay a word of the means that eſtabliſhed peace between them.

'About ten years ago, Eleanor de Comminges (at preſent counteſs of Boulogne, a near relation to the count de Foix, and lawful heireſs to the county of Comminges, notwithſtanding the count d'Armagnac was in poſſeſſion) came to the count de Foix at Orthès, bringing with her a young girl, three years old. The count entertained her handſomely, inquired her buſineſs, whence ſhe came, and

and whither going? 'My lord,' ſaid ſhe, 'I am going to my uncle and aunt-in-law, the count and counteſs de Durgueil, in Arragon, there to remain; for I have much diſpleaſure in living with my huſband, ſir John de Boulogne, ſon of the count de Boulogne. I expected he would have recovered for me mine inheritance of Comminges from the count d'Armagnac, who not only keeps it, but has confined my ſiſter in priſon; but my huſband is too ſoft a knight, whoſe ſole delight is eating and drinking, and enjoying his pleaſures; and the moment his father dies, he will ſell the greater part of his eſtates to multiply his luxuries: it is for theſe reaſons I cannot live with him. I have alſo brought my daughter with me, whom I deliver up to your charge, and appoint you her guardian, to inſtruct and defend her; for I well know that, from our relationſhip, you will not diſappoint me; and I have the greateſt confidence in the care you will take of my daughter Joan.

'It was with much difficulty I could get her from her father's hands, and out of the country; but as I know the Armagnacs, your adverſaries as well as mine, are capable of carrying her off, being the true heireſs of Comminges, I deliver her to you; therefore do not fail me in this buſineſs, I entreat of you; for I firmly believe, that when my huſband ſhall know I have left her under your care, he will be pleaſed, having frequently ſaid, that this girl would give him much trouble.'

'The count de Foix was delighted to hear his couſin

couſin, the lady Eleanor, thus talk, and thought in his own mind (for he has a very fertile imagination), that this girl was brought to him very opportunely, as by her means he could make a ſtable peace with his enemies, or marry her ſo nobly they would fear him. He anſwered,—'Madam and couſin, I will moſt cheerfully comply with your requeſt: I am bounden to it by our relationſhip. With regard to your daughter, I will defend, and be as careful of her as if ſhe were my own child.' 'A thouſand thanks, my lord!' ſaid the lady.

'Thus did the young lady of Boulogne remain with the count at his houſe in Orthès, which ſhe has never ſince quitted, and the lady her mother purſued her journey to Arragon. She has returned to ſee her two or three times, but has never aſked to have her back; for the count acquits himſelf towards her as if ſhe were indeed his own child. But I muſt tell you the means by which, if formerly he was in the ill graces of the duke de Berry, he is now on good terms. The duke at this moment is very deſirous to marry her; and from what I heard at Avignon from the pope, who ſpoke to me on the ſubject, and who is couſin-german to her father, the duke will employ him to aſk for him, as he is determined to make her his wife.'

'By holy Mary,' ſaid I to the knight, 'your hiſtory has given me much pleaſure and done me ſervice: you ſhall not loſe a word you have ſaid,

for

for they ſhall all be chronicled with every thing I ſay and do, if God grant me health to return again to Valenciennes, of which place I am a native; but I am very angry at one thing.' 'What is that?' ſaid the knight. 'On my faith, it is, that ſo noble and valiant a prince as the count de Foix ſhould not have any legal heirs by his wife.' 'Pleaſe God he had,' replied the knight; 'for if his child were now alive, he would be the happieſt lord in the world, and his vaſſals be equally rejoiced.' 'What!' ſaid I, 'will his eſtates be without an heir?' 'Oh, no: the viſcount de Châteaubon, his couſin-german, is his heir.' 'Is he a valiant man at arms?' 'God help him! no; and for that reaſon the count de Foix cannot bear him. He will make his two baſtard-ſons, who are young and handſome knights, his heirs, and intends to connect them very highly by marriage; for he has money enough, which will find them wives to uphold and aſſiſt them.' 'Sir,' ſaid I, 'all this is very well; but I do not think it juſt nor decent that baſtards ſhould inherit lands.' 'Why not?' added he, 'if proper heirs be wanting. Do not you ſee how the Spaniards crowned for king the baſtard don Henry? and the Portugueſe have done the ſame thing. It has frequently happened that baſtards have gained poſſeſſion of ſeveral kingdoms by force. Was not William the conqueror baſtard-ſon of a duke of Normandy! He won all England, as well as the king's daughter who then governed, and was himſelf king,

and

and from him all the kings of England are deſcended.'

'Well, ſir,' ſaid I, 'all this may be well, for there is nothing but what may happen. Surely thoſe of the Armagnac party are too ſtrong, and this country muſt always be at war. Tell me, my dear ſir, the firſt origin of the wars between Foix and Armagnac, and which had the faireſt cauſe.' 'That I will, by my faith,' anſwered the knight; 'it has, however, been a wonderful war, for each thinks he has juſtice on his ſide. You muſt know, that formerly, I imagine about one hundred years from this time, there was a lord of Béarn called Gaſton, a moſt gallant man at arms: he was buried with great ſolemnity in the church of the Freres Mineurs, at Orthès, where you will find him and may ſee of what a ſize he was in body and limbs, for during his lifetime he had a handſome reſemblance made of him in braſs. This Gaſton had two daughters; the eldeſt of whom he married to the count d'Armagnac of that period, and the youngeſt to the count de Foix, nephew to the king of Arragon. The counts de Foix ſtill bear thoſe arms (for they are deſcended from the kings of Arragon), which are paly or and gules; and this, I believe, you know. It happened that the lord of Béarn had a ſevere and long war with the king of Caſtille of that time, who, marching through Biſcay with a numerous army, entered Béarn. Sir Gaſton de Béarn, having intelligence of his march, collected people from all quarters,

and

and had written to his two ſons in law, the counts d'Armagnac and de Foix, to come with all quickneſs with their forces, to aſſiſt him in the defence and preſervation of his inheritance.

'On the arrival of theſe letters, the count de Foix aſſembled his vaſſals as ſpeedily as poſſible, and ſent for aſſiſtance to all his friends. He exerted himſelf ſo effectually that he collected five hundred knights and ſquires and two thouſand footmen armed with javelins, darts and ſhields: accompanied by theſe, he marched into Béarn to aſſiſt the lord his father, who was much delighted therewith. This army croſſed the river Bane by the bridge of Orthès, and took up their quarters between Sauveterre and l'Hôpital. The king of Caſtille, with full twenty thouſand men, was encamped not far from them. Sir Gaſton de Béarn and the count de Foix, expecting the count d'Armagnac, waited for him three days: on the fourth a herald arrived from the count d'Armagnac with letters to ſir Gaſton, to ſay he could not come, and that it was not agreeable to him to arm in behalf of the country of Béarn, for at preſent he had not any intereſt in it.

'Sir Gaſton, perceiving he was not to have any aſſiſtance from the count d'Armagnac, was much aſtoniſhed, and aſked the count de Foix and the barons of Béarn, how he ſhould act. 'My lord,' replied the count de Foix, 'ſince we are aſſembled, we will offer battle to your enemies.' This advice was followed, and inſtantly they all armed:

they

they might be about twelve hundred men with helmets and ſix thouſand on foot.

'The count de Foix, with the van diviſion, charged the king of Caſtille and his army in their quarters. The battle was very ſevere and bloody: upwards of two thouſand Caſtillians were ſlain. The count de Foix made priſoners the ſon and brother of the king of Caſtille, whom he ſent to ſir Gaſton de Béarn, who commanded the rear diviſion. The Caſtillians were completely defeated. The count de Foix purſued them as far as the gates of Saint Andero in Biſcay, where the king took refuge in an abbey, and put on a monk's frock, otherwiſe he would have been taken: thoſe ſaved themſelves who could, on board of veſſels.

'The count de Foix, on his return to ſir Gaſton de Béarn, was received by him with much joy, as indeed he had reaſon, for he had ſaved his honour and ſecured the country, which otherwiſe would have been loſt.

'This battle and defeat of the Caſtillians, and the capture of the ſon and brother of the king, induced him to accede to a peace with the lord de Béarn on ſuch terms as he dictated.

'Sir Gaſton de Béarn, on his return to Orthès, in the preſence of all the knights of Béarn and Foix, took the count de Foix by the hand and ſaid, 'Fair ſon, you are indeed my ſon, my loyal ſon, and have ſecured for ever my honour and the honour of my country. The count d'Armagnac, who

who married my eldeſt daughter, has excuſed himſelf from aſſiſting in the defence of my inheritance, in which he was ſo much intereſted. I therefore declare that he has forfeited and ſhall loſe whatever ſhare he may have expected from it in behalf of my daughter. You, count de Foix, ſhall inherit the whole of my territory of Béarn after my deceaſe, you and your heirs for ever. I entreat and command all my ſubjects, to agree with me, and to ſeal this gift, which I preſent to you, my fair ſon of Foix.' All preſent anſwered, 'My lord, we will moſt cheerfully do ſo.'

'Thus did the former counts de Foix become lords of Béarn: they bear the arms and the name, and have the war-cry and profit. However, the Armagnacs have not the leſs urged their claims to thoſe rights they ſay they are entitled to; and this is the cauſe of the quarrel and war between Armagnac, Foix and Béarn.'

'By my faith,' ſaid I to the knight, 'you have perfectly well explained the matter. I never before heard any thing of it, but, ſince I now do, I will perpetuate it, if God grant that I return to my own country. But there is one thing more I could wiſh to know: what cauſed the death of the ſon of the count de Foix?' The knight became penſive, and ſaid 'It is too melancholy a ſubject: I therefore wiſh not to ſpeak of it; but when you are at Orthès, if you aſk, you will find many there who will tell you the whole hiſtory.' I was obliged to content myſelf with this anſwer; ſo

we

we continued our journey until we arrived at Morlens.

CHAP. XXXI.

SIR JOHN FROISSART ARRIVES AT ORTHES.—AN OLD SQUIRE RELATES TO HIM THE CRUEL DEATH OF THE ONLY SON OF THE COUNT DE FOIX, AND HOW STRANGE DREAMS AFFECTED SIR PETER DE BEARN, BASTARD-BROTHER TO THE COUNT.

ON the morrow we ſet out, and dined at Montgerbal, when having remounted, and drank a cup at Ercie, we arrived by ſun-ſet at Orthès. The knight diſmounted at his own houſe: and I did the ſame at the hôtel of the Moon, kept by a ſquire of the count, called Ernauton du Pin, who received me with much pleaſure on account of my being a Frenchman.

Sir Eſpaign du Lyon, who had accompanied me, went to the caſtle, to ſpeak with the count on his affairs: he found him in his gallery, for a little before that hour he had dined. It was a cuſtom with the count, which he had followed from his infancy, to riſe at noon and ſup at midnight.

The knight informed him of my arrival, and I was inſtantly ſent for; for he is a lord above all others

others who delights to ſee ſtrangers, in order to hear news. On my entering, he received me handſomely, and retained me of his houſehold, where I ſtaid upwards of twelve weeks well entertained, as were my horſes.

Our acquaintance was ſtrengthened by my having brought with me a book which I had made at the deſire of Winceſlaus of Bohemia, duke of Luxembourg and Brabant. In this book, called le Meliador, are contained all the ſongs, ballads, roundelays and virelays, which that gentle duke had compoſed, and of them I had made this collection.

Every night after ſupper I read out to him parts: during which time neither he nor any one elſe ſpoke, for he was deſirous I ſhould be well heard, and took much delight in it. When any paſſages were not perfectly clear, he himſelf diſcuſſed them with me, not in his Gaſcon language but in very good French.

I ſhall relate to you ſeveral things reſpecting him and his houſehold, for I tarried there as long as I could gain any information.

Count Gaſton Phœbus de Foix, of whom I am now ſpeaking, was at that time fifty-nine years old; and I muſt ſay, that although I have ſeen very many knights, kings, princes and others, I have never ſeen any ſo handſome, either in the form of his limbs and ſhape, or in countenance, which was fair and ruddy, with grey and amorous eyes, that gave delight whenever he choſe to expreſs affection. He was ſo perfectly formed one could not praiſe him too much. He loved earneſtly

the things he ought to love, and hated thoſe which it was becoming him ſo to hate. He was a prudent knight, full of enterpriſe and of wiſdom. He had never any men of abandoned character with him, reigned prudently, and was conſtant in his devotions. There were regular nocturnals from the Pſalter, prayers from the rituals to the virgin, to the Holy Ghoſt, and from the burial ſervice. He had every day diſtributed as alms, at his gate, five florins in ſmall coin, to all comers. He was liberal and courteous in his gifts; and well knew how to take when it was proper, and to give back where he had confidence. He mightily loved dogs above all other animals; and during the ſummer and winter amuſed himſelf much with hunting. He never liked any fooliſh works nor ridiculous extravagancies; and would know every month the amount of his expenditure. He choſe from his own ſubjects twelve of the moſt able to receive and adminiſter his finances: two of them had the management for two months, when they were changed for two others; and from them he ſelected one as comptroller, in whom he placed his greateſt cofindence, and to whom all the others rendered their accounts. This comptroller accounted by rolls or written books, which were laid before the count. He had certain coffers in his apartment, from whence he took money to give to different knights, ſquires or gentlemen, when they came to wait on him; for none ever left him without a gift; and theſe ſums he continually increaſed, in order to be prepared for any event that

that might happen. He was eaſy of acceſs to all, and entered very freely into diſcourſe, though laconic in his advice and in his anſwers. He employed four ſecretaries to write and copy his letters; and theſe ſecretaries were obliged to be in readineſs the moment he came out from his cloſet. He called them neither John, Walter, nor William, but his good-for-nothings, to whom he gave his letters after he had read them, either to copy, or to do any thing elſe he might command.

In ſuch manner did the count de Foix live. When he quitted his chamber at midnight, for ſupper, twelve ſervants bore each a large lighted torch before him, which were placed near his table and gave a brilliant light to the apartment. The hall was full of knights and ſquires; and there were plenty of tables laid out for any perſon who choſe to ſup. No one ſpoke to him at his table, unleſs he firſt began a converſation. He commonly ate heartily of poultry, but only the wings and thighs; for in the day-time, he neither ate nor drank much. He had great pleaſure in hearing minſtrels, as he himſelf was a proficient in the ſcience, and made his ſecretaries ſing ſongs, ballads and roundelays. He remained at table about two hours; and was pleaſed when fanciful diſhes were ſerved up to him, which having ſeen, he immediately ſent them to the tables of his knights and ſquires.

In ſhort, every thing conſidered, though I had before been in ſeveral courts of kings, dukes, princes, counts, and noble ladies, I was never at

one which pleaſed me more, nor was I ever more delighted with feats of arms, than at this of the count de Foix. There were knights and ſquires to be ſeen in every chamber, hall and court, going backwards and forwards, and converſing on arms and amours. Every thing honourable was there to be found. All intelligence from diſtant countries was there to be learnt; for the gallantry of the count had brought viſitors from all parts of the world. It was there I was informed of the greater part of thoſe events which had happened in Spain, Portugal, Arragon, Navarre, England, Scotland, and on the borders of Languedoc; for I ſaw, during my reſidence, knights and ſquires arrive from every nation. I therefore made inquiries from them, or from the count himſelf, who cheerfully converſed with me.

I was very anxious to know, ſeeing the hôtel of the count ſo ſpacious and ſo amply ſupplied, what was become of his ſon Gaſton, and by what accident he had died, for ſir Eſpaign du Lyon would never ſatisfy my curioſity. I made ſo many inquiries, that at laſt an old and intelligent ſquire informed me. He thus began his tale:

'It is well known that the count and counteſs de Foix are not on good terms with each other, nor have they been ſo for a long time. This diſſention aroſe from the king of Navarre, who is the lady's brother. The king of Navarre had offered to pledge himſelf for the lord d'Albreth, whom the count de Foix held in priſon, in the ſum of fifty thouſand francs. The count de Foix, knowing

knowing the king of Navarre to be crafty and faithleſs, would not accept his ſecurity, which piqued the counteſs, and raiſed her indignation againſt her huſband: ſhe ſaid,—'My lord, you ſhow but little confidence in the honour of my brother, the king of Navarre, when you will not truſt him for fifty thouſand francs: if you never gain more from the Armagnacs and Labriſſiens than you have done, you ought to be contented: you know that you are to aſſign over my dower, which amounts to fifty thouſand francs, into the hands of my brother: therefore you cannot run any riſk for the re-payment.' 'Lady, you ſay truly,' replied the count; 'but, if I thought the king of Navarre would ſtop the payment for that cauſe, the lord d'Albreth ſhould never leave Orthèz until he had paid me the utmoſt farthing. Since, however, you entreat it, it ſhall be done, not out of love to you, but out of affection to my ſon.'

'Upon this, and from the aſſurance of the king of Navarre, who acknowledged himſelf debtor to the count de Foix, the lord d'Albreth recovered his liberty: he turned to the French intereſt, and married the ſiſter of the duke of Bourbon: He paid, at his convenience, to the king of Navarre the ſum of fifty thouſand francs, according to his obligation; but that king never repaid them to the count de Foix.

'The count on this ſaid to his wife, 'Lady, you muſt go to your brother in Navarre, and tell him that I am very ill ſatisfied with him for with-

holding from me the ſum he has received on my account.' The lady replied, ſhe would cheerfully go thither, and ſet out from Orthès with her attendants. On her arrival at Pampeluna, her brother the king of Navarre received her with much joy. The lady punctually delivered her meſſage, which when the king had heard, he replied, 'My fair ſiſter, the money is yours, as your dower from the count de Foix; and, ſince I have poſſeſſion of it, it ſhall never go out of the kingdom of Navarre.' 'Ah, my lord,' replied the lady, 'you will by this create a great hatred between the count de Foix and me; and, if you perſiſt in this reſolution, I ſhall never dare return, for my lord will put me to death for having deceived him.' 'I cannot ſay,' anſwered the king, who was unwilling to let ſuch a ſum go out of his hands, 'how you ſhould act, whether to remain or return; but as I have poſſeſſion of the money, and it is my right to keep it for you, it ſhall never leave Navarre.'

'The counteſs de Foix, not being able to obtain any other anſwer, remained in Navarre, not daring to return home. The count de Foix, perceiving the malice of the king of Navarre, began to deteſt his wife, though ſhe was no way to blame, for not returning after ſhe had delivered his meſſage. In truth, ſhe was afraid; for ſhe knew her huſband to be cruel when diſpleaſed with any one. Thus things remained. Gaſton, the ſon of my lord, grew up, and became a fine young gentleman. He was married to the daughter of the

the count d'Armagnac, ſiſter to the preſent count and to ſir Bernard d'Armagnac; and by this union peace was inſured between Foix and Armagnac. The youth might be about fifteen or ſixteen years old: he was a very handſome figure and the exact reſemblance to his father in his whole form.

He took it into his head to make a journey into Navarre, to viſit his mother and uncle; but it was an unfortunate journey for him and for this country. On his arrival in Navarre, he was ſplendidly entertained; and he ſtaid ſome time with his mother. On taking leave, he could not prevail on her, notwithſtanding his remonſtrances and entreaties, to accompany him back; for, the lady having aſked if the count de Foix his father had ordered him to bring her back, he replied, that when he ſet out, no ſuch orders had been given, which cauſed her to fear truſting herſelf with him. She therefore remained, and the heir of Foix went to Pampeluna to take leave of his uncle. The king entertained him well, and detained him upwards of ten days: on his departure, he made him handſome preſents, and did the ſame by his attendants. The laſt gift the king gave him was the cauſe of his death, and I will tell you how it happened. As the youth was on the point of ſetting out, the king took him privately into his chamber, and gave him a bag full of powder, which was of ſuch pernicious quality as would cauſe the death of any one that eat of it. 'Gaſton, my fair nephew,' ſaid the king, 'will

you do what I am about to tell you? You ſee how unjuſtly the count de Foix hates your mother, who being my ſiſter, it diſpleaſes me as much as it ſhould you. If you wiſh to reconcile your father to your mother, you muſt take a ſmall pinch of this powder, and, when you ſee a proper opportunity, ſtrew it over the meat deſtined for your father's table; but take care no one ſees you. The inſtant he ſhall have taſted it, he will be impatient for his wife, your mother, to return to him; and they will love each other henceforward ſo ſtrongly they will never again be ſeparated. You ought to be anxious to ſee this accompliſhed. Do not tell it to any one; for, if you do, it will loſe its effect.' The youth, who believed every thing his uncle the king of Navarre had told him, replied, he would cheerfully do as he had ſaid; and on this he departed from Pampeluna, on his return to Orthès. His father the count de Foix received him with pleaſure, and aſked what was the news in Navarre, and what preſents and jewels had been given him: he replied, 'Very handſome ones,' and ſhewed them all, except the bag which contained the powder.

'It was cuſtomary, in the hôtel de Foix, for Gaſton and his baſtard brother Evan to ſleep in the ſame chamber: they mutually loved each other, and were dreſſed alike, for they were nearly of the ſame ſize and age. It fell out, that their clothes were once mixed together; and, the coat of Gaſton being on the bed, Evan, who was malicious enough, noticing the powder in the bag, ſaid

ſaid to Gaſton, 'What is this that you wear every day on your breaſt?' Gaſton was not pleaſed at the queſtion, and replied, 'Give me back my coat, Evan: you have nothing to do with it.' Evan flung him his coat, which Gaſton put on, but was very penſive the whole day. Three days after, as if God was deſirous of ſaving the life of the count de Foix, Gaſton quarrelled with Evan at tennis, and gave him a box on the ear. The boy was vexed at this, and ran crying to the apartment of the count, who had juſt heard maſs. The count, on ſeeing him in tears, aſked what was the matter. 'In God's name, my lord,' replied Evan, 'Gaſton has beaten me, but he deſerves beating much more than I do.' 'For what reaſon?' ſaid the count, who began to have ſome ſuſpicions. 'On my faith,' ſaid Evan, 'ever ſince his return from Navarre, he wears on his breaſt a bag of powder: I know not what uſe it can be of, nor what he intends to do with it; except that he has once or twice told me, his mother would ſoon return hither, and be more in your good graces than ever ſhe was.' 'Ho,' ſaid the count, 'hold thy tongue, and be ſure thou do not mention what thou haſt juſt told me to any man breathing.' 'My lord,' replied the youth, 'I will obey you.' The count de Foix was very thoughtful on this ſubject, and remained alone until dinner-time, when he roſe up, and ſeated himſelf as uſual at his table in the hall. His ſon Gaſton always placed the diſhes before him, and taſted the meats. As ſoon as he had ſerved the firſt diſh, and done what was uſual,

uſual, the count caſt his eyes on him, having formed his plan, and ſaw the ſtrings of the bag hanging from his pourpoint. This ſight made his blood boil, and he ſaid, 'Gaſton, come hither: I want to whiſper you ſomething.' The youth advanced to the table, when the count, opening his boſom, undid his pourpoint, and with his knife cut away the bag. The young Man was thunderſtruck, and ſaid not a word, but turned pale with fear, and began to tremble exceedingly, for he was conſcious he had done wrong. The count opened the bag, took ſome of the powder, which he ſtrewed over a ſlice of bread, and, calling a dog to him, gave it him to eat. The inſtant the dog had eaten a morſel, his eyes rolled round in his head, and he died. The count on this was very wroth, and indeed had reaſon: riſing from table, he would have ſtruck his ſon with a knife; but the knights and ſquires ruſhed in between them, ſaying, 'For God's ſake, my lord, do not be too haſty, but make further inquiries before you do any ill to your ſon.' The firſt words the count uttered were in Gaſcon; 'Ho, Gaſton, thou traitor! for thee, and to increaſe thy inheritance which would have come to thee, have I made war, and incurred the hatred of the kings of France, England, Spain, Navarre and Arragon, and have borne myſelf gallantly againſt them, and thou wiſheſt to murder me! Thy diſpoſition muſt be infamouſly bad: know therefore thou ſhalt die with this blow.' And, leaping over the table with a knife in his hand, he would have ſlain him; but the knights

knights and ſquires again interfered, and on their knees ſaid to him with tears, 'Ah, ah! my lord, for Heaven's ſake, do not kill Gaſton: you have no other child. Let him be confined and inquire further into the buſineſs.' Perhaps he was ignorant what was in the bag, and may therefore be blameleſs.' 'Well,' replied the count, 'let him be confined in the dungeon, but ſo ſafely guarded that he may be forthcoming.' The youth was therefore confined in this tower. The count had many of thoſe who ſerved his ſon arreſted, but not all; for ſeveral eſcaped out of the country: in particular, the biſhop of Leſcar *, who was much ſuſpected, as were ſeveral others. He put to death not leſs than fifteen, after they had ſuffered the torture; and the reaſon he gave was, that it was impoſſible but they muſt have been acquainted with the ſecrets of his ſon, and they ought to have informed him by ſaying, 'My lord, Gaſton wears conſtantly on his breaſt a bag of ſuch and ſuch a form.' This they did not do, and ſuffered a terrible death for it; which was a pity, for there were not in all Gaſcony ſuch handſome or well-appointed ſquires. The houſehold of the count de Foix was always ſplendidly eſtabliſhed.

'This buſineſs went to the heart of the count, as he plainly ſhewed; for he aſſembled at Orthès all the nobles and prelates of Foix and Béarn, and others the principal perſons of the country. When they were met, he informed them of the

* Leſcar,—a city in Béarn, about one league from Pau.

cauſe

cauſe of his calling them together, and told them how culpable he had found Gaſton; inſomuch that it was his intention he ſhould be put to death, as he thought him deſerving of it. They unanimouſly replied to this ſpeech,—'My lord, ſaving your grace's favour, we will not that Gaſton be put to death: he is your heir and you have none other.' When the count thus heard his ſubjects declare their ſentiments in favour of his ſon, he heſitated, and thought he might ſufficiently chaſtiſe him by two or three months confinement, when he would ſend him on his travels for a few years until his ill conduct ſhould be forgotten, and he feel grateful for the lenity of his puniſhment. He therefore diſſolved the meeting; but thoſe of Foix would not quit Orthès until the count had aſſured them Gaſton ſhould not be put to death, ſo great was their affection to him. He complied with their requeſt, but ſaid he would keep him ſome time in priſon. On this promiſe, thoſe who had been aſſembled departed, and Gaſton remained a priſoner in Orthès. News of this was ſpread far and near, and reached pope Gregory XI. who reſided at Avignon: he ſent inſtantly the cardinal of Amiens, as his legate, to Béarn, to accommodate this affair; but he had ſcarcely travelled as far as Beziers, when he heard he had no need to continue his journey, for that Gaſton, the ſon of the Count de Foix, was dead. I will tell you the cauſe of his death, ſince I have ſaid ſo much on the ſubject. The count de Foix had cauſed him to be confined in a room of the dungeon

geon where was little light: there he remained for ten days. He ſcarcely eat or drank any thing of the food which was regularly brought to him, but threw it aſide. I is ſaid, that after his death, all the meat was found untouched, ſo that it is marvellous how he could have lived ſo long. The count would not permit any one to remain in the chamber to adviſe or comfort him: he therefore never put off the clothes he had on when he entered his priſon. This made him melancholy and vexed him, for he did not expect ſo much harſhneſs: he therefore curſed the hour he was born, and lamented that he ſhould come to ſuch an end. On the day of his death, thoſe who brought him food ſaid, 'Gaſton, here is meat for you.' He paid not any attention to it, but ſaid, 'Put it down.' The perſon who ſerved him, looking about, ſaw all the meat untouched that he had brought thither the laſt days: then, ſhutting the door, he went to the count and ſaid, 'My lord, for God's ſake, look to your ſon: he is ſtarving himſelf in his priſon. I do not believe he has eaten any thing ſince his confinement; for I ſee all that I have carried to him lying on one ſide untouched.' On hearing this, the count was enraged, and, without ſaying a word, left his apartment and went to the priſon of his ſon. In an evil hour, he had in his hand a knife, with which he had been pairing and cleaning his nails, he held it by the blade ſo cloſely that ſcarcely the thickneſs of a groat appeared of the point, when, puſhing aſide the tapeſtry that covered the entrance of the priſon, through

through ill luck, he hit his ſon on a vein of his throat, as he uttered, ‘ Ha, traitor, why doſt not thou eat?’ and inſtantly left the room, without ſaying or doing any thing more. The youth was much frightened at his father's arrival, and withal exceedingly weak from faſting. The point of the knife, ſmall as it was, cut a vein, which as ſoon as he felt he turned himſelf on one ſide and died. The count had barely got back again to his apartment when the attendants of his ſon came and ſaid, ‘ My lord, Gaſton is dead.’ ‘ Dead!’ cried the count. ‘ Yes, God help me! indeed he is my lord.’ The count would not believe it, and ſent one of his knights to ſee. The knight, on his return, confirmed the news. The count was now bitterly affected, and cried out, ‘ Ha, ha, Gaſton! what a ſorry buſineſs has this turned out for thee and me! In an evil hour didſt thou go to viſit thy mother in Navarre. Never ſhall I again enjoy the happineſs I had formerly.’ He then ordered his barber to be ſent for, and was ſhaven quite bare: he clothed himſelf, as well as his whole houſehold, in black. The body of the youth was borne, with tears and lamentations, to the church of the Auguſtin friars at Orthès, where it was buried. Thus have I related to you the death of Gaſton de Foix: his father killed him indeed, but the king of Navarre was the cauſe of this ſad event.’

My heart was much affected at this recital of the ſquire of Béarn relative to the death of Gaſton; and I was truly ſorry for the count his father, whom

whom I found a magnificent, generous and courteous lord, and alſo for the country that was diſcontented for want of an heir. I then took leave of the ſquire, after having thanked him for the pleaſure his narration had given me. I ſaw him frequently afterwards in the hôtel de Foix, when we had always ſome converſation. I once aſked him about ſir Peter de Béarn, baſtard-brother to the count, who ſeemed to me a knight of great valour, and if he were rich, or married. 'Married indeed he is,' replied he, 'but neither his wife nor children live with him.' 'For what reaſon?' ſaid I. 'I will tell you,' replied the ſquire.

'Sir Peter de Béarn has a cuſtom, when aſleep in the night-time, to riſe, arm himſelf, draw his ſword, and to begin fighting as if he were in actual combat. The chamberlains and valets who ſleep in his chamber to watch him, on hearing him riſe, go to him, and inform him what he is doing: of all which, he tells them, he is quite ignorant, and that they lie. Sometimes they have neither arms nor ſword in his chamber, when he makes ſuch a noiſe and clatter as if all the devils in hell were there. They therefore think it beſt to replace the arms, and ſometimes he forgets them, and remains quietly in his bed.'

I again aſked, if he had a large fortune with his wife. 'Yes, in God's name, had he,' ſaid the ſquire; 'but the lady keeps poſſeſſion of it, and enjoys the profits, except a fourth part, which ſir Peter has.' 'And where does his lady reſide?'

'She

'She lives with her couſin the king of Caſtille: her father was count of Biſcay and couſin-german to don Pedro, who put him to death. He wanted alſo to lay hands on this lady, to confine her. He ſeized her lands, and as long as he lived ſhe received nothing from them. It was told her, when, by the death of her father, ſhe became counteſs of Biſcay,—'Lady, ſave yourſelf; for, if, don Pedro lay hands on you, he will put you to death, or at leaſt impriſon you, for he is much enraged that you ſhould ſay he ſtrangled his queen, ſiſter to the duke of Bourbon and the queen of France, in her bed; and your evidence is more readily believed than any other, for you were of her bed-chamber.'

'For this reaſon, the counteſs Florence de Biſcaye quitted the country with few attendants, as one naturally wiſhes to fly from death, paſſed through Biſcay and came hither, when ſhe told my lord her hiſtory.

'The count, who is kind and affectionate to all ladies and damſels, had compaſſion on her, detained her at his court, and placed her with the lady de la Karaſſe, a great baroneſs of this country, and provided her with all things ſuitable to her rank. Sir Peter de Béarn, his brother, was at that time a young knight, and had not then this cuſtom of fighting in his ſleep, but was much in the good graces of the count, who concluded a marriage for him with this lady, and recovered her lands from don Pedro. She has a ſon and daughter by ſir Peter, but they are young, and with her in Caſtille,

Caſtille, for ſhe would not leave them with their father; and ſhe has the right of enjoying the greater part of her own lands.'

'Holy Mary!' ſaid I to the ſquire, 'how came the knight to have ſuch fancies, that he cannot ſleep quietly in bed, but muſt riſe and ſkirmiſh about the houſe! this is very ſtrange.' 'By my faith,' anſwered the ſquire, 'they have frequently aſked him, but he knows nothing about it. The firſt time it happened, was on the night following a day when he had hunted a wonderfully large bear in the woods of Béarn. This bear had killed four of his dogs and wounded many more, ſo that the others were afraid of him; upon which ſir Peter drew his ſword, of Bourdeaux ſteel, and advanced on the bear with great rage, on account of the loſs of his dogs: he combated him a long time with much bodily danger, and with great difficulty ſlew him, when he returned to his caſtle of Languedudon, in Biſcay, and had the bear carried with him. Every one was aſtoniſhed at the enormous ſize of the beaſt, and the courage of the knight who had attacked and ſlain it.

'When the counteſs of Biſcay, his wife, ſaw the bear, ſhe inſtantly fainted, and was carried to her chamber, where ſhe continued very diſconſolate all that and the following day, and would not ſay what ailed her. On the third day ſhe told her huſband 'ſhe ſhould never recover her health until ſhe had made a pilgrimage to St. James's ſhrine at Compoſtella. Give me leave, therefore, to go thither, and to carry my ſon Peter, and my

daughter Adrienne with me: I requeſt it of you.' Sir Peter too eaſily complied: ſhe had packed up all her jewels and plate unobſerved by any one; for ſhe had reſolved never to return again.

'The lady ſet out on her pilgrimage, and took that opportunity of viſiting her couſins, the king and queen of Caſtille, who entertained her handſomely. She is ſtill with them, and will neither return herſelf nor ſend the children. The ſame night he had hunted and killed the bear, this cuſtom of walking in his ſleep ſeized him. It is rumoured, the lady was afraid of ſomething unfortunate happening, the moment ſhe ſaw the bear, and this cauſed her fainting; for that her father once hunted this bear, and during the chace, a voice cried out, though he ſaw nobody, 'Thou hunteſt me: yet I wiſh thee no ill; but thou ſhalt die a miſerable death.' The lady remembered this when ſhe ſaw the bear, as well as that her father had been beheaded by don Pedro without any cauſe; and ſhe maintains, that ſomething unfortunate will happen to her huſband; and that what paſſes now is nothing to what will come to paſs. I have told you the ſtory of Sir Peter de Béarn,' ſaid the ſquire, 'in compliance with your wiſhes: it is a well-known fact; and what do you think of it?'

I was very penſive at the wonderful things I had heard, and replied, 'I do believe every thing you have ſaid: we find in ancient authors, how gods and goddeſſes formerly changed men into beaſts, according to their pleaſure, and women alſo into birds.

birds. This bear, therefore, might have been a knight hunting in the foreſt of Biſcay, when he, perchance, angered ſome god or goddeſs, who changed him into a bear, to do penance, as Acteon was transformed into a ſtag.' 'Acteon!' cried the ſquire: 'my good ſir do relate it, for I ſhall be very happy to liſten to you.' 'According to ancient authors, we read that Acteon was a handſome and accompliſhed knight, who loved dogs and the chace above all things. He was once hunting a ſtag of a prodigious ſize: the chace laſted the whole day, when he loſt his men and his hounds; but, eager in purſuing the ſtag, he came to a large meadow, ſurrounded by high trees, in which was a fountain, where the goddeſs of Chaſtity and her nymphs were bathing themſelves. The knight came upon them ſo ſuddenly that they were not aware of him, and he had advanced ſo far he could not retreat. The nymphs, in their fright, ran to cover their miſtreſs, whoſe modeſty was wounded at being thus ſeen naked. She viewed the knight over the heads of her attendants, and ſaid, 'Acteon, whoever has ſent thee hither has no great love for thee: I will not, that when thou ſhalt go hence, thou brag of having ſeen me naked, as well as my nymphs; and for the outrage thou haſt committed, thou ſhalt perform a penance. I change thee, therefore, into the form of the ſtag thou haſt this day hunted.' He was inſtantly transformed into a ſtag, who naturally loves waters.

'Thus it may have happened with regard to the bear whoſe hiſtory you have told me, and the counteſs may have had ſome knowledge or ſome fears which at the moment ſhe would not diſcover: ſhe therefore ought to be excuſed for what ſhe has done.' The ſquire anſwered, 'It may perchance be ſo;' and thus ended our converſation.

CHAP. XXXII.

THE COUNT DE FOIX HOLDS SOLEMN FESTIVALS ON THE FEAST OF ST. NICHOLAS AND AT CHRISTMAS; DURING WHICH FROISSART BECOMES ACQUAINTED WITH BASTOT DE MAULEON, WHO RELATES TO HIM, AMONG OTHER THINGS, HOW SEVERAL OF THE CAPTAINS OF THE FREE COMPANIES WERE DEFEATED BEFORE THE TOWN OF SANCERRE,—HOW HE SURPRISED THE TOWN OF THURIE IN THE ALBIGEOIS, AND HOW ONE OF THE NAME OF LIMOUSIN REVENGED AN OUTRAGE COMMITTED AGAINST HIM BY LOUIS RAIMBAUT.

AMONG the ſolemnities which the count de Foix obſerves on high feſtivals, he moſt magnificently keeps the feaſt of St. Nicholas, as I learnt from a ſquire of his houſehold the third day after my arrival at Orthès. He holds this feaſt

feaſt more ſplendidly than that of Eaſter, and has a moſt magnificent court, as I myſelf noticed, being preſent on that day. The whole clergy of the town of Orthès, with all its inhabitants, walk in proceſſion to ſeek the count at the caſtle, who on foot returns with them to the church of Saint Nicholas, where is ſung the pſalm 'Benedictus Dominus, Deus meus, qui docet manus meas ad prœlium, et digitos meos ad bellum,' from the Pſalter of David, which, when finiſhed, recommences, as is done in the chapels of the pope or king of France, on Chriſtmas or Eaſter-days, for there were plenty of choiriſters. The biſhop of Pamiers ſang the maſs for the day; and I there heard organs play as melodiouſly as I have ever heard in any place. To ſpeak briefly and truly, the count de Foix was perfect in perſon and in mind; and no contemporary prince could be compared with him for ſenſe, honour or liberality.

At the feaſts of Chriſtmas, which he kept with great ſolemnity, crowds of knights and ſquires from Gaſcony waited on him, to all of whom he gave ſplendid entertainments. I ſaw there the bourg d'Eſpaign, of whoſe ſurpriſing ſtrength ſir Eſpaing du Lyon had told me, which made me more deſirous to ſee him, and the count ſhewed him many civilities. I ſaw alſo knights from Arragon and England; which laſt were of the houſehold of the duke of Lancaſter, who at that time reſided at Bourdeaux, whom the count received very graciouſly, and preſented with handſome gifts.

I made acquaintance with theſe knights, and by

them was informed of ſeveral things which had happened in Caſtille, Navarre and Portugal, which I ſhall clearly detail in proper time and place.

I ſaw there alſo a gaſcon ſquire, called le baſtot de Mauléon, an expert man at arms, and about fifty years old, according to his appearance. He arrived at the hôtel of the Moon, where I lodged with Ernauton du Pin, in grand array, having led horſes with him like to a great baron, and he and his attendants were ſerved on plate of gold and ſilver. When I heard his name, and ſaw how much reſpect the count de Foix and all the others paid him, I aſked ſir Eſpaing du Lyon, 'Is not this the ſquire who quitted the caſtle of Trigalet, when the duke of Anjou lay before Mauvoiſin?' 'Yes,' replied he; 'and he is as able a captain and as good a man at arms as any exiſting.' Upon this I beſought his acquaintance, as he was lodged in the ſame hôtel as myſelf, with a couſin of his, a Gaſcon, called Arnauton, governor of Carlat in Auvergne, whom I well knew, and who aſſiſted me in it, as did alſo the bourg de Copaire*.

One night, as we were ſitting round the fire chatting and waiting for midnight, which was the hour the count ſupped, his couſin began a converſation relative to his former life, and aſked him to tell his adventures and ſucceſs in arms, without concealing loſs or profit, as he knew he could well remember them. Upon this he ſaid, 'Sir John, have you in your chronicle what I am going

* i. e. he aſſiſted him.

to

to ſpeak of?' 'I do not know,' replied I; 'but begin your ſtory, which I ſhall be happy to hear; for I cannot recollect every particular of my hiſtory, nor can I have been perfectly informed of every event.' 'That is true,' added the ſquire, and then began his hiſtory in theſe words:

'The firſt time I bore arms was under the captal de Buch at the battle of Poitiers: by good luck I made that day three priſoners, a knight and two ſquires, who paid me, one with the other, four thouſand francs. The following year I was in Pruſſia with the count de Foix and his couſin the captal, under whoſe command I was. On our return, we found the ducheſs of Normandy, the ducheſs of Orleans and a great number of ladies and damſels ſhut up in Meaux in Brie. The peaſants had confined them in the market-place of Meaux, and would have violated them, if God had not ſent us thither; for they were completely in their power, as they amounted to more than ten thouſand, and the ladies were alone. Upwards of ſix thouſand Jacks were killed on the ſpot, and they never afterwards rebelled.

'At this time there was a truce between the kings of France and England, but the king of Navarre continued the war on his own perſonal quarrel with the regent of France. The count de Foix returned to his own country, but my maſter and ſelf remained with the king of Navarre and in his pay. We made, with the help of others, a ſevere war on France; particularly in Picardy, where we took many towns and caſtles in the

biſhopricks of Beauvois and Amiens: we were maſters of the country and rivers, and gained very large ſums of money.

'When the truce expired between France and England, the king of Navarre diſcontinued his war, as peace had been made between him and the regent. The king of England croſſed the ſea with a large army, and laid ſiege to Rheims, whither he ſent for the captal, who at that time was at Clermont in Beauvoiſis, carrying on the war on his own account. We joined the king of England and his children. But,' ſaid the ſquire, 'I fancy you muſt have written all this, and how the king of England broke up his ſiege through famine, and how he came before Chartres, and how peace was made between the two kings.' 'That is true,' replied I: 'I have all this, as well as the treaties which were then concluded.' Upon this Baſtot de Mauléon thus continued his narration:

'This treaty of peace being concluded, it was neceſſary for all men at arms and free companies, according to the words of the treaty, to evacuate the fortreſſes or caſtles they held. Great numbers collected together, with many poor companions who had learnt the art of war under different commanders, to hold councils as to what quarters they ſhould march, and they ſaid among themſelves, that though the kings had made peace with each other, it was neceſſary for them to live. They marched into Burgundy, where they had captains of all nations, Germans, Scots, and people from every country. I was there alſo as a captain. Our num-

numbers in Burgundy, above the river Loire, were upwards of twelve thouſand, including all ſorts; but I muſt ſay, that in this number, there were three or four thouſand good men at arms, as able and underſtanding in war as any could be found, whether to plan an engagement, to ſeize a proper moment to fight, or to ſurpriſe and ſcale towns and caſtles, and well inured to war; which indeed we ſhewed at the battle of Brignais, where we overpowered the conſtable of France, the count de Forêts, with full two thouſand lances, knights and ſquires. This battle was of great advantage to the companions, for they were poor, and they then enriched themſelves by good priſoners, and by the towns and caſtles which they took in the archbiſhoprick of Lyons, on the river Rhône. They carried on their warfare until they had gained the Pont du St. Eſprit: and the pope and cardinals would not have been freed from them until they had deſtroyed every thing, if they had not thought of a good expedient, by ſending to Lombardy for the marquis de Montferrat, who was a gallant knight, and at that time at war with the lord of Milan. On his arrival at Avignon, the pope and cardinals had a conference with him; and he negotiated with the Engliſh, Gaſcon and German troops for their ſervices, for ſixty thouſand francs which the pope and cardinals paid to different leaders of theſe companies; ſuch as ſir John Hawkwood, a valiant Engliſh knight, ſir Robert Bricquet, Carſuelle, Naudon le Bagerant, le bourg Camus and many more. They marched into Lombardy,

bardy, having ſurrendered the Pont du St. Eſprit, and carried with them ſix parts of the companies; but ſir Sequin de Bateſol, ſir John Jewel, ſir James Planchin, ſir John Aymery, le bourg de Perigord, Eſpiote, Louis Raimbaut, Limouſin, James Trittel and myſelf, with ſeveral others, remained behind. We had poſſeſſion of Ance, St. Clement, la Barrelle, la Terrare, Brignais, le Pont St. Denis, l'Hôpital d'Ortiſart, and upwards of ſixty caſtles in the Maconnois, Forêts, Velay and in lower Burgundy on the Loire. We ranſomed the whole country, and they could only be freed from us by well paying. We took, by a night-attack, la Charité, which we held for a year and half. Every thing was ours from la Charité to Puy in Auvergne, (for ſir Sequin de Bateſol had left Ance, and reſided at Brioude in Auvergne, where he made great profit, and gained there and in the adjacent country upwards of one hundred thouſand francs) and below Loire as far as Orleans, with the command of the whole river Allier. The archprieſt, who was then a good Frenchman and governor of Nevers, could not remedy this; but, being our old acquaintance, we ſometimes complied with his entreaties to ſpare the country. The archprieſt did great good to the Nivernois, by fortifying the city of Nevers, which otherwiſe would have been ruined ſeveral times; for we had in the environs upwards of twenty-ſix ſtrong places, as well towns as caſtles, and no knight, ſquire, nor rich man dared to quit his home unleſs he had compounded with us; and this war we carried

carried on under the name and pretext of the king of Navarre. At this time happened the battle of Cocherel *, where the captal de Buch commanded for the king of Navarre, and many knights and ſquires went from us to aſſiſt him: ſir James Planchin and ſir John Jewel carried with them two hundred lances. I held at this period a caſtle called le Bec d'Allier, pretty near to la Charité, on the road to the Bourbonois, and had under me forty lances, where I made great profit from the country near Moulins, and about St. Pourçain † and St. Pierre ‡ le Mouſtier. When news was brought me that the captal, my maſter, was in Coutantin, collecting men from all parts, having a great deſire to ſee him, I left my caſtle with twelve lances, with whom I joined ſir James Planchin and ſir John Jewel, and without accident or adventure we came to the captal, I believe you muſt have all this in your hiſtory, as well as the event of the battle.' 'Yes, I have,' ſaid I: 'how the captal was made priſoner, and ſir James Planchin and ſir John Jewel killed.' 'That is right,' added he: 'I alſo was made priſoner; but good luck befel me, for it was to my couſin: he was couſin to my couſin now by my ſide, the bourg de Copaire; and his name was Bernard de Turide: he was killed in Por-

* Battle of Cocherel, 1364.

† St. Pourçain de Melcheres and St. Pourçain ſur Veſbre, villages of Bourbonois, near Moulins.

‡ St. Pierre le Moûtier,—a town of Nivernois, ſeven leagues from Moulins.

tugal,

tugal, at the affair of Aljubarrota. Bernard, then under the command of ſir Aymemon de Pommiers, ranſomed me in the field for a thouſand francs, and gave me a paſſport to return to my fort of Bec d'Alliers. Inſtantly on my arrival, I counted out to one of my ſervants a thouſand francs, which I charged him to carry to Paris, and to bring me back letters of acquittance for the payment, which he did. At this ſame ſeaſon, ſir John Aymery, an Engliſh knight, and the greateſt captain we had, made an excurſion down the Loire towards la Charité: he fell into an ambuſcade of the lords de Rougemont and de Vendelay, with the men of the archprieſt. They were the ſtrongeſt, and overpowered him: he was made priſoner, and ranſomed for thirty thouſand francs, which he inſtantly paid down. He was however ſo much vexed at being captured, and with his loſs, that he ſwore he would never re-enter his fort until he had had his revenge. He collected therefore a large body of companions, and came to la Charité on the Loire, and entreated the captains, ſuch as Lamit, Carſuelle, le bourg de Perigord and myſelf (who were come thither for our amuſement), to accompany him in an expedition. We aſked him, 'Whither?' 'By my faith,' replied he, 'we will croſs the Loire at port St. Thibaut, and ſcale the town and caſtle of Sancerre*. I have made a vow, that I will

* Sancerre,—an ancient town in Berry, near the Loire, eight leagues from Bourges.

never

never re-enter my own caſtle until I ſhall have ſeen the boys of Sancerre; and if we could conquer that garriſon, with the earl's children within it, John, Louis and Robert, we ſhould be made men, and maſters of the whole country. We may eaſily ſucceed in our attempt, for they pay no attention to us, and our remaining longer here is not of any advantage.' 'That is true,' we anſwered, and promiſed to accompany him, and went away to make ourſelves ready.

'It happened,' continued le baſtot de Mauléon, 'that our plot was diſcovered, and known in the town of Sancerre. A valiant ſquire from the lower parts of Burgundy, called Guichart d'Albigon, was at the time governor of the town, who took great pains to guard it well. The earl's children, who were all three knights, were with him. This Guichart had a brother a monk in the abbey of St. Thibaut near Sancerre, who was ſent by the governor to la Charité with the compoſition-money that ſome of the towns in the upper diſtricts owed. They were careleſs about him, and he diſcovered, I know not how, our intentions and what our numbers were, as well as the names of the captains of the different forts near la Charité, with the ſtrength of their garriſons, and alſo at what hour and in what manner we were to croſs the river at Port St. Thibaut. Having gained this information, he haſtened to diſcloſe it to his brother and the young knights of Sancerre. They made inſtant preparations for their defence, and ſent notice of the intended attack to the knights

and

and ſquires of Berry and the Bourbonnois, and to the captains of the different garriſons in the neighbourhood, ſo that they were four hundred good lances. They placed a ſtrong ambuſcade, of two hundred ſpears, in a wood near to the town.

'We ſet out at ſun-ſet from la Charité, and rode on briſkly, in good order, until we came to Prully, where we had collected a number of boats, to paſs us and our horſes over the river. We croſſed the Loire, as we had intended, and were all over about midnight: our horſes croſſed, alſo, without accident; but, as day-break was near, we ordered a hundred of our men to remain behind, to guard the horſes and boats; and the reſt advanced with a good pace, paſſing by the ambuſcade, which took no notice of us. When we had gone about a quarter of a league, they ſallied forth upon thoſe at the river ſide, whom they inſtantly conquered, for all were ſlain or made priſoners; the horſes were captured, and the paſſage of the river ſecured, when, mounting our horſes, they ſtuck ſpurs into them, and arrived at the town as ſoon as we did. They ſhouted on all ſides, 'Our lady for Sancerre!' for the count himſelf was in the town with his men, and ſir Louis and ſir Robert had formed the ambuſcade. We were thus completely ſurrounded, and knew not which way to turn ourſelves: the ſhock of lances was great; for thoſe on horſeback inſtantly diſmounted on their arrival, and attacked us fiercely; but what hurt us the moſt was the impoſſibility of extending our front, for we were incloſed in a narrow road, with-

hedges

hedges and vineyards on each ſide, with our enemies before and behind us. They knew well the country, and had poſted a body of their men and ſervants in the vineyards, who caſt ſtones and flints that bruiſed us much: we could not retreat, and had alſo great difficulty to approach the town, which is ſituated on a hill.

'We had very hard work: ſir John Aimery, our captain, who had led us thither, was dangerouſly wounded by Guichart d'Albigon, who, exerting himſelf to ſave him, puſhed him into a houſe in the town, and threw him on a bed, telling the maſter to take great care of his priſoner, and make haſte to have his wounds dreſſed, for his rank was ſuch, that if his life were ſaved, he would pay twenty thouſand francs. On ſaying this, Guichart left his priſoner and returned to the battle, where he ſhewed himſelf a good man at arms.

'Among others, the young knights of Sancerre had come to defend the country, with ſir Guichard Dauphin, the lord de Marnay, ſir Gerard and ſir William de Bourbon, the lords de Couſant, de la Pierre, de la Palice, de Neutey, de la Croiſe, de la Sicete and many more: I muſt ſay it was a very hard fought murderous battle: we kept our ground as long as we were able, inſomuch that ſeveral were ſlain and wounded on both ſides. By their actions they ſeemed more deſirous to take us alive than to kill us: at laſt they made priſoners of Carſuelle, Lamit, Naudon, le bourg de Perigord, le bourg de l'Eſparre, Angerot, Lamontgis, Philip du Roc, Pierre de Corthon, le Peſat de Pamiers,

le

le bourg d'Armeſen; in ſhort, all our companions who were in that neighbourhood. We were conducted to the caſtle of Sancerre in great triumph; and the free companies never ſuffered ſuch loſs in France as they did that day. Guichart d'Albigon, however, loſt his priſoner through negligence, for he bled ſo much that he died: ſuch was the end of John Aimery. By this defeat, which happened under the walls of Sancerre, la Charité ſur Loire ſurrendered to the French, as well as all the garriſons thereabout, by which means we obtained our liberties, and had paſſports given us to quit the kingdom of France and go whitherſoever we pleaſed. Fortunately for us, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, the lord de Beaujeu, ſir Arnold d'Andreghen and the count de la Marche, at this moment undertook an expedition into Spain, to aſſiſt the baſtard Henry againſt don Pedro. Before that time, I was in Brittany at the battle of Auraye, where I ſerved under ſir Hugh Calverley, and recovered my affairs; for the day was ours, and I made ſuch good priſoners, they paid me two thouſand francs. I accompanied ſir Hugh Calverley with ten lances into Spain, when we drove from thence don Pedro; but when treaties were afterwards made between don Pedro and the prince of Wales, who wiſhed to enter Caſtille, I was there, in the company of ſir Hugh Calverley, and returned to Aquitaine with him.

'The war was now renewed between the king of France and the prince: we had enough to do, for it was vigorouſly carried on; and great numbers

bers of Engliſh and Gaſcon commanders loſt their lives: however, thanks to God, I am ſtill alive. Sir Robert Briquet was ſlain at a place called Olivet, in the Orleannois, ſituated between the territories of the duke of Orleans and the country of Blois, where a ſquire from Hainault, a gallant man at arms, and good captain, called Alars de Douſtiennes, ſurnamed de Barbazan, for he was of that family, met him, and conquered both him and his company. This Alars was at that time governor of Blois and its dependancies, for the lords Lewis, John and Guy de Blois; and it chanced that he met ſir Robert Briquet and ſir Robert Cheney at Olivet, when both were ſlain on the ſpot, and all their men, for none were ranſomed. Afterwards, at the battle of Niort, Carſuelle was killed by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, and ſeven hundred Engliſh periſhed that day. Richard Ellis and Richard Heline, two Engliſh captains, were alſo killed at St. Severe: I know but few except myſelf who have eſcaped death. I have guarded the frontiers, and ſupported the king of England; for my eſtate is in the Bordelois; and I have at times been ſo miſerably poor that I had not a horſe to mount, at other times rich enough, juſt as good fortune befel me. Raymonet de l'Eſpee and I were ſome time companions: we held the caſtles of Mauvoiſin, Trigalet and Nantilleux in the Toulouſain, on the borders of Bigorre, which were very profitable to us. When the duke of Anjou came to attack them with his army, Raymonet turned to the French; but I remaine

ſteady to the Engliſh, and ſhall do ſo as long as I live. In truth, when I loſt the caſtle of Trigalet, and was eſcorted to caſtle Cuillet, after the retreat of the duke of Anjou into France, I reſolved to do ſomething which ſhould either make me or ruin me. I therefore ſent ſpies to reconnoitre the town and caſtle of Thurie in the Albigeois, which caſtle has ſince been worth to me, as well by compoſitions as by good luck, one hundred thouſand francs. I will tell you by what means I conquered it. On the outſide of the town and caſtle, there is a beautiful ſpring of water, where every morning the women of the town come to fill their pails or other veſſels; which having done, they carry them back on their heads. Upon this, I formed my plan; and, taking with me fifty men from the caſtle of Cuillet, we rode all day over heaths and through woods, and about midnight I placed an ambuſcade near Thurie. Myſelf, with only ſix others, diſguiſed as women, with pails in our hands, entered the meadow very near the town, and hid ourſelves in a heap of hay; for it was about St. John's day, and the meadows were mown and making into hay. When the uſual hour of opening the gates arrived, and the women were coming to the fountain, each of us then took his pail, and having filled it placed it on his head, and made for the town, our faces covered with handkerchiefs ſo that no one could have known us. The women that met us ſaid, 'Holy Mary, how early muſt you have riſen this morning!' We replied in feigned voices, and paſſed on to the gate, where we

we found no other guard but a cobler, who was mending ſhoes. One of us ſounded his horn, as a notice for the ambuſcade to advance. The cobler, who had not paid any attention to us, on hearing the horn, cried out, 'Hola! who is it that has blown the horn?' We anſwered, 'It is a prieſt who is going into the country: I know not whether he be the curate or chaplain of the town.' 'That is true,' replied he: 'it is ſir Francis, our prieſt, who likes to go early to the fields in ſearch of hares.' Our companions ſoon joined us, when we entered the town and found no one prepared to defend it. Thus did I gain the town and caſtle of Thurie, which has been to me of greater profit and more annual revenue than this caſtle and all its dependancies are worth. At this moment, I know not how to act: for I am in treaty with the count d'Armagnac and the dauphin d'Auvergne, who have been expreſsly commiſſioned by the king of France to buy all towns and caſtles from the captains of the free companies, wherever they may be, in Auvergne, Rouergue, Limouſin, Agen, Quercy, Perigord, Albigeois, and from all thoſe who have made war under the name of the king of England. Several have ſold their forts, and gone away; and I am doubtful whether or not to ſell mine,'—Upon this, the bourg de Copaire ſaid,—'Couſin, what you ſay is true; for I alſo have had intelligence ſince my arrival at Orthès, from Carlat, which I hold in Auvergne, that the lord Louis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, will ſoon be here: he is now incognito at Tarbes, as I have heard

from thoſe who have ſeen him.' They now called for wine, of which when brought we all drank, and Baſtot de Mauléon ſaid to me, 'Well, ſir John, what do you ſay? Have I well told you my life? I have had many more adventures, but of which I neither can nor will ſpeak.' 'Yes, that you have, by my faith,' added I: and, wiſhing him to continue his converſation, I aſked what was become of a gallant ſquire, called Louis Raimbaut, whom I had met once at Avignon. 'I will tell you,' replied he. 'At the time when ſir Sequin de Bateſol, who had poſſeſſion of Brioude in Vèlay, ten leagues from Puy in Auvergne, after having carried on the war in that country with much ſucceſs, was returning to Gaſcony, he gave to Louis Raimbaut and to a companion of his, called Limouſin, Brioude and Ance on the Saone. The country at that time was ſo deſolated and haraſſed, and ſo full of free companies in every part, that none dared to venture out of their houſes. I muſt inform you, that between Brioude and Ance, the country is mountainous, and the diſtance from one of thoſe towns to the other twenty-ſix leagues. However, when Louis Raimbaut was pleaſed to ride from one of theſe places to the other, he made nothing of it; for he had ſeveral forts in Forêts and elſewhere, to halt and refreſh himſelf. The gentlemen of Auvergne, Forêts, and Vèlay, had been ſo oppreſſed by ranſoms to regain their liberty, they dreaded to take up arms again; and there were no great lords in France who raiſed any men. The king of France was young, and had

too

too much to do in various parts of his kingdom; for the free companies had quartered themſelves every where, and he could not get rid of them. Many of the great lords of France were hoſtages in England; during which time their property and vaſſals were pillaged, and there was not any remedy for this miſchief, as their men were too diſpirited even to defend themſelves. Louis Raimbaut and Limouſin, who had been brothers in arms, at length quarrelled, and I will tell you why. Louis Raimbaut had at Brioude a very handſome woman for his miſtreſs, of whom he was paſſionately fond; and, when he made any excurſions from Brioude to Ance, he entruſted her to the care of Limouſin. Limouſin was his brother in arms, and in him did he put his whole confidence; but he took ſuch good care of the fair lady that he obtained every favour from her, and Louis Raimbaut had information of it. This enraged Louis Raimbaut againſt his companion; and, in order to inſult him as much as poſſible, he ordered him to be ſeized by his ſervants and marched naked, all but his drawers, through the town, and then flogged with rods: at every corner of a ſtreet, trumpets ſounded before him, and his action was proclaimed: he was then, in this ſtate, and with only a plain coat on, thruſt out of the town, and baniſhed as a traitor. Louis Raimbaut thus inſulted Limouſin; but, he was ſo much hurt at it, he vowed revenge whenever he ſhould have an opportunity, which he afterwards found.

'Limouſin, during the time he was in command at Brioude, had always ſpared the lands of the lord de la Voulte, ſituated on the Rhône, in his different excurſions to Ance, and in the country of Vèlay, for he had been kind to him in his youth. He therefore reſolved to go to him, entreat his mercy, and beg he would make his peace with France, for that he would henceforward be a loyal Frenchman. He went therefore to Voulte, being well acquainted with the roads, and entered a houſe, for he was on foot: after he had inquired what hour it was, he went to the caſtle to wait on its lord. The porter would not at firſt allow him to enter the gate; but, after many fair words, he was permitted to come into the gateway, and ordered not to ſtir further without permiſſion, which he cheerfully promiſed. The lord de la Voulte, in the afternoon, came into the court to amuſe himſelf, and advanced to the gate: Limouſin inſtantly caſt himſelf on his knees, and ſaid, 'My lord, do you not know me?' 'Not I, by my faith,' replied the lord, who never imagined it was Limouſin; but, having looked at him ſome time, added; 'Thou reſembleſt very much Limouſin, who was formerly my page.' 'On my troth, my lord, Limouſin I am, and your ſervant alſo.' He then begged his pardon for what had paſſed, and told him exactly every thing that had happened to him, and how Louis Raimbaut had treated him. The lord de la Voulte ſaid, 'Limouſin, if what thou haſt told me be true, and

if

if I may rely on thy aſſurance that thou wilt become a good Frenchman, I will make thy peace.' 'By my faith, my lord, I have never done ſo much harm to France as I will from henceforward do it ſervice.' 'I ſhall ſee,' replied the lord de la Voulte. From that time he retained him in his caſtle, and did not allow him to depart until he had made his peace every where. When Limouſin could with honour bear arms, the lord de la Voulte mounted and armed him, and conducted him to the ſénéſchal de Vèlay, at Puy, to make them acquainted with each other. He was there examined as to the ſtrength and ſituation of Brioude, and alſo reſpecting Louis Raimbaut; at what times he made excurſions, and whither he generally directed them. 'I know by heart the roads he takes, for with him and without him I have too often traverſed them; and, if you will collect a body of men at arms for an expedition, I will forfeit my head if you do not take him within a fortnight.' The lords agreed to his propoſal, and ſpies were ſent abroad to obſerve when Louis Raimbaut ſhould leave Brioude for Ance in the Lyonois. When Limouſin was certain he had left Brioude, he told the lord de la Voulte to aſſemble his men, for that Raimbaut was at Ance and would ſoon return, and that he would conduct them to a defile through which he muſt paſs. The lord de la Voulte collected his men, and made him the leader of the expedition, having ſent off to the bailiff of Vèlay, the lord de Montclare, ſir Guerrot de Salieres, and his ſon, ſir Plouſerat de Ver-

net, the lord de Villeneuve, and to all the men at-arms thereabout: they were in the whole full three hundred ſpears; and when aſſembled at Nonnay, by the advice of Limouſin, they formed two ambuſcades. The viſcount de Polignac and the lord de Chalençon commanded one, and the lords de la Voulte, de Montclare, de Salieres, and ſir Louis de Tournon the other. They had equally divided their men; and the viſcount de Polignac and his party were poſted near St. Rambut in Forêts, at a paſs where Louis Raimbaut would be forced to croſs the river Loire at the bridge, or higher up at a ford above Puy.

'When Louis Raimbaut had finiſhed his buſineſs at Ance, he ſet out with forty lances, not expecting to meet with any one, nor ſuſpecting any thing from Limouſin, as he was the fartheſt from his thoughts. I muſt tell you, that he was accuſtomed never to go and return by the ſame road: he had come by St. Rambut. On his return, he went over the hills above Lyons and Vienne, and below the village of Argental*, and then ſtraight towards le Monaſtier, three ſhort leagues from Puy; and, after paſſing between the caſtles of Meneſtrol and Montfaucon, he made a circuit towards a village called le Batterie, between Nonnay and St. Julien. There is a paſs in the wood there that cannot be avoided by any of thoſe who take this road, unleſs they go through Nonnay; and there was poſted the ambuſcade of

* Argental,—a village of Forêts, dioceſe of Vienne.

the

the lord de la Voulte, with about two hundred ſpears. Louis Raimbaut, ſuſpecting nothing, was ſurpriſed; and the lord de la Voulte and his men, knowing what they were to do, lowered their lances, and, ſhouting their cry of 'La Voulte!' inſtantly charged him and his companions, who were riding much at their eaſe. On the firſt ſhock, the greater part were unhorſed; and Louis Raimbaut was ſtruck to the ground by a ſquire of Auvergne, called Amblardon, who, advancing on him, made him his priſoner: the remainder were either killed or taken; not one eſcaped; and they found in a private trunk the ſum of three thouſand francs, which he had received at Ance as the compoſition of the villagers near, which gave much pleaſure to the captors, for each had a ſhare.

'When Limouſin ſaw Louis Raimbaut thus caught, he ſhewed himſelf, and ſaid reproachfully,—'Louis, Louis! you ſhould have been better accompanied. Do you remember the inſult and ſhame you made me undergo at Brioude, on account of your miſtreſs? I did not think that for a woman you would have made me ſuffer what you did; for, if it had happened to me, I ſhould not have been ſo angry. To two brothers in arms, ſuch as we were then, one woman might have occaſionally ſerved.' The lords laughed at this ſpeech, but Louis had no ſuch inclination. By the capture of Louis Raimbaut, thoſe of Brioude ſurrendered to the ſénéſchal of Auvergne; for, after the loſs of their leader and the flower of their men, they could not keep it. The garriſons

at

at Ance and in the other forts in Vèlay and Fôrets did the ſame, and were glad to eſcape with their lives.

'Louis Raimbaut was carried to Nonnay and impriſoned: information was ſent the king of France of the event, who was much rejoiced thereat; and ſoon after, as I have heard, orders came for him to be beheaded at Villeneuve, near Avignon. Thus died Louis Raimbaut: may God receive his ſoul! Now, my fair ſir,' ſaid Baſtot de Mauléon, 'have not I well chatted away the night? and yet all I have ſaid is true.' 'Indeed you have,' anſwered I, 'and many thanks for it: I have had great pleaſure in liſtening to you, and it ſhall not be loſt; for, if God permit me to return to my own country, all I have heard you ſay, and all I ſhall have ſeen worthy to be mentioned, in the noble and grand hiſtory which the gallant count de Blois has employed me on, ſhall be chronicled, through God's grace, that the memory of ſuch events may be perpetuated.'

On ſaying this, the bourg de Copaire, whoſe name was Ernauton, began to ſpeak, and, I could perceive, would willingly have related the life and adventures of himſelf and his brother, the bourg Anglois; and how they had borne arms in Auvergne and elſewhere, but there was not time; for the watch of the caſtle had ſounded his horn, to aſſemble thoſe in the town of Orthès, who were engaged to ſup with the count de Foix. The two ſquires then made themſelves ready, and, having lighted torches, we left the inn together, taking

the

the road to the caſtle, as did all the knights and ſquires who lodged in the town.

Too much praiſe cannot be given to the ſtate and magnificence of the count de Foix, nor can it be too much recommended; for, during my ſtay there, I found him ſuch, as far to exceed all that I can ſay of him, and I ſaw many things which gave me great pleaſure.

On Chriſtmas day were ſeated at his table four biſhops of his own country, two Clementiſts and two Urbaniſts. The biſhops of Pamiers and Leſcar, Clementiſts, were ſeated at top, and next to them the biſhops of Aire and of Rou, on the borders of the Bordelois and Bayonne, Urbaniſts: the count de Foix ſat next, then the viſcount de Roquebertin, a Gaſcon, the viſcount de Bruniquel, the viſcount de Gouſſerant; then an Engliſh knight, called ſir William Willoughby, whom the duke of Lancaſter, at that time reſiding at Bourdeaux, had ſent thither. At another table were five abbots and two Arragonian knights, called ſir Raymond de Montflorentin and ſir Martin de Ruane. At another table were ſeated knights and ſquires from Gaſcony and Bigorre: firſt, the lord d'Anchin, then ſir Gaillard de la Motte, ſir Raymond de Châteauneuf, the lord de Chaumont, Gaſcons, the lords de Copaire, de la Lanne, de Montferrant, ſir William Bernard, ſir Peter Courton, the lord de Valenchin, and ſir Aingale, ſurnamed le Baſele. At other tables were many knights from Béarn. Sir Eſpaign du

Lyon,

Lyon, ſir Siquart du Bois Verdun, ſir Nouvans de Nouvailles, and ſir Peter de Vaux, in Béarn, were chief ſtewards of the hall. The count's baſtard-brothers, ſir Ernaut Guillaume and ſir Peter de Béarne, waited, and his two baſtard-ſons; ſir Evan de l'Eſchelle placed the diſhes, and ſir Gracien ſerved him with wine. There were very many minſtrels in the hall, as well thoſe belonging to the count, as to the ſtrangers, who, at their leiſure, played away their minſtrelſy. This day the count gave to the minſtrels and heralds five hundred francs among them; and he clothed the minſtrels of the duke de Touraine, who were there, with cloth of gold, trimmed with ermine, which dreſſes were valued at two hundred francs. The dinner laſted until four o'clock in the afternoon. I willingly like to talk of the handſome eſtabliſhment of the gallant count de Foix, for I was twelve weeks of his houſehold, and generouſly treated, in all reſpects. During my reſidence at Orthès, it was my own fault if I did not collect information from every country, for the gentle knight, ſir Eſpaing du Lyon, with whom I had entered the country, and to whom I told all my wants, made me acquainted with ſuch knights and ſquires as were well able to inform me juſtly of all the things I was deſirous of knowing. I there learnt much concerning Portugal and Caſtile: how their affairs were going on, and the battles which theſe two kings and their allies had fought, of which I will give a true account.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

A SHORT RECAPITULATION OF WHAT HAS BEEN BEFORE SAID, OF THE WAR BETWEEN KING JOHN OF CASTILLE AND JOHN OF PORTUGAL.—THIS SUBJECT CONTINUED.

YOU may remember, that I have before related, how don John of Caſtille had beſieged the maſter of Avis, whom the principal towns had crowned king for his valour, though in truth he was a baſtard, in the city of Liſbon. You have alſo heard how this king had ſent ſpecial ambaſſadors to the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge for ſuccour, as they had married his couſins. Theſe ambaſſadors were two knights, ſir John Radinghos and ſir John Teſta-d'oro, with a profeſſor of law, who was alſo archdeacon of Liſbon: they continued their voyage, with a favourable wind, and arrived at Southampton, where they diſembarked, and ſtaid a day to recover themſelves: they then hired horſes, for they had not brought any with them, and took the great road to London. It was in the month of Auguſt, when the king was in Wales hunting and taking his pleaſure. The duke of Lancaſter and the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham were alſo at their ſeats in the country. This gave the ambaſſadors the more pain; but they went firſt to the duke of Lancaſter, who reſided at Hertford, twenty miles from London. The duke graciouſly

graciouſly received them: he opened their credential letters, and read them over three times, the better to comprehend them, and then ſaid,—'You are welcome to this country; but you could not have come at a more unfortunate ſeaſon in the whole year to obtain ſpeedy aſſiſtance, for the king and my brothers are all ſcattered abroad in different parts, ſo that you cannot have any anſwer before Michaelmas, when the parliament will aſſemble at London, and the king return to Weſtminſter. But, as this buſineſs more particularly affects my brother and myſelf, I will write to him; and we will ſhortly be in London, and then conſider with you how it will be beſt for us to act in this affair. You will return to London, and I will let you know when my brother and myſelf are there. The ambaſſadors from Portugal were well ſatisfied with this anſwer, and, leaving the duke of Lancaſter, returned to London, where they lodged themſelves and remained at their eaſe.

The duke of Lancaſter was not forgetful of his promiſe, and inſtantly wrote private letters to the earl of Cambridge, containing an account of what you have heard. When the earl had peruſed them attentively, it was not long before he ſet off for Hertford, near Ware, where the duke of Lancaſter reſided. After conſulting on this buſineſs three days together, they came to London, according to the duke's promiſe to the Portugueſe, where on their arrival they diſmounted at their houſes.

Theſe two lords had many and long conſultations with the Portugueſe ambaſſadors; for the earl of Cambridge

Cambridge was very ill pleaſed with the conduct of don Ferdinand, the late king of Portugal, ſaying he had carried on the war in too cowardly a manner, and had made peace with the Spaniards contrary to the will of the Engliſh. The earl, therefore, very much doubted if, in the enſuing parliament, the king's council would aſſent to an expedition to Portugal; for the one that had been ſent thither, had coſt the nation a large ſum, not leſs than one hundred thouſand francs, and had nothing done.

The Portugueſe ambaſſadors readily comprehended what the earl ſaid, and replied; 'My lord, thoſe times are paſſed, and it is now otherwiſe. Our late king, God pardon his ſoul! was marvellouſly afraid of the chances of war; but the preſent king is full of enterpriſe and valour, for, were he to meet his enemies in the field three times more in number than himſelf, he would combat them, whatever might be the conſequences; and we can moſt loyally aſſure you, that this is fact. My lords, it is very clear that you are intereſted in this quarrel; for it is your buſineſs to make war on Caſtille, and conquer it, as by right it belongs to you as the heritage of your wives. Now, to obtain this conqueſt, you cannot have any entrance into Caſtille like that through Portugal; for you will have all that country for your friends. Therefore, exert your influence that one of you may go thither with ſuch a powerful force, that joined to thoſe you will find there, you will be enabled to keep the field.'

The duke of Lancaſter replied; 'It does not

depend

depend on us, but on the king and the nation, and you may be aſſured we will do every thing we poſſibly can.' Thus ended theſe conferences. The Portugueſe remained in London waiting for the meeting of parliament, and the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge went to their eſtates in the north of England.

About Michaelmas, when the parliament was to meet at Weſtminſter, the king was on his return towards London, and had arrived at Windſor; from thence he came to Staines * and to Chertſey. He was accompanied wherever he went by the queen, his whole court, and the earl of Suffolk, for his favour was ſuch, nothing was done without his approbation.

At the period I am now ſpeaking of, the wars in Flanders were going on between the duke of Burgundy and the Ghentmen. The biſhop of Norwich, ſir Hugh Calverley, ſir William Elmham, ſir Thomas Trivet and the others were juſt come back to England, whom the king of France had ſurrounded at Bourbourg, as has been already related in this hiſtory.

Truces had been concluded between the Flemings, French, Engliſh, and Scots, to laſt until Michaelmas 1384: notwithſtanding which, the Engliſh had ſo much on their hands that they knew

* Staines. It is Tones in the original; but lord Berners calls it Staines. I ſuſpect it is wrong, as Chertſey is lower down the river than Staines, and conſequently ſhould have been the laſt place the king viſited.

not

not which way to turn; for, beſides the buſineſs of Portugal, the council of Ghent was in London to requeſt as governor, to aſſiſt and direct them, one of the king's brothers, or the earl of Saliſbury. There were in this parliament many debates, as well reſpecting the Flemings as the Portugueſe and the Scots; for the war ſtill continued in thoſe parts by the truce not having been proclaimed. The duke of Lancaſter, in particular, laboured hard to obtain the command of a large body of men at arms and archers to carry to Portugal, and explained to the prelates, barons and commoners of the realm, how they were bound to aſſiſt him and his brother in the recovery of their inheritance, which they had ſworn and engaged to do when their nephew the king was crowned, as was apparent by deeds then ſealed. The duke complained bitterly of the wrongs that had been done him and his brother by delaying the matter; and that in truth, when the earl of Cambridge had gone thither on the faith of their promiſing him every thing neceſſary for ſuch an expedition, they had meanly fulfilled their engagements: he was to have had two thouſand lances and as many archers ſent to him, but they never were ordered, which had cauſed the ſettlement of the diſpute for their juſt rights and inheritances to be ſo much the longer delayed.

This ſpeech of the duke of Lancaſter was attentively heard, and ſome of the moſt able in the council declared he was in the right; but, the neceſſities of the kingdom being more preſſing, they muſt be firſt attended to. Some were for inſtantly

agreeing to his requeſt: others remonſtrated by ſaying, it would be wrong to weaken the kingdom by ſending two thouſand men at arms and four thouſand archers to ſuch a diſtance as Portugal. Beſides, ſo long a voyage was dangerous, and the climate of Portugal hot and unhealthy; and, if ſuch a conſiderable force were ſent, the kingdom might ſuffer an irrecoverable loſs. Notwithſtanding theſe arguments and doubts of what might be the conſequences, it was ſettled that the duke of Lancaſter ſhould croſs the ſea in the ſummer with ſeven hundred men at arms and four thouſand archers, and that they ſhould all receive pay for one quarter of a year in advance: it was, however, reſerved, that ſhould any thing in the mean time fall out inimical from France or Scotland, the expedition to Portugal was to be deferred. The duke of Lancaſter aſſented to this, for he could not gain more.

You have before ſeen in this hiſtory, that after the duke of Lancaſter had collected his men and ſtores at Southampton, ready to embark for Portugal, and though the ambaſſadors had returned thither with information of the ſpeedy arrival of the duke and the number of his forces, which gave the Portugueſe much pleaſure, an event was found to have happened in England that forced him to retard it for ſome time. The admiral of France, ſir John de Vienne, with a thouſand good men at arms, had embarked at Sluys, and landed in Scotland; from whence he had made war on England, which obliged the whole force of that kingdom to

march

march againſt him, as has been before related. I do not wiſh, therefore, to mention it twice, but return to the ſiege of Liſbon and the king of Spain, that I may narrate all I have heard. While the king of Spain was before Liſbon, news was brought him, by ſome Spaniſh merchants returned from Flanders and Bruges, of the large armament the duke of Lancaſter was collecting to raiſe the ſiege of Liſbon. This intelligence was believed; for the Spaniards well knew how anxious the duke was to renew the war with Caſtille, as he claimed a ſhare of it.

Notwithſtanding this information, the king continued the ſiege, and ſent letters and meſſengers to France for aſſiſtance: he had, in particular, written to Béarn; ſo that from the territories of Foix and Béarn, there came to him, in leſs than four days, upwards of three hundred lances, the flower of the chivalry of that country. Sir John du Ru, a Burgundian, and ſir Geoffry Ricon, a Breton, with ſir Geoffry de Partenay, had already paſſed through Orthès from France, in their way to Caſtille, to ſerve the king; each of whom had his own company.

I will name the principal knights of Béarn who prepared for this expedition: firſt, a great baron, companion to the count de Foix, the lord de Lingnach, ſir Peter Lier, ſir John de Lepres, the lord des Bordes, ſir Bertrand de Barege, the lord de Marciage, ſir Raymond d'Auſſac, ſir John de Sallegre, ſir Mouvant de Sarmen, ſir Peter de la Robiere, ſir Stephen de Valentin, ſir Raymond de

Raraſſe, ſir Peter de Haneſane, ſir Ogerot de Domeſſon, and many others. Sir Eſpaignolet d'Eſpaign, eldeſt ſon of ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, couſin to the count de Foix, joined this company of Béarn men.

Theſe barons and knights fixed their rendezvous at Orthès and in that neighbourhood; and I heard, from thoſe who ſaw them march away, they were the handſomeſt and beſt equipped knights who had for a long time left Béarn.

When the count de Foix found that they really intended to go to Caſtille, he was greatly vexed and penſive, though at the firſt he had conſented they ſhould receive pay from the king of Caſtille, for he was afraid his country would be too much weakened by their departure. He ſent therefore, to the barons and knights above-mentioned, two knights of his houſehold, ſir Eſpaign du Lyon and the lord de Cabeſtan, to requeſt they would come to the caſtle, for he was deſirous to give them a dinner, by way of wiſhing them a good journey. The knights, as was natural, accepted the invitation, and the count de Foix received them moſt graciouſly. After maſs, he led them into his cabinet, and thus addreſſed them,—'My fair ſirs, are you indeed reſolved to leave my country and aſſiſt the king of Caſtille in his wars, whilſt I have on hand my diſpute with the count d'Armagnac? Your departure makes me very uneaſy.'

'My lord,' replied they, 'it is really ſo; for we are obliged to it, as we have received pay from

from the king of Caſtille; but this war between Spain and Portugal will be ſoon ended, when we hope, if it pleaſe God, to return in good health to you.'

'Soon ended!' exclaimed the count: 'not ſo ſoon, for it is now but beginning. There is a new king in Portugal, and they have ſent to England for ſupport. This diſpute in which you are about to engage is of a nature to laſt a long time, and keep you in the field; for you will not be fought withal until the arrival of the duke of Lancaſter and his reinforcements, ſo that your pay will coſt you dear enough.' 'My lord,' they anſwered, 'ſince we have gone ſo far, we muſt conclude the buſineſs.' 'God help you!' ſaid the count; 'but come, let us go now to dinner, for it is time.'

The count, with his barons and knights, entered the hall where the tables were laid, and dined magnificently and at their leiſure, for they were ſerved with all things becoming ſuch a day. The count, after dinner, conducted his knights into his galleries, where he was uſed to ſolace himſelf in the afternoons, and, again addreſſing them, ſaid,— 'Indeed, my good gentlemen, I am much vexed that you leave my country; not that I am ſorry for your advancement and honour, for on every occaſion I would attend to it and exalt it; but I am ſorry on your own account, for you are the flower of chivalry of Béarn, and are going into a foreign land. I would adviſe you, and have before ſaid ſo, to give up this expedition and leave

the kings of Spain and Portugal to fight their own battles, for you are by no means intereſted about them.'

'My lord,' replied they, 'under favour of your grace, we cannot thus act, and you know it better than you ſay: if you would be pleaſed to conſider, that as we have received pay from the king of Caſtille, we muſt in conſequence do ſomething for it.'

'Well,' anſwered the count, 'that is true enough, but I will tell you what will happen to you in this expedition: you will either return ſo very poor and naked the lice will eat you up and grow between your nails (ſhewing them by his geſtures of rubbing the two palms of his hands together what he meant), or you will be ſlain or made priſoners.'

The knights burſt out into laughter, and ſaid, 'My lord, we muſt indeed try our fortunes.' The count then quitted this ſubject, and, converſing with them on the manners of the Spaniards, ſaid they were naſty and louſy, and envious of the good fortune of others, adviſing them to be on their guard. After ſome other converſation, he called for ſpices and wine, of which all drank who were preſent. He then took his leave of them ſhaking each by the hand, recommended them to the care of God, and entered his cloſet. The knights mounted their horſes at the gate of the caſtle, as their men and equipages had already ſet out for Sauvetere *, where they lodged that night. On

* Sauvetere,—ſeven leagues from Pau.

the

the morrow, they departed, entering Biſcay; and, following the road to Pampeluna, they paſſed every where in ſafety, for they regularly paid for whatever they had occaſion for.

CHAP. XXXIV.

THE INHABITANTS OF SANTAREN* REBEL AGAINST SOME OF THE MEN AT ARMS OF CASTILLE.—THE KING OF CASTILLE, HAVING RAISED THE SIEGE OF LISBON, MARCHES TOWARDS THAT TOWN, WHEN IT MAKES ITS PEACE.

DURING the time the king of Caſtille lay before Liſbon, (and he had been there about a year) the town of Santaren rebelled againſt him, and cloſed its gates, declaring, that neither Frenchmen nor Spaniards ſhould enter it, for the great oppreſſions it had ſuffered. Some ſay it was the fault of the party under the command of ſir Geoffry Ricon and ſir Geoffry de Partenay, compoſed of Bretons, who took or deſtroyed every thing they could lay hands on, paying no attention to friends or foes. The citizens, therefore, poſſeſſed themſelves of the town and the two caſtles, declaring they would defend them againſt all

* Santaren, a handſome town on the Targus, thirty-five leagues from Liſbon.

who wiſhed to haraſs them. On the day they rebelled, they killed upwards of ſixty Bretons, who were pillaging; and would have ſlain ſir Geoffry de Partenay, but he eſcaped over the wall which joined his houſe. Upon this the French and Bretons there quartered fought one whole day with thoſe of Santaren, and made a grand attack on the place, but they loſt more than they gained, without damaging the town.

Intelligence was brought to the king of Caſtille that Santaren had turned to the Portugueſe, and was ready to ſurrender its town and caſtles, which the citizens had gotten poſſeſſion of, to the king of Portugal. The king, on hearing this, was very melancholy, and, calling his marſhal, ſir Reginald de Limouſin, ſaid,—'Take one or two hundred ſpears, and ſee what they are doing at Santaren: why the inhabitants of that town have rebelled; and what could have cauſed them to act as they have done.' Sir Reginald replied, 'he would punctually obey.' He took under his command two hundred lances, and, following the road to Santaren, arrived there, but ſent before him a herald, to announce his coming, who parleyed with the inhabitants at the barriers, and delivered his meſſage. They anſwered,—'We know well ſir Reginald de Limouſin for a gentleman and a valiant knight, and that he is marſhal to the king: he is perfectly welcome hither, and may enter the town, but unarmed.' This was the anſwer the herald brought back to ſir Reginald, who ſaid, he was not come thither to do them any harm

harm, but ſolely to know what their intentions were. It is indifferent to me whether I enter armed or diſarmed, provided I ſpeak with them and learn their will. He quitted the place where he then was, and rode on unarmed, with five others only, and diſmounted at the barriers, leaving his men behind. When thoſe on guard ſaw the manner in which he had arrived, they opened the barriers, and received him handſomely. The inhabitants were aſſembled in a ſquare of the town, when he thus addreſſed them,—'Ye men of Santaren, liſten to what I am about to ſay: I am ſent hither with orders to demand from you the reaſons why you have rebelled, have ſhut your gates, and ſlain the king's allies who were coming to aſſiſt him. Know that the king is violently enraged againſt you; for he has been informed you have taken poſſeſſion of the two caſtles of the town, which are his inheritance, and are willing to ſurrender them to his enemies of Portugal.' 'May it pleaſe your grace, ſir Reginald, we wiſh not to ſurrender them, nor deliver them up into any other hands than thoſe of the king of Caſtille, from whom we hold them, but let him govern us in peace and with juſtice. What we have done has been cauſed by theſe pillaging Bretons who were quartered in the town, and from their outrages; for, had we been Saracens, or worſe people, they could not have more wickedly behaved, in forcing our wives and daughters, breaking open our coffers, deſtroying our caſks of wine, and ill-treating and wounding us whenever we complained of their conduct.

You

You ought not, therefore, to be ſurpriſed, when we ſuffered ſuch outrages ourſelves, and witneſſed the ſame on thoſe whom we were bound to defend, that we were much enraged, for ſmaller things will cauſe that. You may, therefore, if you pleaſe, tell the king this, and that we have unanimouſly reſolved, whatever may be the event, never to acknowledge nor receive any Frenchman nor Breton, nor any other than the king's perſon himſelf, or ſuch as he may depute hither to treat us kindly.'

When ſir Reginald heard theſe words, he was well ſatisfied, and did not think they had been ſo much to blame in driving their enemies out of the town. He thus replied; 'My good people, I have now heard what you had to ſay; and you ſhall remain quiet, for I will return to the king and tell it to him, and in good truth I will do every thing I can to ſerve you.' 'We thank you, my lord, moſt heartily; and we truſt, that whatever wrong information concerning us may have been given the king, you will rectify it.' On this, ſir Reginald mounted his horſe and departed to his men, who were waiting for him in the plain, and then rode for Liſbon. After diſmounting at his quarters, he waited on the king, and told him all he had ſeen and heard at Santaren.

The king, on learning the truth of what had paſſed, ſaid,—'By my faith, they have acted like wiſe men, ſince they could not truſt theſe pillagers.' Sir Geoffry Ricon, ſir Geoffry de Partenay, and their companions, finding they could have no

no redreſs from Santaren, and that the king was diſſembling with them, were much angered, and ſaid among themſelves.—'We are well uſed for having left France to come to this country, to ſerve the king of Spain, when we are thus debaſed before a ſet of low fellows, againſt whom we cannot obtain juſtice. There will come ſhortly a large body of knights from Gaſcony: we will not notice this until their arrival, when we will inform them of what has paſſed, and they will help us to revenge ourſelves for thoſe companions who have been killed.' Information was carried to the king and his council, that the Bretons threatened much thoſe of Santaren, boaſting that, when the Gaſcons ſhould arrive, they would make them pay dearly for what they had done. The king was adviſed to break up the ſiege of Liſbon, and march to Santaren, to recruit himſelf and put every thing on a proper footing, and wait there for the Gaſcons, who were on their march, to the amount of about four hundred ſpears, good men at arms. He did not wiſh they ſhould find the kingdom in confuſion, when ſuch numbers were to be provided for.

Orders were given by the king to break up the ſiege and march to Santaren, which were inſtantly obeyed. When the town of Santaren learnt the king was coming thither, they deputed twelve of the principal inhabitants on horſeback, to meet the king and to know his pleaſure. They rode on until they met the army, about two leagues from Santaren, and learnt that the king

king was diſmounted and had retired from the great heat under the ſhade of ſome olive trees.

Sir Reginald de Limouſin, marſhal of the army, was with the king and had had information of their arrival, who, when they were come near, caſt themſelves on their knees and ſaid,—' Moſt renowned lord and noble king of Caſtille, we are deputed hither by the poor commonalty of your unhappy town and caſtlewicks of Santaren, who have been given to underſtand that you are much angered with them; and ſhould this be true, moſt renowned lord, the fault has not been in them, but in the injuries and oppreſſions they have ſuffered from the Bretons when they were in your and our town. Now, as all their evil deeds could not be known, we do not blame their knights, ſquires and captains, but only ſuch as have committed them; and it would be incredible, were all the infamous acts of theſe Breton pillagers told. They kept for a long time the town and caſtlewicks of Santaren under their ſubjection, of which many complaints were made to us; but, in ſpite of this, they broke open our coffers with hatchets, took our money, and violated our wives and daughters before our eyes; which when we complained of, we were beaten, wounded, and ſome murdered. In this miſerable condition were we for upwards of two months; for which reaſon, moſt redoubted lord and noble king, we ſupplicate, that if we have angered you for this or any other cauſe, you would be pleaſed to do us juſtice, and take ſuch loyal information concerning us, that we may

may be judged legally, as you promiſed and ſwore to us when you firſt entered Santaren as king, and the poſſeſſion of it and its dependancies devolved and reſted on you. You will do an act of charity; and, ſince you are coming thither, we have that confidence in you and in your council, that you will find the gates open. Your poor people, who are crying for redreſs for the injuries they have ſuſtained, beg your royal majeſty will grant them mercy and remiſſion of all offences.'

The king remained for a while ſilent, when ſir Reginald de Limouſin, kneeling before the king, ſaid,—'Moſt dear lord, you have heard the complaints of your ſubjects of Santaren, who have laid before you all they have ſuffered: condeſcend to give them an anſwer.' 'Reginald,' ſaid the king, 'we ſee they have had juſt cauſe for what they did: go, and tell them to riſe, and return to Santaren to make ready every thing proper for us, as we ſhall ſleep there this night, and let them know they ſhall be carefully defended in their rights.'

Sir Reginald de Limouſin aroſe and went to the deputies from Santaren, bidding them riſe: 'The king, our lord, has favourably heard all you have ſaid; and, underſtanding you only deſire juſtice, he will ſee that it be done to you. Now go, and make ready the town for his reception; and let it be ſo well done that he may be pleaſed, for every thing will turn out as you wiſh, by the good aſſiſtance of the friends you have.' 'My lord,' replied they, 'we give you our beſt thanks.'

They

They then took leave, returned to Santaren, and related all that had paſſed with the king, and the anſwer ſir Reginald had made them from their ſovereign. They were exceedingly rejoiced at this intelligence, and richly decorated their town againſt the king's arrival, ſtrewing the ſtreets with freſh herbs. The king made his entry at Veſpers: he was lodged in the caſtle called the Lion, and his men in the town; that is to ſay, as many as could, but the greater part were quartered in the fields and in the adjacent villages.

The king remained there a month; and things were in that ſtate that thoſe who expected to gain by confuſion, were greatly diſappointed.

CHAP. XXXV.

THE SPANIARDS ARE JEALOUS OF THE FRENCH AND BEARNOIS.—FIVE HUNDRED ENGLISH ARRIVE TO SERVE THE KING OF PORTUGAL.

DURING the reſidence of the king of Spain at Santaren, there arrived a handſome company of men at arms from Béarn. Sir Reginald de Limouſin rode out to meet them, and received them very politely, as he knew well how to do, and conducted them to the king, who was much pleaſed at their coming, and commanded ſir Reginald to ſee that they were well lodged, and at their

their eaſe, for ſuch were his wiſhes. Sir Reginald acted in a manner to ſatisfy them. The ſtate of the king's affairs continued the ſame during the time he remained at Santaren, and while his army was in and near to that town, which conſiſted of four thouſand men at arms and thirty thouſand others. He called the barons of France to his council, to conſider of the beſt means to carry on the war; for he had lain a long time, and with great expenſes, before Liſbon, and had done nothing. It was imagined, if the Gaſcons had not by their arrival encouraged the king to proceed, he would have retreated from Santaren to Burgos, or into Galicia, for his men were weary with being ſo long in the field.

When the knights of France and Béarn were admitted to the council, the king thus addreſſed them: 'My fair ſirs, you are intelligent and active in war: I therefore wiſh to have your advice how I may moſt advantageouſly continue my war againſt the Portugueſe and Liſboners: they have maintained their ground againſt me upwards of a year, and I have done nothing. I was in hopes to have drawn them out of Liſbon, and have fought them, but they would not accept my challenge. My friends have adviſed me to diſmiſs my army, and permit every man to return to his home. I therefore wiſh to know what your opinions may be on this ſubject.'

The knights from France and Béarn, being juſt arrived at the army, were eager for battle; for, though they had as yet been idle, they were deſirous

deſirous of deſerving the pay they had received; and replied; 'Sir, you are a great and powerful prince, and it little matters to you to pay the expenſes of your army, eſpecially when it is in its own country. We will not ſay, but that, if it had been in a foreign land and deprived of proviſion, the advice which has been given you would have been good: we ſee, however, that it is as comfortably ſituated here as if every man were at his own home. We therefore ſay (not indeed as a reſolution of council, for your wiſdom and prudence will enable you to chooſe the beſt opinion), you ought to keep the field, which may eaſily be done until Michaelmas, when perhaps your enemies will march out to meet you when you the leaſt expect them, and thus they may be combated. We are very anxious for conqueſt, for our equipment has coſt us very conſiderably, and we have had many difficulties before we could come hither: we therefore ſhall never be of the opinion of your counſellors, for we wiſh to ſee the enemy.'

'By my head,' ſaid the king, 'you ſpeak well and loyally, and in this and on other occaſions I will henceforward take your advice, for my late lord and father as well as myſelf have always found your opinions fair and honourable. May God have pity on the ſoul of ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin! he was a good and loyal knight, and through his means we gained many important victories.'

This converſation between the king of Caſtille and the foreign knights, as well as the advice they had

had given, was ſoon known to the Spaniſh barons: they were much vexed for two reaſons; one, becauſe they imagined the king had greater confidence in theſe ſtrangers than in his own liege ſubjects who had crowned him; and becauſe the French knights had adviſed the king to keep his ground, whilſt they were tired of the war. They therefore privately caballed together, and ſaid, 'The king knows not how to carry on a war but by the French, as his father did before him.'

They now conceived a hatred to the French, which their ſervants and foragers ſoon made manifeſt. They had quartered all the French together, but when they ſent out parties to forage, the Spaniards being more numerous, took their forage from them, and beat and wounded ſeveral, inſomuch that complaints were made to the king. The king much blamed ſir Reginald de Limouſin, his marſhal, for not having prevented this. The marſhal excuſed himſelf, by ſaying,—'As God might help him, he knew nothing about it; but that he would inſtantly provide a remedy, by ordering men at arms into the field, to attend carefully that the French collected their forage in ſecurity.' He alſo iſſued a proclamation for all who had proviſion, or other neceſſaries, to bring them to the army at Santaren, when a reaſonable price would be given for them. The foreigners were amply ſupplied, for, by the king's orders, they were to be ſerved before any others, which increaſed the hatred of the Spaniards.

It happened, that the ſame week the king of Caſtille broke up the ſiege of Liſbon, three large ſhips, having on board Engliſh men at arms and archers, entered the port: they might amount, in the whole, to about five hundred; but three parts of them were adventurers, under no command and without pay, from Calais, Cherbourg, Breſt, and Mortaigne in Poitou, who, hearing of the war between Caſtille and Portugal, had aſſembled at Bordeaux, and ſaid,—'Let us go ſeek adventures in Portugal: we ſhall find ſome one there to receive and employ us.' Sir John Harpedane, who at that time was ſénéſchal of Bordeaux, had ſtrongly adviſed them ſo to do; for he was not willing they ſhould remain in arms in the Bourdelois, as they might do more harm than good, being adventurers who had nothing to loſe.

Of all who thus arrived at Liſbon I heard of no knights, only three Engliſh ſquires who were their leaders: one was called Northberry, the other Morberry, and the third Huguelin de Hartſel; and not one of them was more than fifty years old, good men at arms, and well accuſtomed to war.

The Liſboners and the king of Portugal were much rejoiced at the arrival of the Engliſh. As he wiſhed to ſee them, they were conducted to the palace, and received handſomely by the king, who aſked if the duke of Lancaſter had ſent them. 'By my faith, ſir,' replied Northberry, 'it is a long time ſince he has known any thing of us, or we of him: we are people from different countries,

ties, who come to ſeek the chance of arms and adventures: there are ſome of us who have even come from the town of Calais to ſerve you.' 'On my troth,' ſaid the king, 'you and they are very welcome: your arrival gives us much joy; and know, that we ſhall very ſhortly employ you. We have been, for a time, ſhut up here, which has tired us much; but we will take the advantage of the field, as the Spaniards have done.' 'We deſire nothing better,' anſwered the captains; 'and entreat we may ſpeedily ſee our enemies.'

CHAP. XXXVI.

THE KING OF PORTUGAL ISSUES HIS ORDERS FOR HIS ARMY TO MARCH TOWARDS SANTAREN.—THE KING OF CASTILLE QUITS THAT PLACE TO MEET HIM.

THE king of Portugal had theſe new comers to dine in the palace of Liſbon, and ordered them to be well lodged in the city, and their pay to be advanced them for three months. The king made his ſecretaries draw up letters, which he ſent throughout the realm, commanding all perſons capable of bearing arms to come inſtantly to Liſbon, under pain of his diſpleaſure. Few paid any obedience to theſe letters, and too many remained at home; for three parts of the kingdom

were on bad terms with the Liſboners, becauſe they had crowned a baſtard for king, and abuſed them much behind their backs. The king of Caſtille and his council, knowing of this difference of opinion in Portugal, had thus advanced, with the intent of conquering it; for they ſaid it would be the affair of only one battle, when, if the Liſboners were conquered, the reſt of the country would be rejoiced, and the grand maſter of Avis would be overpowered and ſlain, ſo that the kingdom would fall to Spain, for the queen was the right heireſs to it.

King John of Caſtille, however, would willingly have avoided this war; but his ſubjects would not permit it, as they ſaid he had juſt cauſe for it, and thus emboldened him.

When the king of Portugal found his ſummons was ſo little attended to, and diſobeyed by thoſe on whoſe ſervices he had counted, he was very penſive. He aſſembled the principal perſons of Liſbon, and the knights of his houſehold who had been moſt active in crowning him, and who had ſerved under king Ferdinand; ſuch as ſir John Radighos, ſir John Teſta d'Oro, the lord de la Figuire, ſir Gomme de Tarbeſton, Ambroſe Condrich, Peter Condrich his brother, ſir Monges de Navaret, a knight of Caſtille whom, having been baniſhed from thence by the king, the king of Portugal had made captain of his knights. At this council, the king explained ſeveral things, and ſaid—'My fair ſirs who are here aſſembled, I know I may depend on your friendſhips, for you have

have made me king; but you muſt perceive that great numbers of my ſubjects refuſe me their aſſiſtance in this time of need, and will not take the field. I muſt own I ſhould have been truly happy to have ſeen them as well diſpoſed as myſelf to meet our enemies; but, alas! it is otherwiſe, for they draw back and diſſemble. I ſolicit your advice on this buſineſs, how I had beſt act, and beg of you to give me your opinions.'

Sir Gomme de Tarbeſton, a Portugueſe knight, then ſpoke: 'Sir, I adviſe, for your own honour, that you inſtantly take the field, with as many men as you can collect, and hazard the event: we will aſſiſt you until death, for we hold you king and lord of this town; and, if there be any rebels or diſcontented perſons in Portugal, it is, I ſay (and in this I am joined by many in the town), becauſe you have never yet attacked nor ſhewed yourſelf to your enemies. You have had hitherto the renown of being a valiant man at arms, but on this occaſion you have not acted like one. This has encouraged your enemies, and checked the ardour of your ſubjects; for, when once you ſhew courage and reſolution, they will fear you, as well as your enemies.'

'By my head,' ſaid the king, 'ſir Gomme, you ſpeak well: and now order our men to be made ready, and every other preparation to haſten our march, for we will meet our enemies, and gain all or loſe all.'

'My lord,' replied the knight, 'it ſhall be done: if God ſend you good ſucceſs, and the day

be ours, you will reign king of Portugal, and be prized and honoured in all countries wherever you ſhall be known. You can only have the complete government of this kingdom by a battle; and I give you as an example king don Henry, your couſin, the father of don John of Caſtille. He gained all his inheritances by the ſword, and would never otherwiſe have ſucceeded; for you know how the power of the prince of Wales replaced don Pedro on the throne, when afterwards, by the event of the battle before Montiel, he forfeited his life, and don Henry regained poſſeſſion of the kingdom. He in that day riſked his own perſon as well as that of his friends; and you muſt do the ſame, if you wiſh to live with honour.'

'By my head,' ſaid the king, 'you ſay well; and I will not aſk other advice, but follow this, which is much to my advantage.' The council now broke up; and orders were given for the army to march in three days time, to chooſe a proper poſition to wait for the enemy. The gates of Liſbon were kept ſo cloſely ſhut that no perſon whatever was allowed to quit the town; for the king and the inhabitants would not that the Spaniards ſhould know their intention nor their numbers.

The Engliſh were much pleaſed when they learnt they were to march towards Santaren, where the king and his army lay. Every one now prepared his arms; the archers their bows and arrows, each according to his rank. On a Thurſday, in the afternoon, the king with his army marched out of Liſbon, and encamped that day on the banks of a ſmall river,

river, two leagues from the town, with their front towards Santaren: they ſaid, they would never return before they had ſeen their enemies, and that it was much better they ſhould offer battle than for the enemy to come to them. They had remarked the difference between thoſe who fought and thoſe who waited for a battle, and that inferior numbers had frequently gained the day: for, in almoſt all the victories the Engliſh had obtained over the French, they had been the firſt to offer battle; and they obſerved, that an attacking army is naturally more courageous than one on the defence. This was the opinion of the inhabitants of Liſbon when they marched out of the town, and they thus continued their converſation: 'Some of us were with the ment of Ghent when they marched to Bruges and offered battle to the count of Flanders and his army in that town; and we well know, that Philip von Artaveld, Peter du Bois, John Cliqueriel, François Atremen and Peter le Nuitre, the leaders of the Ghentmen, had not under them more than ſeven thouſand men; but they fought the battle, and defeated eleven thouſand. This is a known fact, for there was not any treachery: fortune was favourable to Ghent on the day of battle, which was fought on a Saturday, a long league diſtant from Bruges, as we were informed on the morrow when they had conquered that city.' They comforted themſelves that there was as good a chance to win as to loſe, and that, if they wiſhed to ſucceed in arms, they muſt act boldly.

Such were the converſations of the Liſboners among themſelves, on the Thurſday, as they continued their march. When the king heard how reſolutely they diſcourſed, he was much pleaſed.

When the trumpets of the king's army ſounded on the Friday-morning, all made themſelves ready, and marched on the right, following the river and the flat country, on account of the baggage and proviſion which followed them, and advanced four leagues.

News was brought, on this Friday, to the king of Caſtille at Santaren, that the Portugueſe, under the command of the maſter of Avis, whom the Liſboners had crowned king, were advancing to meet him. This intelligence was ſoon ſpread through the army; and it gave the Spaniards, French and Gaſcons much joy: they ſaid, 'Theſe Liſboners are valiant fellows, thus to come and fight with us: let us haſten to take the field, and ſurround them if we can, that we may prevent their return; for, if we can help it, not one of them ſhall ſee Liſbon again.' It was proclaimed through the army, by ſound of trumpet, for every one to be ready, both horſe and foot, on Saturday-morning, as on that day the king would march to combat his enemies. Every one was prepared and ſhewed great joy at the orders, and at the event likely to happen.

On the Saturday-morning, all the trumpets in the Caſtille army ſounded. The king heard maſs in the caſtle, then drank a cup, as did his attendants, and, mounting their horſes, they marched into

into the plain in handſome order: ſir Reginald de Limouſin, marſhal of the army, led the van. Scouts were ordered to examine the appearance of the enemy, where they were, and what might be their numbers. Two ſquires were ordered on this duty by the French; one a Burgundian, and the other a Gaſcon. The Burgundian was called William de Montigny, and of the company of ſir John de Rue: the Gaſcon came from Béarn, and his name was Bertrand de Barege. They were both on that day made knights, and with them a lord of Caſtille, an able man at arms, called ſir Pedro Fernando de Medina: he was mounted on a light genet that had wonderful ſpeed.

While theſe three knights were exploring the country on all ſides in ſearch of the Portugueſe, their main army, which conſiſted of full two thouſand lances, knights and ſquires, Gaſcons, Burgundians, French, Picards and Bretons, as well equipped and mounted as men at arms could be, and twenty thouſand Spaniards, all on horſeback, marched at a foot's pace, and had not advanced the diſtance of a bow-ſhot when they halted. The king of Portugal had alſo ſent three ſcouts to obſerve the countenance and order of the Spaniards, two of whom were Engliſh ſquires and expert men at arms, whoſe names were James d'Hartleberry and Philip Bradeſton, and with them a Portugueſe called Fernando de la Greſſe. They were all well mounted, and rode ſo far that from an eminence where they were hid by the leaves of the trees they examined carefully the whole Spaniſh army.

army. They then returned to the king of Portugal and his army, which they found drawn up in the plain, and related what they had ſeen. 'Sire, we have advanced ſo far as to have fully reconnoitred your enemies: they are very numerous, thirty thouſand horſe at leaſt: therefore conſider well the buſineſs.' The king aſked, 'Do they march in one body?' 'No, ſir: they are in two battalions.' The king turned about, and ſaid aloud, 'Now all of you attend to what I ſay, for here muſt be no cowardice: we ſhall ſoon engage our enemies, who are on their march and eager to meet us: this they will do, for we can neither fly nor return to Liſbon. We have left that town: therefore act well, and ſell your lives dearly. You have made me your king: this day I ſhall ſee whether the crown is to be peaceably mine; for be aſſured I will never fly, but abide the event.' They replied, 'God aſſiſt us! we will all ſtand by you.'

Northberry and Hartſel were then called, with others the moſt experienced in arms, and men who had ſeen the greateſt number of battles, when they were aſked their opinions, as to the beſt mode of acting, to wait the event of a battle; for they were likely to be forced to fight, as the enemy was advancing faſt, and in ſuch numbers that they were at leaſt four to one. The Engliſhmen ſaid, 'Since we muſt have a battle, and they are ſuperior to us in numbers, it is an unequal chance, and we cannot conquer them but by taking advantage of the hedges and buſhes: let us therefore

e fortify ourſelves in ſuch manner, and you will ſ they will not ſo eaſily break us as if we were the plain.' The king replied, 'You ſpeak iſely, and it ſhall be done as you recommend.'

CHAP. XXXVII.

THE PORTUGUESE FORTIFY THEMSELVES, NEAR THE CHURCH OF ALJUBAROTA*, BY THE ADVICE OF THE ENGLISH.—KING JOHN OF CASTILLE, THROUGH THE COUNSEL OF THE FRENCH AND BEARNOIS, RESOLVES TO FIGHT THEM.—THE HATREDS AND JEALOUSIES OF THE CASTILLIANS STILL CONTINUE AGAINST THE FOREIGNERS.

THE Portugueſe and Liſboners approved of the advice of the Engliſh, and gave their opinions whither they ſhould march. They were then near Aljubarota, a large village, to which place they had ſent their ſtores, ſumpter horſes and baggage, as the ſituation in which they had intended lodging that night, battle or not. About a quarter of a league without the village is a conſiderable monaſtery, whither the inhabitants go to hear maſs. The church is on a ſmall eminence, a little beſide the road, ſurrounded by large

* Aljubarota,—a village of Eſtremadoura in Portugal, four leagues from the town of Leiria.

trees,

trees, hedges, and buſhes, which, with ſome little aſſiſtance, might be made a ſtrong poſt. This was then told the king and his council; but he would have the Engliſh called, for, though they were few in number, he wiſhed to follow their advice. They ſaid; 'Sire, we know not any ſpot near, more favourable than the monaſtery of Aljubarota, ſituated as it is among trees: it is now a ſtrong poſition, but may be much ſtrengthened by art.' Thoſe who knew the country agreeing to the truth of this, the king ſaid,—'Let us march thither, and form ourſelves in ſuch manner as good men at arms ſhould do; ſo that our enemies, when they advance, may not find us unprepared.' This was inſtantly done: they marched ſlowly to Aljubarota, and came to the ſquare before the church, when the Engliſh and ſir Monges de Navarêt, with other valiant Portugueſe and Liſboners, attentively examined the place and the environs. The Engliſh ſaid, 'This ſpot can be made ſufficiently ſtrong, and we may ſecurely wait here the event.' They cut down the trees fronting the plain, and laid them acroſs, ſo that the cavalry could not paſs them, leaving one entry not too wide, on the wings of which they poſted all their archers and croſs-bows. The men at arms were on foot drawn up beſide the church, where the king was; and they had already diſplayed the king's ſtandard and banners.

When they ſaw themſelves thus drawn up, they were much contented, ſaying, if it pleaſed God, they were in a ſituation to hold out for a long time,

time, and to gain the advantage by it. The king addreſſed them: 'My fair gentlemen, ſhew your valour this day, and think not of flight; for that will be of no avail, as you are too diſtant from Liſbon; and beſides, there is no ſafety in flight, for three good men will overpower and ſlay twelve runaways. Prove that you are men of courage, and offer yourſelves vigorouſly to your opponents: conſider, ſhould the day be ours, which it will be, if it pleaſe God, how much we ſhall be honoured and praiſed in the different countries where news of it ſhall be carried; for the victors are always exalted, and the conquered abaſed. Conſider alſo, you have made me your king, which ſhould ſtrengthen your courage; for be aſſured, that as long as this battle-axe in my hand ſhall hold, I will continue the fight: and, ſhould it break or fail me, I will get another, and ſhew I am determined to guard and defend the crown of Portugal for myſelf, and for the right I have to the ſucceſſion of my lord and brother, in which, on my ſoul, I declare and ſay, they oppoſe me wrongfully, and that the quarrel is perſonal.'

Thoſe of his countrymen who had heard him, replied,—'My lord and king, you have graciouſly admoniſhed, and greatly adviſed us to be men of valour, and to ſupport you in defending what we have given to you, and at the ſame time acknowledge to be your own. Know, then, that we will all remain with you ſteadily, and never leave the field alive, until we gain the battle, or be carried away. Have it proclaimed to your men, for they have

have not all heard you, that no one dare, on his life, think of flying; and if there ſhould be any whoſe courage fails, ſo that he fear to await the battle, let him come forward, and he ſhall have leave to depart, (for one faint heart diſcourages a dozen of good men at arms) or have his head ſtruck off as an example to others.' The king ſaid it ſhould be done, and two knights were ordered by him to examine the army and admoniſh it, and ſee if any ſymptoms appeared among them of fear. The knights, on their return, reported to the king, that wherever they had viſited, and they had examined all the different companies, they had found every one reſolute, and determined to wait the event of the battle. 'So much the better,' ſaid the king. He iſſued orders to the army, if any perſons were deſirous of knighthood, to come forward, and he would confer on them the order of knighthood, in the name of God and St. George. From the information I had, it ſeems that ſixty new knights were created, which pleaſed the king much; and, placing them in front of the army, he ſaid,—'My fair ſirs, the order of chivalry is more exalted and noble than imagination can ſuppoſe; and no knight ought to ſuffer himſelf to be debaſed by cowardice, or any villanous or dirty action; but when his helmet is on his head he ſhould be bold and fierce as a lion when he ſees his prey; and becauſe I wiſh you to ſhew your courage this day, where it will be needful, I order you to the front of the battalion, where you muſt exert yourſelves, that

we

we may both obtain honour, otherwiſe your ſpurs will not become you.'

Each new knight anſwered in his turn, as he marched by,—' Sire, we will, with God's grace, do ſo, that we ſhall gain your love and approbation.' In this manner were the Portugueſe drawn up, and fortified near the church of Aljubarota. None of the Engliſh were deſirous to be knighted this day: they were requeſted by the king to be ſo, but excuſed themſelves for that time.

We will now return to the king of Caſtille, and to the knights, ſquires and men at arms from France and Gaſcony with him, and ſpeak of the appearance of the Spaniards, and how they were drawn up. The knights they had ſent out to reconnoitre had returned, and ſaid,—' Sir king, and you barons and knights preſent, we have leiſurely examined our enemies: we do not believe their whole amount is more than ten thouſand men: they have marched to the abbey of Aljubarota, where they have halted, and are drawn up in order of battle; and there they may be found by whoever chooſes to ſeek for them.'

Upon this the king ſummoned a council, to which, in particular, the barons and knights of France were invited: they were aſked, what was beſt to be done, when they inſtantly replied,—' Sir, it is proper they ſhould be fought with: we ſee nothing elſe to be done; for, from the report of our ſcouts, they are alarmed for the event, as they find themſelves diſtant from any fortreſſes whither they may retreat, and Liſbon is ſix leagues off:

off: they cannot, therefore, eaſily run thither, even if they ſhould take advantage of the night, without being overtaken on the road. We therefore, ſir, adviſe, ſince we know where they are, that we be drawn up in battle array, and march to combat them, while your men are in a good diſpoſition to behave well.'

The king then aſked his countrymen their opinions, ſuch as don Gonzales Nûnez de Guſman, don Diego de Mendoza, Peter Gonzales de Mendoza, Peter Lopez d'Ayala, and the grand maſter of Calatrava, who replied,—' My lord, we have well heard the French knights adviſe you to march inſtantly againſt your enemies; but we wiſh you and them to know, that before we can arrive thither it will be night, for the ſun is now on the decline, and we have not yet arranged our order of battle. It would be better to wait until morning, and approach them ſo near, that we may diſcover by our ſcouts, whom we can ſpread over the plain, in what manner they have poſted themſelves; and if they ſhould incline to march away during the night, we might alſo decamp, when they cannot eſcape, for the country is quite open, and there is not any ſtrong place except Liſbon, ſo that they muſt fall an eaſy prey to us. This is the advice we give.'

The king, on hearing this, was ſilent, and looked firſt on the ground and then on the foreigners, when ſir Reginald de Limouſin, marſhal of the army, thus ſpoke (in order to pleaſe the French) in Spaniſh, that he might be heard and underſtood by all, for he ſpoke that language fluently, ſo long had

had he reſided among them, addreſſing himſelf to the Spaniards who were near the king, and who had given him the laſt advice,—'How can you, my lords, (calling each of them by their name, for he was well acquainted with them all) pretend to have more knowledge of battles or more experience in war than the valiant knights and ſquires here preſent? How can you imagine you can deviſe any plan ſuperior to theirs, or even that could be of any value? for their whole life has been employed in travelling from one kingdom to another in ſearch of adventures. How can you dare offer any other opinion, or thus detract from what they have ſo nobly ſaid, in the defence of the honour of the king and country; in which you are more intereſted than they are, for you have therein your properties as well as your perſons, whilſt they have only their perſons. They have offered a proof of their attachment by requeſting of the king to be poſted in front of the battalions, which his majeſty has diſapproved. Conſider how diſintereſted they muſt be, when they made this offer. It would appear to ſome perſons as if you were envious, and wiſhed not that any honour or profit might accrue to them, or that the king ſhould gain the victory over his enemies. Honourable men at arms, who ſeek perfection, ſhould be above low jealouſies and ſuch baſe paſſions, and always be of one and the ſame way of thinking. Beſides, through your advice, has the king been thus long and expenſively kept at the ſiege of Liſbon, without having any opportunity of a battle, until now when the maſter

of Avis (who ſigns himſelf king of Portugal, though he can have no ſuch right, being a baſtard) has taken the field. He is at Aljubarota at this moment with all the force he can muſter, but it is not any way great: if it ſhould therefore happen that he make his eſcape from us, and avoid a battle, you will run the riſk of the people riſing and ſlaying you; or the king, conſidering you as traitors, will have you beheaded, and your eſtates confiſcated. I therefore ſee no better means for you than being ſilent, and agreeing with thoſe who have been actors in more matters of this ſort than you ever have been engaged in, or ever will be.'

As ſir Reginald ended this ſpeech, the king raiſed his eyes from the ground, and ſeemed highly pleaſed with what he had heard: the Spaniards, on the contrary, were thunderſtruck, and thought, at the moment, they had done worſe than they really had; for, notwithſtanding the marſhal had thus oppoſed and reproved them, they had wiſely and prudently adviſed the king, for he could not have had better counſel; but his valour and frankneſs made him ſpeak as follows, in compliance with the French and the ſtrangers preſent, who were eager for battle. Every one was ſilent, when the king ſaid,—'In the name of God and my lord St. James, I will that we combat our enemies, and that thoſe who deſire knighthood, may advance, and receive the order of chivalry in honour of God and St. George.' Many ſquires of France and Béarn came forward, and were knighted by the king's hand; ſuch as ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, and his ſon Edmund: from

from the county of Foix, ſir Bertrand de Barege, ſir Peter de Salbiere, ſir Peter de Valentin, ſir William de Quer, ſir Angiers de Sollenaire, ſir Peter de Vaud, ſir William de Mondigy, with many more; in all, one hundred and forty, who willingly accepted the order of knighthood. Some barons of Béarn firſt diſplayed their banners with ſeveral of Caſtille and ſir John de Rue.

You might have ſeen theſe young knights full of vigour and gallantry, carrying themſelves ſo handſomely that it was a pleaſant ſpectacle to ſee; and they were, as I have ſaid, a large battalion of themſelves. The lord de Lingnach then approached the king, accompanied by all thoſe who had come from different countries, and whom the Caſtillians called indiſcriminately Frenchmen, completely armed except their helmets, and ſaid,—'My lord king, we are come from diſtant countries with the beſt diſpoſitions to ſerve you: grant us, we beg of you, that we may form the van battalion.' 'I grant it,' replied the king, 'in the name of God, St. James and my lord St. George, and may they be with you!' Upon this, the Spaniards whiſpered one to another,—'See, for God's ſake; ſee how our king confides wholly in theſe foreigners: he has not any truſt in others. They have obtained the honour of the van, and hold us ſo cheap they will not invite us to make a part. They are now drawing themſelves up ſeparately. Well, we will do the ſame on our part, and, by God, let them combat and fight by themſelves. Have they not already boaſted they are ſufficient to vanquiſh the

Portugueſe? Be it ſo, then: we are contented; but it will be right we aſk the king if he chooſe to remain with us, or go with the Frenchmen.' They were murmuring a long time, whether they ſhould put ſuch a queſtion to the king or not, for they were much afraid of the reprimands of ſir Reginald de Limouſin. Having fully conſidered, they thought there would not be any harm in aſking the queſtion. Six therefore of the principal nobles, employed about his perſon, advanced, and, with many obeiſances, thus ſpoke: 'Moſt noble king, we perceive plainly, that this day there will be an engagement with your enemies. God grant you may have the victory and honour! as we ſincerely wiſh it; but we are anxious to know your pleaſure, whether you will remain with us or march with the Frenchmen?' 'By no means,' replied the king: 'my fair ſirs, if I have determined on battle, in conſequence of the advice of the knights and ſquires from France who have come to ſerve me, and who are men of great valour and abilities, I do not renounce you, but will remain among you, and you will therefore help in defending me.' The Caſtillians were delighted with this anſwer, and ſaid; 'That, my lord, will we do, and never fail you as long as we live; for we have ſworn to do ſo, and pledged our faith on the day you were crowned: we had beſides ſo great an affection for the good king your father, that nothing ſhall ever make us deſert you.' The king of Caſtille remained with his Caſtillians, who amounted to full twenty thouſand

ſand horſe all covered with armour. Sir Reginald de Limouſin was in the firſt battalion, that poſt being his right as marſhal.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE BATTLE OF ALJUBAROTA, IN WHICH THE FRENCH AND BEARNOIS, IN THE INTEREST OF CASTILLE, ARE DEFEATED AND SLAIN BY THE PORTUGUESE, FROM NOT BEING PROPERLY SUPPORTED BY THE CASTILLIANS, WHO WERE JEALOUS OF THEM.—THEY AFTERWARDS MEET THE SAME FATE.

THIS Saturday had been a fine clear day, but the ſun was now declining, and it was about the hour of Veſpers, when the firſt battalion of the Caſtillian army came before Aljubarota, where the king of Portugal and his men were drawn up in battle-array. The French knights amounted to two thouſand, as gallant lances as could be ſeen. The moment they perceived the enemy they formed in cloſe order, like men of reſolution who knew their buſineſs, and advanced within bow-ſhot. This attack was very ſharp; for thoſe who were eager after glory, and to perform feats of arms, aſſaulted the place which the Engliſh had fortified. The entrance having been made narrow cauſed a great preſſure of the aſſailants againſt each other,

and much miſchief was done by Engliſh archers, who ſhot ſo vigorouſly and quick that the horſes were larded, as it were, with arrows, and fell one on the other. The few Engliſh men at arms and the Liſboners now came forward, ſhouting their cry of, 'Our Lady for Liſbon!' They were armed with well ſteeled Bourdeaux lances, with which they pierced through every thing, and wounded knights and ſquires. The lord de Lingnach of Béarn was unhorſed, his banner taken and himſelf made priſoner, and numbers of his men ſlain or taken. On the other hand, ſir John de Rue, ſir Geoffry Ricon, ſir Geoffry de Partenay, with difficulty, had entered the fort with their men; but their horſes were ſo wounded by the archers, they fell down under them. The men at arms on their ſide were in great danger, for one could not aſſiſt the other, nor could they gain room to exert themſelves, while the Portugueſe, ſeeing the ill ſucceſs which had attended the firſt aſſailants, were as freſh and as active as ever for the combat. The king of Portugal was mounted on a tall courſer, decorated all over with the arms of Portugal, and his banner ſet up before him: he was much pleaſed at ſeeing the defeat of his enemies, and to encourage his men, and for his own pleaſure, he laughed aloud, crying out,—'Go on, my good fellows: defend yourſelves well, for, if there be no more than what I ſee, we ſhall not make much of them; and, if I have any knowledge of war, theſe men muſt remain with us.'

Thus

Thus did the king of Portugal encourage his men, who fought valiantly, and, having incloſed the firſt comers within their fort, they were putting numbers of them to death. True it is, that this firſt battalion of which I am ſpeaking, under the command of knights from France and Béarn, expected to have been more quickly and better ſupported by the Caſtillians than they were; for if the king of Caſtille with the main army, which conſiſted at leaſt of twenty thouſand men, had advanced to check the Portugueſe in another quarter, the day muſt have been theirs; but they did nothing, for which they ſuffered much loſs and blame. It is alſo true, that the battle began too ſoon; but they did ſo to acquire greater honour, and to make their words good which they had ſaid in the preſence of the king. On the other hand, as I have heard, the Caſtillians made no great haſte to advance, for the French were not in good favour with them; and they had ſaid,—'Let them begin the fight, and tire themſelves: they will find enough to do. Theſe Frenchmen are too great boaſters, and too vainglorious, and our king has not any perfect confidence but in them. Since he wiſhes that they ſhould have the honour of the day, it ſhall be ſo; for we will have it our own way, or not at all.' Conformably to this reſolution, the Spaniards kept in a large body, twenty thouſand at leaſt, in the plain, and would not advance, which vexed the king much; but he could not help it, for they ſaid,—'My lord, it is all over, (though none had returned from the battle): theſe French knights

have defeated your enemies: the honour and victory of the day are theirs.' 'God grant it may be ſo!' replied the king; 'but let us advance a little.' They advanced about a bow-ſhot, and halted again. It was truly a fine ſight to view their appearance, ſo well and handſomely were they armed and mounted. During all this time, the French were fighting; and thoſe knight and ſquires who had been able to diſmount performed many gallant deeds, for, when their lances were broken, they uſed their battle axes, and with them gave ſuch deſperate blows on the helmets of all who oppoſed them, that wounds, if not death, were the conſequences. Whoever is engaged in ſuch-like combats as this at Aljubarota muſt abide the event, if ſafety be not ſought in flight: but in flight there is more danger than in the heat of the battle, for, when any one flies, a purſuit is made, and, if overtaken, he is ſlain; when in a battle, if the chance turn unfortunate, he ſurrenders, and is well taken care of as a captive.

It cannot be denied but that the knights and ſquires from France, Brittany, Burgundy and Béarn fought valiantly: they were overpowered at the firſt onſet, from the advice the Engliſh had given to fortify the place: beſides, in this attack, the Portugueſe were ſuperior in numbers. They therefore were at their mercy, and all were ſlain or taken, for few eſcaped. At this beginning, they made a thouſand knights and ſquires priſoners, which gave them much joy. They did not expect any further battle that day, and entertained their priſoners

priſoners handſomely, ſaying to them,—'Do not be caſt down: you have valiantly fought, and have been conquered fairly: we will behave to you as generouſly as we ſhould wiſh to be dealt with ourſelves, were we in your ſituation. You muſt come and recruit yourſelves in the good city of Liſbon, where you ſhall have every comfort.' Thoſe to whom ſuch ſpeeches were made, replied by returning thanks. Some were ranſomed on the ſpot, and others ſaid they would wait the event, for they did not imagine things would remain as they then were, but that the king of Spain would come with the main army and deliver them.

As the king of Caſtille and his people were drawing near to Aljubarota, news of what had happened ſpeedily came to them from the runaways (for unfortunate indeed is the battle whence no one eſcapes) who cried aloud and with much fear,—'Sir king, advance; for your whole van battalion are either ſlain or made priſoners, and there is no hope of deliverance but from you.' When the king heard this, he was much enraged, and with reaſon, for it too nearly concerned him: he inſtantly gave orders to march, ſaying, 'March banners, in the name of God and St. George: let us haſten to the reſcue of our friends who have been captured, for they have need of us.'

The Caſtillians began to quicken their march in cloſe order: it was now paſt veſpers, and the ſun was ſetting, when ſome of them ſaid, it would be better to wait for the morning, as it would ſoon be night,

night, when they would be unable to perform any good deeds of arms. But the king was determined to advance, and was in the right; for he ſaid,—'How can we think of thus deſerting our friends, who are fatigued and in diſtreſs? whoever gives ſuch advice neither loves me nor regards my honour.' They continued, therefore, to advance, with trumpets ſounding and drums beating, and making a great noiſe to frighten their enemies.

I will now relate how the king of Portugal and his army had employed themſelves. As ſoon as they had defeated the van diviſion and taken care of their priſoners, as has been before ſaid, they did not confide in this firſt victory, though they ſaw not any appearance of reinforcements, but ordered ſix men at arms, the beſt mounted, to reconnoitre, and bring them intelligence, if they were to expect another battle. Thoſe who had been ſent on this expedition ſaw and heard the army of the king of Caſtille, which was at laſt twenty thouſand men, on horſeback, and approaching very near to Aljubarota: they returned full gallop to their friends, and ſaid aloud—'My lords, take care of yourſelves, for hitherto we have done nothing: the king of Caſtille is advancing with his whole army, of twenty thouſand horſe, for not one has remained behind.' On hearing this they held a ſhort council, as the neceſſity of the caſe obliged them, and came to a pitileſs reſolution; for it was commanded, under pain of death, that whoever had taken a priſoner ſhould inſtantly kill him, and that neither noble, nor rich, nor ſimple, ſhould

be

be exempted. Thoſe barons, knights and ſquires, who had been captured, were in a melancholy ſituation, for entreaties would have been of no avail. They were ſcattered about diſarmed in different parts, conſidering themſelves in ſafety, for their lives at leaſt; but it was not ſo, which was a great pity. Each man killed his priſoner, and thoſe who refuſed, had him ſlain before their eyes: for the Portugueſe and Engliſh, who had given this advice, ſaid,—'It was better to kill than to be killed; and if we do not put them to death they will liberate themſelves while we are fighting, and then ſlay us, for no one ought to put confidence in his priſoner.' By this order there were killed the lord de Lingnach, ſir Peter de Salbiere, the lords de Leſpre, de Béarn, des Bordes, ſir Bertrand de Barege, the lord de Moriane, ſir Raymond Donzack, ſir John Afolege, ſir Manaut de Saremen, ſir Peter de Salibieres, ſir Stephen de Valentin, ſir Raymond de Couraſſe, ſir Peter de Hauſane, with full three hundred ſquires from Béarn. Of Frenchmen, there were ſir John de Rue, ſir Geoffry Ricon, ſir Geoffry de Partenay and many more. This was a very unfortunate event to the priſoners, as well as to the Portugueſe; for they put to death, this Saturday, as many good priſoners as would have been worth to them, taking one with another, four hundred thouſand francs. When they had thus cleared the place, by putting every one to death, (for none eſcaped but thoſe who had been carried to the village of Aljubarota, where the baggage and ſtores were) they again formed themſelves

themſelves in the ſame poſition and place as when the van battalion commenced their attack.

The ſun was now ſetting, when the king of Caſtille advanced in puiſſant array, with banners diſplayed, and on barded horſes, ſhouting out 'Caſtille!' and entered the fortified paſs. They were received with lances and battle axes, and the firſt flight of arrows grievouſly wounded their horſes, threw them into confuſion, and many were wounded or ſlain. The king of Caſtille, ignorant of the unfortunate fate of the van, imagining they were only priſoners, was anxious to deliver them, as you have heard. The battle raged with violence: many were thrown to the ground, and the Portugueſe had not the advantage: they were forced to fight moſt valiantly or they would have been overpowered: they owed their ſafety to the impoſſibility of being attacked but in one place. The king of Portugal diſmounted, and, taking his battle-axe, placed himſelf at the paſs, where he performed wonders, knocking down three or four of the ſtouteſt of the enemy, inſomuch that none dared to approach him. I muſt not omit to notice the manner in which the Spaniards generally act in war. It is true they make a handſome figure on horſeback, ſpur off to advantage, and fight well at the firſt onſet; but as ſoon as they have thrown two or three darts, and given a ſtroke with their ſpears, without diſconcerting the enemy, they take alarm, turn their horſes heads, and ſave themſelves by flight as well as they can: this game they played at Aljubarota; for they found

their

their enemies obſtinate, and as freſh as if they had not had an engagement, which aſtoniſhed them much; and their ſurpriſe was increaſed by not hearing any thing of the van battalion.

The Spaniards had a hard afternoon's work, and the fortune of war was greatly againſt them: all who through courage, or a wiſh to diſtinguiſh themſelves, had entered the fort of the Liſboners, were cut to pieces; for they would not ranſom any, whether poor or noble, (ſuch had been their orders) nor encumber themſelves with priſoners. Very many of the nobles of Caſtille were there ſlain: among the greateſt barons who ſuffered were ſir Dangommes Neudrich, ſir Diego Parſament, don Pedro de Rourmont, ſir Marc de Verſaux, the grand maſter of Calatrava, and his brother, who was that day created a knight, and called ſir Diego Moro, ſir Peter Gouſſart de Modeſque, don Pedro Gouſſart de Seville, don John Rodrigo de la Rouſſelle, with upwards of ſixty barons and knights of Spain. There were not even at the battle of Najara, when the prince of Wales defeated the king, don Henry, ſo many nobles of Caſtille killed, as at this battle of Aljubarota, which was on a Saturday, the feaſt of our Lady, in Auguſt 1385.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

THE KING OF CASTILLE, AFTER HIS DEFEAT AT ALJUBAROTA, RETREATS TO SANTAREN.—THE KING OF PORTUGAL RETURNS TO LISBON.—A TRUCE IS CONCLUDED BETWEEN THEM.

WHEN king Henry perceived that his army was defeated, the van battalion having been totally deſtroyed, that ſir Reginald de Limouſin, his marſhal, was ſlain, and that the flower of his own chivalry, as well as that of France, which had come ſo willingly to ſerve him, were dead or diſabled, he was mightily caſt down, and knew not how to act. He ſaw his men flying in all directions, and heard them crying to him,—'My lord, march away: it is time for you: the battle is over: you alone cannot conquer your enemies, nor repair your loſſes: your men are running away on all ſides, for every one now looks to himſelf: you know alſo, it will be prudent, at this moment, to follow their example, and if fortune is now againſt you, another time ſhe may be more favourable.' The king of Caſtille followed this advice: he changed his horſe, and mounted a freſh one that had not been rode that day, and which had great ſpeed. The king ſtuck ſpurs into him, turned his back to his enemies, and made for Santaren, whither all the runaways, who wiſhed to ſave themſelves, followed.

The

The king of Caſtille had that day ordered a knight of his houſehold, called ſir Peter Harem, to bear his helmet. This helmet was encircled with gold, and might be worth twenty thouſand francs. The king intended wearing it at the battle, and had ſo ordered it the morning he marched from Santaren, but did not do ſo; for, when the army was forming, there was ſo great a crowd round the king, the knight could not come near, and, not hearing himſelf called, he ceaſed to attempt it. Shortly afterwards, he heard that the Portugueſe had gained the day, and ſaw his own army flying in all directions: fearful of loſing ſo rich a jewel as the king's helmet, that was valued ſo highly, he put it on his own head, not to loſe it nor have it ſtolen from him by meeting the enemy, and fled: he did not follow the road to Santaren, but took another, which led to the town of Ville Arpent. Thus did they diſperſe, ſome one way, ſome another, like to people thunderſtruck and diſcomfited; but the greater part made for Santaren, where the king arrived in the evening, confounded and caſt down.

After the defeat of the Spaniards at Aljubarota, the Portugueſe and Liſboners kept the field of battle: the ſlaughter was great, and would have been more if they had purſued the enemy; for the Engliſh, ſeeing the enemy turn their backs, called aloud to the king of Portugal,—'Sir king, let us mount our horſes, and ſet out on the purſuit, and all theſe runaways ſhall be dead men.' 'I will not,' replied the king: 'what we have

have done ought to ſatisfy us. Our men are fatigued, and have fought hard this evening: it is now ſo dark we ſhall not know whither we are going, nor how many are flying. Their army was very numerous; and perhaps this may be a ſtratagem to draw us out of our fort and the more eaſily conquer us. We will this day guard the dead, and to-morrow call a council and conſider how we ſhall next act.'

'By my faith,' replied Hartſel, an Engliſhman, 'the dead are eaſily guarded: they will do us no harm, nor ſhall we have any profit from them, for we have ſlain our rich priſoners. We are ſtrangers, come from a diſtance to ſerve you, and would willingly gain ſomething from theſe calves that are flying without wings, and who drive their banners before them.' 'Fair brother,' ſaid the king, 'all covet, all loſe: it is much better that we remain on our guard, ſince the honour and victory are ours, through God's grace, than run any riſk when there is no neceſſity for it. Thanks to God, we have enough to make you all rich.' Nothing more was ſaid on the ſubject.

Thus, as I have related, happened the battle of Aljubarota, which the king of Portugal completely gained. There were ſlain about five hundred knights, and full as many, if not more, ſquires, which was a great pity, and ſix or ſeven thouſand other men: God have mercy on their poor ſouls!

The king of Portugal and his men remained all

all night under arms, at their poſt without ſtirring, until about ſix o'clock on Sunday-morning. They eat a morſel ſtanding or ſitting, and quaffed a cup or ſo of wine, which was brought to them from the village of Aljubarota. At ſun-riſe, the king of Portugal ordered twelve knights to mount their horſes, and ſcour the country, to ſee if there were any bodies of men aſſembled together. When they had rode far and near, on their return, they ſaid they had ſeen nothing but dead men. 'Of them we have no fear,' ſaid the king, who gave orders for the army to march to the village of Aljubarota, where they were to halt the reſt of the day and that night until Monday morning. Upon this they decamped, leaving the church of Aljubarota, and quartered themſelves in the village the whole of Sunday and the following night.

On the Monday-morning, it was ordered in council that they ſhould return to Liſbon, and the trumpets ſounded to decamp. They then formed themſelves in handſome array, and took the road to Liſbon. On the Tueſday, the king entered the city, amid an immenſe concourſe of people, with great glory and triumph, and was conducted by a numerous company of minſtrels, and a long proceſſion of churchmen, who had come out to meet him as far as the palace. As he rode through the ſtreets, all the people, and even children, paid him the greateſt reſpect and reverence, ſhouting out, 'Long live the noble king of Portugal! to whom God has been gracious in

giving victory over the potent king of Caſtille, the gain of the field and diſcomfiture of his enemies.'

By this fortunate victory which the king of Portugal had over don John of Caſtille, as I have juſt related, he won ſo much the affections of all Portugal that thoſe, who before this battle had diſſembled their ſentiments, now came to Liſbon, took the oaths and paid their homage to him, ſaying he was worthy to live, and God muſt love him when he gave him the victory over a king more powerful than himſelf, and that he deſerved to wear a crown. Thus did the king acquire the love of his ſubjects, more eſpecially of the whole commonalty of the kingdom.

We will now ſay ſomething of the king of Caſtille, who, after his defeat, retreated to Santaren, regretting and bewailing the loſs of his men, and curſing the hard fate he had had, when ſuch numbers of noble knights of his kingdom as well as thoſe from France lay dead on the field. At the time he entered the town of Santaren, he knew not the greatneſs of his loſs, but was made acquainted with it on the Sunday, when he ſent his heralds to examine the field of battle, having imagined the greater part of thoſe barons and knights whom they found lying dead had been priſoners to the Portugueſe. He was ſo much enraged when the heralds returned, on learning the names of thoſe who had fallen and the certainty of their deaths, that he could not be appeaſed nor comforted. He declared with an oath, he ſhould never again taſte

joy,

joy, for the loſs of ſo many noble knights, who had periſhed through his fault.

At the end of the three days the king had paſſed at Santaren, his knight, ſir Martin Harene*, came into the town, bringing with him his majeſty's helmet, which was eſtimated at twenty thouſand francs, on account of the rich jewels with which it was ornamented. Much had been ſaid on this ſubject in the king's houſehold, and ſome had declared he had fraudulently carried it off, and would never more return. When the knight came before the king, he caſt himſelf on his knees, and made ſuch fair excuſes that the king and his council held him blameleſs.

Things remained in this ſtate, and the king of Caſtille returned to Burgos the twenty-fifth day after his arrival at Santaren, having diſmiſſed his whole army. Negociations were now entered on between the kings of Caſtille and Portugal, and a truce was made between them and their allies, as well on land as at ſea, from Michaelmas until the firſt day of May.

The bodies of the barons and knights who had been ſlain at Aljubarota, were buried in that and in the neighbouring churches: the bones of many were carried by their ſervants to their own countries.

---

* His name is not mentioned in the printed copies until now, but he is called in my MSS. Peter Harem.

CHAP. XL.

THE COUNT DE FOIX IS RAPIDLY, AND IN A SECRET MANNER, INFORMED OF WHAT HAD HAPPENED AT ALJUBAROTA.—FROISSART, IN CONSEQUENCE OF THIS, RELATES A STORY WHICH HAD BEEN TOLD HIM OF A FAMILIAR SPIRIT, CALLED ORTHON, WHO SERVED THE LORD DE CORASSE IN THE LIKE MANNER.

A FACT I am about to relate will aſtoniſh my readers, if they conſider and pay attention to it. It was told me in the hôtel of the count de Foix at Orthès, and by the ſame perſon who had informed me of the battle of Aljubarota, and the event of that day. I will therefore narrate it; for, ever ſince the ſquire related it to me, I have much thought on it, and ſhall do ſo as long as I live. It is a fact, as the ſquire aſſured me, that the count de Foix was informed, the day after the battle of Aljubarota, of every thing that had there happened, the ſame as I have related it, which ſurpriſed me exceedingly how this could poſſibly have been.

The whole days of Sunday, Monday, and the following Tueſday he was in his caſtle of Orthès, and made ſuch poor and melancholy meals that not one word could be drawn from him; nor would he, during that time, quit his chamber, nor ſpeak to knight or ſquire, however nearly they were

were related by blood, unleſs he had ſent for him; and it alſo happened, that he even ſent for ſome, to whom he never opened his lips during theſe three days. On the Tueſday, in the evening, he called his brother Arnold William, and ſaid to him in a low voice,—'Our people have had a deſperate battle, which has vexed me very much, for it has happened to them juſt as I had foretold at their departure.'

Arnold William, who was a wiſe man and a prudent knight, well acquainted with the temper of his brother, was ſilent. The count, anxious to cheer up his courage, for he had too long nurtured in his breaſt this ſad news, added,—'By God, ſir Arnold, it is juſt as I have told you; and very ſoon we ſhall have news of it. Never has the country of Béarn ſuffered ſo ſeverely for theſe hundred years paſt, as it has now at this battle in Portugal.'

Many knights and ſquires who were preſent, and heard the words of the count, were afraid to ſpeak, but commented within themſelves on them.

Within ten days, the truth was known from thoſe who had been in the battle, and they firſt told the count, and all who wiſhed to hear them, every thing relative to their diſputes with the Caſtillians and the event of the battle at Aljubarota. This renewed the grief of the count, and of thoſe perſons belonging to the country who had loſt brothers, relations, children, or friends. 'Holy Mary!' ſaid I to the ſquire, 'how was it poſſible for the count to know, or even to gueſs

at it, on the morrow after it had happened?' 'By my faith,' replied he, 'he knew it well enough, as it appeared afterwards.' 'Is he a wizard then,' ſaid I, 'or has he meſſengers who ride on the winds? for he muſt have ſome ſecret art.' Upon this the ſquire began to laugh, and ſaid, 'In truth, he muſt have known it by means of necromancy. We indeed are ignorant in this country how he manages, but we have our ſuſpicions.' Upon this, I ſaid to the ſquire, 'Now do have the goodneſs to tell me what your ſuſpicions are, and I ſhall be very much obliged to you. If it be neceſſary to keep it ſecret, I will be ſilent, and never open my mouth on the ſubject as long as I live or remain in this country.' 'I muſt entreat that of you,' replied the ſquire, 'for I would not have it known that I had told it to you; for we only ſpeak of it ſecretly when among our friends.' Upon this, he drew me aſide to a corner of the vault of the chapel of Orthès, and thus began his tale:

'About twenty years ago, there lived a baron in this country, called Raymond, lord of Coraſſe. You muſt underſtand, that Coraſſe is a town ſeven leagues diſtant from Orthès. This lord of Coraſſe had a ſuit at Avignon, before the pope, for the tythes of his church, againſt a prieſt of Catalonia: this prieſt was very learned who claimed theſe tythes, which were worth a hundred florins a year. He proved his right ſo clearly that pope Urban V. in full conſiſtory, gave a definitive judgment in favour of the prieſt, condemning

demning the knight to coſts of ſuit. The prieſt obtained a copy of this ſentence, and haſtened to Béarn, where ſhewing it, and his bulls from the pope, he obtained poſſeſſion of the tythes.

'The lord de Coraſſe, being doubtful of the prieſt and of his deſigns, went to him and ſaid,—'Maſter Peter, or maſter Martin, (according as he was called) do you think I will loſe my inheritance through the papers you have brought hither? I do not believe you will be bold enough to collect any thing belonging to me; for if you do, your life ſhall pay for it. Go elſewhere and ſeek for benefices, for you ſhall not have any thing from my eſtates; and, once for all, I forbid you to take any tythes.' The clerk was fearful of the knight, as he knew him to be a cruel man, and dared not perſevere, but reſolved to return to Avignon, which he did. Before he ſet out, he came again to the lord de Coraſſe, and ſaid to him,—'By force, and not by juſtice, you deprive me of the rights of my church, for which, in conſcience, you behave exceedingly ill. I am not ſo powerful in this country as you are; but know, that as ſoon as I poſſibly can, I will ſend you a champion that you will be more afraid of than you have hitherto been of me.'

'The lord de Coraſſe, not alarmed at his menaces, replied—'Go, in God's name go; do what thou canſt; I fear thee neither dead nor alive; and for thy ſpeeches I will not loſe my property.' The clerk then departed, and went I know not whether to Catalonia or to Avignon,

but did not forget what he had told the lord de Coraſſe on leaving him; for, about three months after, when the knight leaſt thought of it, and was ſleeping in his bed with his lady, in his caſtle of Coraſſe, there came inviſible meſſengers, who made ſuch a noiſe, knocking about every thing they met with in the caſtle, as if they were determined to deſtroy all within it; and they gave ſuch loud raps at the door of the chamber of the knight, that the lady was exceedingly frightened. The knight heard it all, but did not ſay a word, as he would not have it appear that he was alarmed, for he was a man of ſufficient courage for any adventure. Theſe noiſes and tumults continued, in different parts of the caſtle, for a conſiderable time, and then ceaſed. On the morrow, all the ſervants of the houſehold aſſembled, and went to their lord, and ſaid,—'My lord, did you not hear what we all heard this night?' The lord de Coraſſe diſſembled, and replied, 'What is it you have heard?' They then related to him all the noiſes and rioting they had heard, and that the plate in the kitchen had been broken. He began to laugh, and ſaid 'it was nothing: that they had dreamed it, or that it had been the wind.' 'In the name of God,' added the lady, 'I well heard it.'

'On the following night, the noiſes and rioting were renewed, but much louder than before; and there were ſuch blows ſtruck againſt the door and windows of the chamber of the knight, that it ſeemed they would break them down. The knight

knight could no longer deſiſt from leaping out of his bed, and calling out, 'Who is it that at this hour thus knocks at my chamber door?' He was inſtantly anſwered, 'It is I.' 'And who ſends thee hither?' aſked the knight. 'The clerk of Catalonia, whom thou haſt much wronged; for thou haſt deprived him of the rights of his benefice: I will, therefore, never leave thee quiet, until thou haſt rendered him a juſt account, with which he ſhall be contented.' 'What art thou called,' ſaid the knight, 'who art ſo good a meſſenger?' 'My name is Orthon.' 'Orthon,' ſaid the knight, 'ſerving a clerk will not be of much advantage to thee; for, if thou believeſt him, he will give thee great trouble: I beg thou wilt therefore leave him and ſerve me, and I ſhall think myſelf obliged to thee.' Orthon was ready with his anſwer, for he had taken a liking to the knight, and ſaid, 'Do you wiſh it?' 'Yes,' replied the knight; 'but no harm muſt be done to any one within theſe walls.' 'Oh no,' anſwered Orthon: 'I have no power to do ill to any one, only to awaken thee and diſturb thy reſt, or that of other perſons.' 'Do what I tell thee,' added the knight: 'we ſhall well agree; and leave this wicked prieſt, for he is a worthleſs fellow, and ſerve me.' 'Well,' replied Orthon, 'ſince thou wilt have it ſo, I conſent.'

'Orthon took ſuch an affection to the lord de Coraſſe that he came often to ſee him in the night-time; and, when he found him ſleeping, he pulled his pillow from under his head, or made great noiſes

noiſes at the door or windows, ſo that, when the knight was awakened, he ſaid, 'Orthon, let me ſleep.' 'I will not,' replied he, 'until I have told thee ſome news.' The knight's lady was ſo much frightened, the hairs of her head ſtood on end, and ſhe hid herſelf under the bed-clothes. 'Well,' ſaid the knight, 'and what news haſt thou brought me?' Orthon replied, 'I am come from England, Hungary, or ſome other place, which I left yeſterday, and ſuch and ſuch things have happened.' Thus did the lord de Coraſſe know by means of Orthon all things that were paſſing in different parts of the world; and this connection continued for five years; but he could not keep it to himſelf, and diſcovered it to the count de Foix, in the manner I will tell you. The firſt year, the lord de Coraſſe came to the count de Foix at Orthès, or elſewhere, and told him; 'My lord, ſuch an event has happened in England, in Scotland, Germany, or ſome other country;' and the count de Foix, who found all this intelligence prove true, marvelled greatly how he could have acquired ſuch early intimation, and entreated him ſo earneſtly, that the lord de Coraſſe told him the means by which he had acquired his intelligence, and the manner of its communication. When the count de Foix heard this, he was much pleaſed, and ſaid,—'Lord de Coraſſe, nouriſh the love of your intelligencer; I wiſh I had ſuch a meſſenger: he coſts you nothing, and you are truly informed of every thing that paſſes in the world.' 'My lord,' replied the knight, 'I will do ſo.' The lord de Coraſſe was

ſerved

ſerved by Orthon for a long time. I am ignorant if Orthon had more than one maſter; but two or three times every week he viſited the knight, and told him all the news of the countries he had frequented, which he wrote immediately to the count de Foix, who was much delighted therewith, as there is not a lord in the world more eager after news from foreign parts than he is. Once, when the lord de Coraſſe was in converſation on this ſubject with the count de Foix, the count ſaid, 'Lord de Coraſſe, have you never yet ſeen your meſſenger?' 'No, by my faith, never; nor have I ever preſſed him on this matter.' 'I wonder at that,' replied the count; 'for had he been ſo much attached to me, I ſhould have begged of him to have ſhewn himſelf in his own proper form; and I entreat you will do ſo, that you may tell how he is made, and what he is like. You have ſaid, that he ſpeaks Gaſcon as well as you or I do.' 'By my faith,' ſaid the lord de Coraſſe, 'he converſes juſt as well and as properly; and, ſince you requeſt it, I will do all I can to ſee him.'

'It fell out, when the lord de Coraſſe, as uſual, was in bed with his lady (who was now accuſtomed to hear Orthon without being frightened), Orthon arrived, and ſhook the pillow of the knight, who was aſleep. On waking, he aſked who was there: Orthon replied, 'It is I.' 'And where doſt thou come from?' 'I come from Prague in Bohemia.' 'How far is it hence?' 'Sixty days journey,' replied Orthon. 'And haſt thou returned thence in ſo ſhort a time?' 'Yes, as may God help me: I travel

I travel as faſt as the wind, or faſter.' 'What, haſt thou got wings?' 'Oh no.' 'How then canſt thou fly ſo faſt?' 'That is no buſineſs of yours.' 'No!' ſaid the knight. 'I ſhould like exceedingly to ſee what form thou haſt, and how thou art made.' 'That does not concern you to know,' replied Orthon: 'be ſatisfied that you hear me, and that I bring you intelligence you may depend on.' 'By God,' ſaid the lord de Coraſſe, 'I ſhould love thee better, if I had ſeen thee.' 'Well,' replied Orthon, 'ſince you have ſuch a deſire, the firſt thing you ſhall ſee to-morrow morning, in quitting your bed, ſhall be myſelf.' 'I am ſatisfied,' ſaid the knight; 'you may now depart: I give thee thy liberty for this night.'

'When morning came, the knight aroſe; but his lady was ſo much frightened ſhe pretended to be ſick, and ſaid ſhe would not leave her bed the whole day. The lord de Coraſſe willed it otherwiſe. 'Sir,' ſaid ſhe, 'if I do get up, I ſhall ſee Orthon; and, if it pleaſe God, I would neither ſee nor meet him.' 'Well,' replied the knight, 'I am determined to ſee him; and, leaping out of his bed, he ſeated himſelf on the bed-ſtead, thinking he ſhould ſee Orthon in his own ſhape; but he ſaw nothing that could induce him to ſay he had ſeen him. When the enſuing night arrived, and the lord de Coraſſe was in bed, Orthan came and began to talk in his uſual manner. 'Go,' ſaid the knight: 'thou art a liar: thou oughteſt to have ſhewn thyſelf to me this morning, and haſt not done ſo.' 'No!' replied Orthon, 'but I have.'

have.' 'I ſay no.' 'And did you ſee nothing at all when you leaped out of bed?' The lord de Coraſſe was ſilent, and, having conſidered awhile, ſaid, 'Yes: when ſitting on my bedſide, and thinking of thee, I ſaw two ſtraws which were turning and playing together on the floor.' 'That was myſelf,' replied Orthon, 'for I had taken that form.' The lord de Coraſſe ſaid, 'That will not ſatisfy me: I beg of thee to aſſume ſome other ſhape, ſo that I may ſee thee and know thee.' Orthon anſwered, 'You aſk ſo much that you will ruin me and force me away from you, for your requeſts are too great.' 'You ſhall not quit me,' ſaid the lord de Coraſſe: 'if I had once ſeen thee, I ſhould not again wiſh it.' 'Well,' replied Orthon, 'you ſhall ſee me to-morrow, if you pay attention to the firſt thing you obſerve when you leave your chamber.' 'I am contented,' ſaid the knight: 'now go thy ways, for I want to ſleep.' Orthon departed. On the morrow, about the hour of eight, the knight had riſen and was dreſſed: on leaving his apartment, he went to a window, which looked into the court of the caſtle. Caſting his eyes about, the firſt thing he obſerved was an immenſely large ſow; but ſhe was ſo poor, ſhe ſeemed only ſkin and bone, with long hanging ears all ſpotted, and a ſharp-pointed lean ſnout. The lord de Coraſſe was diſguſted at ſuch a ſight, and, calling to his ſervants, ſaid, 'Let the dogs looſe quickly, for I will have that ſow killed and devoured.' The ſervants haſtened to open the kennel, and to ſet the hounds on the ſow, who uttered a loud

a loud cry and looked up at the lord de Coraſſe, leaning on the balcony of his window, and was never ſeen afterwards; for ſhe vaniſhed, and no one ever knew what became of her.

'The knight returned quite penſive to his chamber, for he then recollected what Orthon had told him, and ſaid, 'I believe I have ſeen my meſſenger Orthon, and repent having ſet my hounds on him, for perhaps I may never ſee him more: he frequently told me, that if I ever angered him, I ſhould loſe him.' He kept his word, for never did he return to the hôtel de Coraſſe, and the knight died the following year.' Thus have I related to you the hiſtory of Orthon, and how for a time he ſupplied the lord de Coraſſe with intelligence.' 'That is true,' ſaid I to the ſquire; 'but with what intent have you told it? Does the count de Foix make uſe of ſuch a meſſenger?' 'In good truth, that is the real opinion of ſeveral of the inhabitants of Béarn; for there is nothing done in this country or elſewhere but what he inſtantly knows, when he ſets his heart on it, even when it is the leaſt ſuſpected. Thus it was reſpecting the intelligence he told us of our good knights and ſquires, who had fallen in Portugal. The reputation and belief of his poſſeſſing this knowledge is of great ſervice to him, for there would not be loſt a gold or ſilver ſpoon, or any thing of leſs value, in this country, without his inſtantly knowing of it.' I then took my leave of the ſquire, and joined other company, with whom I chatted and amuſed myſelf. However, I kept in my memory every particular

particular of the tale he had told me, as is now apparent. I will leave for a while the affairs of Spain and Portugal, and ſpeak of thoſe of Brittany, Languedoc and France.

CHAP. XLI.

SIEGE IS LAID TO BREST.—ST. FORGET AND SEVERAL OTHER ENGLISH GARRISONS IN THE ENVIRONS OF TOULOUSE ARE RECOVERED BY THE FRENCH.

DURING the time theſe matters were paſſing in Caſtille and in diſtant countries, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, conſtable of France, ordered a block-houſe to be built before the caſtle of Breſt in Brittany, which the Engliſh held, and had done ſo for a conſiderable time, and would not quit it, neither for the king of France nor for the duke of Brittany, to whom it belonged. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, and the king's council, had frequently written on this ſubject to the duke of Brittany; for at that time, as you know, the young king of France was under the government of his uncles. They had entreated the duke of Brittany to exert himſelf to conquer the caſtle of Breſt, which being held by the Engliſh was much to his diſcredit. The duke, in compliance with their

their entreaties, as well as knowing himſelf to be the lord of Breſt, had once beſieged it, but had not puſhed it forward: when he marched away, he ſaid nothing could be done; at which ſeveral knights and ſquires of Brittany murmured behind his back, ſaying that he feigned and diſſembled, as thoſe who held it were his great friends, and that he would not, on any account, wiſh it even in his own poſſeſſion, nor in that of the king of France: for, if the French had it, he would not be the maſter, but be much weakened by it; and, as long as the Engliſh held it, the French would not dare to anger him.

The conſtable of France, having conſidered the whole buſineſs, thought that, if the duke of Brittany were indifferent as to the recovering the town and caſtle of Breſt from the hands of the enemies of France, it would be diſhonourable to him and to the nobles of Brittany. He therefore ordered it to be beſieged, and ſent thither great numbers of knights and ſquires, under the command of the lord de Maleſtroit, the viſcount de la Belliere, Morfonace, and the lord de Rochedertien.

Theſe four valiant men laid their ſiege as near to Breſt as was poſſible, and erected a large and fair blockhouſe of wood, ſurrounding alſo the place with paliſadoes and walls, ſo that the garriſon was ſhut up from all communication but by ſea: on that ſide, it was not poſſible for them to ſurround them. There were frequent ſkirmiſhes before Breſt; for thoſe companions who were fond of arms advanced gaily to the barriers, where

where they called out the garriſon and fought with them until ſome were killed or wounded, and then they retired: ſcarcely a day paſſed without ſome warlike deeds being done.

At this period, there was in the Toulouſain a valiant knight from France, called ſir Walter de Paſſac: he was an expert captain and excellent man at arms, and born in Berry on the borders of Limouſin. Before his arrival, ſir Hugh de Froideville, ſénéſchal of Toulouſe, and ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, ſénéſchal of Carcaſſone, had written to the king and council the ſtate of Toulouſe and Rabaſtens *; that ſeveral gallant companions from the garriſons of Lourde and châtel Cuillet had made war ſucceſsfully for the Engliſh; and having poſſeſſion of Saint Forget, la Baſſere †, le Meſnil, Pomperon, Convalle, Rochefort, Jullians ‡, Navarêt, and ſome other forts, they had ſurrounded the good city of Toulouſe, ſo that the inhabitants could not quit it, nor the farmers labour their vineyards or gardens but with great riſk, for there was neither truce nor any compoſition entered into between them. They were commanded by an able man from Biſcay, called Eſpaignolet, who performed wonders, and took by ſcalado the caſtle of Ermaille, whilſt its maſter, ſir Raymond, was abſent at Toulouſe, and kept poſſeſſion for upwards of one year. During this time, he dug a

* Rabaſtens,—a town of upper Languedoc, nine leagues from Toulouſe.

† La Baſſere,—a village near Tarbes.

‡ Jullians,— a village near Tarbes.

mine that, after paſſing under the apartments, opened to the fields, which, when finiſhed, was ſo well covered that no one would imagine there was a ſubterraneous paſſage under the caſtle. When about this, the lord of Ermaille was treating with Eſpaignolet reſpecting the ſum for which he would ſurrender to him his caſtle; and, on the mine being completed, he yielded the caſtle to ſir Raymond for two thouſand francs, who, having again poſſeſſion, had it repaired and ſtrengthened. Not fifteen days paſſed, before Eſpaignolet advanced with his men to the mouth of this mine, which they entered about midnight, gained the caſtle and took the knight in his bed, whom he again ranſomed for two thouſand francs, and then allowed him to depart; but Eſpaignolet kept poſſeſſion of the caſtle, which he ſtrongly garriſoned, and much haraſſed the country from thence with others of his companions.

For theſe and ſuch like cauſes was ſir Walter de Paſſac ſent into Languedoc, with full powers over all the troops in that diſtrict, and to free the country from theſe pillagers and robbers. Having ſent letters to ſir Roger d'Eſpaign and ſir Hugh de Froideville, and other leaders, they came to ſerve under him with all their men. Sir Roger brought ſixty lances and one hundred men with ſhields; and the ſénéſchal of Rouergue, with ſir Hugh de Froideville, joined him with as many, if not more. When they were all aſſembled, they amounted to four hundred ſpears, and upwards of one thouſand armed with ſhields, including luſty varlets.

The

The ſon of the lord d'Eſterach was there, with a handſome company; and alſo the lord de Barbaſan, ſir Benedict de Faignolles, and William Conderom, a Breton, with his rout. They marched from Toulouſe ſtraight to St. Forget, where they halted. It was then commanded by a Béarnois, called le bourg de Tailleſac, a grand marauder. When theſe lords had drawn up their troops, the attack commenced, and the croſs-bowmen ſhot ſo briſkly, ſcarcely any of the garriſon dared ſhew themſelves in its defence for fear of the arrows; but the French did not gain it at this firſt aſſault. In the evening, they retired, to repoſe and refreſh themſelves, as they had brought plenty of every thing with them.

On the morrow, the trumpets ſounded for a renewal of the attack, when the lords, with their men, gallantly marched to the foot of the ditches. Whoever had ſeen them thus advancing, their heads covered with ſhields, with their lances meaſuring the depth of the water in the ditches, would have had much pleaſure, When the firſt ranks had paſſed through, the others did not delay following, or they would have been greatly blamed for remaining behind. This ſecond party carried pick-axes and iron crows to batter the walls; and, in doing ſo, they faſtened their ſhields on their heads to ward off the ſtones and other things that were thrown at them from the battlements: but they ſuffered little from this, as the croſs bows poſted on the banks by their alertneſs in ſhooting prevented many from appearing. They ſhot ſo well

as hardly ever to miſs what they aimed at; and ſeveral on the walls were mortally ſtruck on their heads by the ſmall bolts, which cauſed many in the garriſon to dread their blows.

The attack was ſo long and ſucceſsfully continued that a large breach was made in the wall. This alarmed thoſe within, who offered to ſurrender on having their lives ſpared; but they were not liſtened to, and fell into ſuch good hands that every one was put to death, for ſir Walter had ordered no quarter to be given.

Thus did the barons and knights of France regain the caſtle of St. Forget, which ſir Walter gave up to its proper owner, who had loſt it laſt year from neglect of well guarding it, as ſeveral other caſtles in France had been formerly loſt in like manner. When the knight was repoſſeſſed of his caſtle, he had it repaired where wanted; for the French had done much damage by their attack.

The French then marched to the caſtle of la Baſſere, of which Ernauton de Batefol was captain. He had ſtrongly fortified it, in expectation of the viſit the French intended him. On their arrival, they reconnoitred it on all ſides, to ſee where they could the better make their attack, and with the leaſt loſs to their men: having carefully examined it, they poſted themſelves oppoſite to the weakeſt part. The croſs-bowmen were ordered to advance before thoſe intended for the aſſault, and they did their duty ſo well that few dared to appear on the battlements. Ernauton de Batefol was at the gate where the attack was

the

the ſharpeſt, performing ſuch wonders in arms that the French knights cried out,—'Here is a ſquire of great valour, who becomes his arms well, and makes excellent uſe of them: it would not be amiſs to treat with him to ſurrender the caſtle, and ſeek his fortune elſewhere: let him be informed, that if ſir Walter de Paſſac conquer it by ſtorm, no power on earth can ſave him; for he has ſworn to put to death, or have hanged, all whom he may find in any caſtle or fort. The ſénéſchal de Toulouſe then charged a ſquire from Gaſcony, named William Aliedel, who was well acquainted with Ernauton, they having formerly borne arms together, to talk with him on the ſubject. He willingly undertook it; for he would have been very ſorry if Ernauton had ſuffered loſs of honour or death, as other things could be remedied.

William ſtepped forward, and made ſigns to Ernauton that he wanted to ſpeak to him on what nearly concerned him, to which his friend aſſented; and the aſſault was at that place diſcontinued, though not elſewhere. 'Ernauton,' ſaid William, 'you are riſking too much: our leaders have compaſſion on you, and ſend me to tell you, that ſhould you be taken, ſir Walter de Paſſac has ſtrictly ordered you to be inſtantly put to death, as he has done to thoſe who were in St. Forget. It is, therefore, much better for you to ſurrender the place, as I would adviſe, than to wait the event; for I can aſſure you, we ſhall not depart before we be maſters of it.' 'I know very well,' re-

plied Ernauton, 'that although you now bear arms againſt me, you would never adviſe any thing diſgraceful to my honour; but if I do ſurrender, all who are with me muſt be ſaved likewiſe; and we muſt carry away with us as much as we can, excepting the proviſions, and be conducted in ſafety to the caſtle of Lourde.' 'I am not commiſſioned,' anſwered William, 'to go ſo far, but I will cheerfully mention it to my commanders.' On this, he returned to the ſénéſchal of Toulouſe, and related what you have heard. Sir Hugh de Froideville ſaid, 'Let us go and ſpeak with ſir Walter; for I know not what his intentions may be, although I have advanced ſo far in the treaty; but I fancy we ſhall make him agree to it.'

When they came to ſir Walter, they found him engaged in aſſaulting another part of the caſtle: the ſénéſchal addreſſed him,—'Sir Walter, I have opened a treaty with the captain of the caſtle, who is willing to ſurrender the place as it is, on condition that himſelf and garriſon be ſpared and eſcorted to Lourde, and that they carry away every thing but the proviſion: now, what do you ſay to this? We ſhould loſe more, if any of our knights and ſquires were killed by arrows or ſtones; and you would have more ſorrow than profit, even ſhould you win it and put all to death; but that is not yet done: it will coſt us many lives; for it will not be ſo eaſily conquered as St. Forget.' 'That is true,' added the ſénéſchal of Carcaſſone, who was preſent: 'it is impoſſible but in ſuch attacks there

there muſt be many killed and wounded.' Sir Walter de Paſſac then ſaid,—'I am willing to conſent: order the attacks to ceaſe. We have ſtill farther to march; and, by little and little, we ſhall gain all theſe caſtles from the pillagers: if they eſcape from us cheaply at this moment, they will fall into our hands again, ſome time hence, when they ſhall pay for all. Ill deeds bring the doers to an ill end. I have hanged and drowned, in my time, more than five hundred ſuch ſcoundrels, and theſe will at laſt come to the ſame fate.'

William Aliedel and others then returned to the gate, where Ernauton was waiting for them, to conclude the treaty. 'By my troth, Ernauton,' ſaid William, 'you and your companions ought to give many thanks to God and to ſir Hugh de Froideville, for he has obtained for you your own terms of ſurrender. You and your garriſon may depart hence, taking with you all you are able to carry, and will be eſcorted to Lourde.' 'I am ſatisfied,' replied Ernauton, 'ſince it cannot be otherwiſe; but know, William, that I am very ſorry to quit my caſtle, which has been of infinite ſervice to me ſince my capture at the bridge of Tournay, below Mauvoiſin, by the bourg d'Eſpaign, who made me pay two thouſand francs for my ranſom: indeed, to ſay the truth, I have more than repaid myſelf the loſs ſince I have been here. I have been ſo long in this part of the country that I like it well; and whenever I wiſhed to make an excurſion, I always was fortunate in meeting with

prey, that fell into my hands, from ſome merchant from Rabaſtens, Toulouſe, or Rodais.'

'Ernauton,' anſwered William, 'I readily believe you; but if you will turn to the French, I will obtain your pardon, and put a thouſand francs into your purſe beſides; and will pledge my honour that you be ſteady to the French intereſt, when once you have ſworn ſo to do.' 'Many thanks,' ſaid Ernauton; 'but I like not your party, and will remain firm to the Engliſh; for, as God may help me, I do not think I can ever be a good Frenchman. Return now to your army, and ſay that we ſhall employ this day in packing up; but we will ſurrender the place to-morrow and depart: you will therefore order an eſcort to conduct us to Lourde.'

The attacks on la Beſſere had ceaſed, and the French retired to their quarters, where they refreſhed themſelves at their eaſe, for they had wherewithal ſo to do. On the morrow, by eight o'clock, the army was drawn out, and thoſe who were to eſcort the garriſon ſelected. Sir Walter then ſent the ſénéſchal of Toulouſe to take poſſeſſion of the caſtle, where he found Ernauton with his companions and their baggage packed, and all ready to ſet out. He ordered a knight of Lourde, called ſir Mouvant de Salenges, to eſcort them, which he undertook to do ſafely; and I believe he kept his word. This caſtle was given to Bertrand de Monteſquieu, a ſquire of that country, to guard, as well as the territory adjacent.

The army then marched away, and came before a caſtle

a caſtle called Pulpiron: it was in the poſſeſſion of marauders, under the command of Angerot and le petit Meſchin, who had done much damage to the country round about.

Sir Walter de Paſſac had ſworn by the ſoul of his father, that in return for the miſchiefs they had done, he would never grant them mercy, but hang them the moment he could lay hands on them. The army laid ſiege to this caſtle, which is ſeated on a rock, whence the view is extenſive and pleaſant. On forming the ſiege, ſir Walter again ſwore, he would never depart until he had gained it, and taken all within, who ſhould not be allowed to ſurrender and go away, if they even wiſhed it. Many attacks were made; but the French failed in all, as it was ably defended.

'I know not,' ſaid ſir Walter, 'how things may turn out: the king of France is rich enough to keep up this ſiege, and, if I remain here a whole year, I will not leave it until I be the maſter.' What he had ſaid was attended to, and all things neceſſary for a long ſiege were done.

The two captains in the caſtle, ſeeing the French were determined not to depart without having gained it, coſt what it would, began to feel alarmed, and thought it adviſable to leave it, whether their enemies would or not. They could eaſily do ſo at their pleaſure, for there was a ſubterraneous paſſage that had an outlet half a league from the caſtle, of which the French had not any ſuſpicion. When Angerot noticed how the beſiegers had poſted themſelves, and ſeemed reſolved

to

to have them by famine or otherwiſe, he ſaid to his companions,—'Gentlemen, I find the lord de Paſſac hates us mortally, and that by a blockade he will ſtarve us. He may eaſily do it, if he erect a ſmall fort and garriſon it with only one hundred lances, for we ſhall then be prevented quitting the caſtle. I therefore propoſe, that we this night pack up all we can carry, and ſally through the mine, which is wide enough, and opens into a ſmall wood hard by. We ſhall thus be out of all danger before any one know what is become of us, for there is not one man in the army that is acquainted with this mine.' His propoſal was agreed to; and that ſame night, having packed up their all, they entered the ſubterranean paſſage with lighted torches, and iſſued out in a wood half a league from the caſtle.

There were thoſe with them able to conduct them through bye roads to other fortreſſes in Limouſin and Rouergue. Some however, the moment they were out of danger, departed different ways, ſaying they would not carry on the war longer. Angerot, with four others, went to a caſtle in Perigord, called Mont Royal, where the lord of it received them handſomely; for he and his dependants were entirely Engliſh, and would never turn French when others did ſo, and many were of his way of thinking.

Thus did the garriſon of Pulpiron eſcape, not leaving a ſingle varlet behind; and, before it was known to the army, they had arrived at the different places whither they intended going.

On

On the third day after the garriſon were gone away, the commanders of the army ordered an aſſault. They had made a large machine, four ſtories high, and each ſtory would hold twenty croſs-bows.

When this machine was completed, which they called a Paſſavant, it was moved to what they thought the weakeſt place of the walls, and Genoeſe croſs-bowmen were poſted in it. The croſs-bows began ſhooting, but as no one appeared on the battlements, they imagined the caſtle was empty, and ceaſed to ſhoot, for they were unwilling to loſe their bolts and arrows. They left the machine, and ſurpriſed their captains by their ſudden return. They ſaid,—'My lords, the garriſon have certainly quitted the caſtle; for there is not a man within it.' 'How can you know this?' replied ſir Walter. 'We know, that notwithſtanding our ſhooting, not one ſhewed himſelf.' Ladders were upon this ordered to be affixed to the walls, and luſty varlets, proper for the buſineſs, to aſcend them. They mounted without oppoſition, for the caſtle was empty, and having paſſed the walls and aſcended into the court, they found near the gate a large bunch of keys, among which was that of the gate. They, with ſome difficulty, opened it and the barriers.

The lords were much ſurpriſed; but more eſpecially ſir Walter de Paſſac, who thought it muſt have been by enchantment they had been able thus to eſcape, and aſked his knights how it could have been

been done. The ſénéſchal of Touloufe replied,—'That if they were gone, it muſt have been through ſome ſubterraneous paſſage.' The caſtle was ſearched, and this paſſage diſcovered in the cellars, with the door wide open. The lords would examine it; and ſir Walter ſaid to the ſénéſchal of Touloufe,—'Did not you know of this paſſage, ſir Hugh?' 'By my faith,' he replied, 'I certainly have heard that ſuch a thing was in this caſtle; but I forgot it, and never imagined they would thus have made uſe of it.' 'But in God's name they have done ſo,' anſwered ſir Walter, 'as is very clear. Have all the caſtles in this country ſimilar mines and paſſages?' 'Sir,' ſaid ſir Hugh, 'there are many caſtles which have been built in the ſame manner, particularly all thoſe that belonged to Reginald de Montauban; for when he waged war againſt king Charlemagne of France, he had them ſo well built, by the advice of Maugis his couſin, that when the king was beſieging them with his whole power, and reſiſtance would have been vain, they made uſe of their tunnels, and departed without taking leave.'

'By my troth,' ſaid ſir Walter, 'I admire the thought. I know not if any king, duke or neighbour I have, will make war upon me; but on my return home I will have inſtantly built, at my caſtle of Paſſac, juſt ſuch a paſſage.'

Here ended this converſation. They took poſſeſſion of the caſtle, and, having placed a good garriſon therein to guard it, they began their march towards

towards the town and caſtle of Convalle *, in which were Eſpaignolet de Papercau, a Biſcayan, and a number of pillagers.

CHAP. XLII.

THE CASTLE OF CONVALLE IS STORMED BY THE FRENCH.—SOME OTHER FORTRESSES TURN TO THE FRENCH INTEREST.

SIR Walter de Paſſac, with his army, came before Convalle, and ſurrounded it on all ſides. Having called to him the ſénéſchal of Toulouſe, he ſaid,—'Was this one of ſir Reginald de Montauban's 'caſtles?' He anſwered, 'that it was one.' 'Then it has a ſubterraneous paſſage like his others.' 'Aye, in God's name, truly there is one; for by means of this paſſage did Eſpaignolet take the caſtle a ſecond time and the lord within it.' 'Order the knight to whom it belongs, and who is with us, to come hither; for it will be proper,' added ſir Walter, 'that we firſt get information from him.'

On ſir Raymond de Convalle appearing, he was aſked concerning the ſtrength of the place, and if

* This place is called before Ermaille. Sala calls it Crimaille,—*Marginal note, D. Sauvage.*

there

there were a ſubterraneous paſſage like that of la Baſſere. He replied, 'that it was by ſuch means he had been captured; that he had long ago ſtopped it up as uſeleſs; but theſe robbers who keep poſſeſſion of my caſtle have repaired it, and entered the caſtle through it.' 'And do you know its iſſue?' 'Yes, my lord: it opens into a wood not far hence.' 'It is well, by God,' ſaid ſir Walter, and was then ſilent. At the end of four days, ſir Walter was conducted by ſir Raymond to the opening of the mine in the wood, accompanied by two hundred of the country peaſants well armed. When arrived at the entrance, he had all the earth and thorns cleared away from before it, and a number of torches lighted, and ſaid to thoſe with him,— 'Enter this paſſage, which will lead you to the hall of the caſtle: when you come to the door, break it open; for you are ſufficiently ſtrong to do it, and to combat all you ſhall find in the caſtle.' They replied, 'they would cheerfully obey.'

Having entered the paſſage, they came to the ſteps that lead to the door of the hall, and began to make uſe of their axes and hammers in battering the door. As it was about night-fall, the garriſon kept a good watch, and heard them working in the mine to enter the caſtle. They inſtantly informed Eſpaignolet of it: he was going to bed, but he adviſed them to place benches, ſtones and other things in the door-way, to embarraſs it ſo much that they might not enter. This was inſtantly done, and no better defence could have been made; for although their opponents had cut the

the door into a thouſand pieces, they found their difficulties ſo increaſe upon them, they gave it up, and returned about midnight to tell their lords, how the garriſon, having heard them, had blocked up the paſſage, making it impoſſible to gain entry by that way. Upon this the paſſavant was ordered from la Baſſere, which being taken to pieces, was brought on carts to Convalle, and remounted on its wheels, fit for immediate ſervice.

When all was ready, ſir Walter de Paſſac, impatient to win this caſtle, ordered his trumpets to ſound, and the hoſt to arm and advance in proper array. The ſénéſchal of Toulouſe was on one ſide, with all his ſeneſchalſhip; on the oppoſite ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, in like manner, with his men from Carcaſſone: there were the lord de Barbazan, ſir Benedict de Faignolles, the lord de Benoch, the ſon of the count d'Eſtarac, ſir Raymond de l'Iſle, and the knights and ſquires of the country, each with his company, drawn up in good array.

The attack and defence now ſeriouſly commenced: the garriſon defended themſelves valiantly: indeed it behoved them ſo to do, for they found themſelves hard preſſed; and knowing that ſir Walter would ſhow them no mercy, if taken, they were reſolved to ſell their lives as dearly as poſſible. The Genoſe croſs-bows behaved well, and ſhot ſo truly with their bolts, that the boldeſt was afraid of them; for whomſoever they ſtruck on the head, it was over with him.

Sir Walter de Paſſac was in the front acting wonders in arms, and crying out,—'How, my lords, ſhall

ſhall ſuch a ſtinking crew keep us here all the day? If they were good men at arms, I ſhould not wonder; for in them is much more vigour than in ſuch fellows as we are attacking: it is my intention to dine in the caſtle, and it will depend on you that I accompliſh my purpoſe.' Thoſe who were deſirous to obtain his favour advanced eagerly to the attack, and fixed ſeveral ladders to the walls, near where the large machine was placed, which they mounted under protection of the croſs-bows, who prevented the garriſon frow ſhowing themſelves.

The French thus entered the caſtle of Convalle ſword in hand: they purſued their enemies, killing great numbers, and the remainder they made priſoners. Sir Walter, having entered by the gates, was aſked what he would have done with the priſoners. 'By St. George, I will they be all hanged.' His orders were inſtantly obeyed, and Eſpaignolet ſuffered the firſt. The lords dined in the caſtle, and the men at arms in the town, where they remained the whole day. Sir Walter gave to the lord de Convalle his town and caſtle, and then made preparations to continue his march.

After the conqueſt of Convalle, the army marched for a fort, called Maſtulle, which with the others had done much miſchief to the country. On their arrival, they began an attack, which was bravely reſiſted at firſt; but it laſted not long, for the place was taken by ſtorm, and all within ſlain or hanged.

When thoſe of Roix, Rochefort, and other caſtles in poſſeſſion of theſe pillagers, heard that

ſir

ſir Walter de Paſſac was on his march, and that, whatever places he took, he had hanged the garriſons, they were doubtful whether they might not come to the ſame end, and, in conſequence, left their forts in the night-time, by ſubterranean paſſages or otherwiſe; for Roix and Rochefort have mines, having formerly belonged to ſir Reginald de Montauban, ſo that when the French arrived they found them both empty. Having taken poſſeſſion, they re-garriſoned and re-victualled them, and then marched towards Toulouſe to enter Bigorre, for there were in that country two caſtles on the borders of Tarbes, called Jullians and Nazareth *, held by theſe marauders, who much haraſſed Tarbes and its neighbourhood, as well as the territory of the lord d'Anchin.

Sir Walter de Paſſac and his army, having refreſhed themſelves in Toulouſe, took the road towards Bigorre, and ſeated themſelves before Jullians, ſaying they would never depart until they had delivered the country from its oppreſſors. Sir Walter was joined by the ſénéſchal of Donnezan †, who repreſented the count de Foix, according to the ſummons of ſir Walter to come to his aid in driving the pillagers out of the country; for they made, when opportunity offered, as free with the country

* Nazareth,—a ſmall town in the Condomois, dioceſe of Condom.

† Donnezan,—a ſmall country in the government of Foix, contiguous to Catalonia, about three miles ſquare. Querigut is the chief place.

of Donnezan as they did elſewhere. It was for this reaſon the ſénéſchal had come, and with the approbation of the count, otherwiſe he would not have dared to have done it.

They were fifteen days before they could gain the caſtle of Jullians, for it was ſtrong, and the captain a Gaſcon ſquire, called Bruyer de Brunemote, of great ſkill and valour. He had quitted la Baſſere in the manner before mentioned; and at laſt, finding they could not take it by ſtorm, they conſented to a capitulation, agreeing to ſpare the lives of the garriſon and to conduct them to Lourde. A ſquire, called Bertrand de Montdighen, eſcorted them thither.

When the French had poſſeſſion of the caſtle of Jullians, they debated whether to keep or to raze it: at laſt they determined to demoliſh it on account of its vicinity to Lourde, for that garriſon, the men being traitors, might, after they had left it, regain poſſeſſion by ſtratagem or open force. It was therefore razed; and the ſtones to this day remain in heaps, without the expectation of its being rebuilt.

The army then came before Nazareth, a ſtrong place, of which ſome adventurous companions had kept poſſeſſion for more than a year. When they heard that thoſe of Jullians had retreated, they alſo withdrew, having obtained a paſſport, and went to Lourde, where they knew they would not ſeek them, unleſs they wiſhed to loſe their labour, for Lourde is ſo ſtrong it is impoſſible to be conquered. The French, finding Nazareth empty,

razed

razed it to the ground, to the great joy of the inhabitants of Tarbes, as they had received many injuries from it. They then marched to the caſtle of Auch, in Bigorre, ſituated among the mountains on the borders of Béarn.

They remained there about fifteen days, but only conquered the lower court with all the horſes within it, though very many attacks were made: the great tower, being ſeated on a high rock, they could not win, for it is impregnable. The lords ſeeing they were labouring in vain, and that William Morenton, the captain, would neither ſurrender nor liſten to any treaty whatever, marched away, and returned to Tarbes. Sir Walter de Paſſac then diſbanded his army, with liberty for them to return to their homes. Thoſe who had ſerved in this army received their pay in money or in promiſſory notes, at their option: he himſelf retired to recruit himſelf at Carcaſſone and in that neighbourhood.

During his reſidence at Carcaſſone, he received orders from the king of France to go to Bouteville in Saintonge, on the borders of Poitou and the Bordelois, which was under the command of a Gaſcon called Sainte-Foy, as it had been reported that ſir John Harpedane, ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux, was collecting a large force at Libourne on the Dordogne, to march thither and attack ſuch forts as the Poitevins and Saintongers had raiſed before it. Sir Walter, as was natural, obeyed the king's orders, and took with him ſixty lances and one hundred Genoeſe croſs-bows. On leaving Carcaſ-

ſone, he marched through Rouergue and Agen, ſkirted Perigord, and arrived at Bouteville, where he found the ſénéſchals of la Rochelle, Poitou, Perigord and Agen, with numbers of men at arms.

CHAP. XLIII.

A SHORT DIGRESSION ON THE MANNERS OF THE ENGLISH AND GASCONS IN THE TIME OF FROISSART.

FOREIGN countries may well wonder at the noble realm of France, how finely it is ſituated, and what numbers of cities, towns and caſtles it poſſeſſes, as well in the diſtant parts as in the heart of the country. There are in travelling from Toulouſe to Bordeaux, the underneath rich towns, ſituated on the Garonne, called Gironde at Bordeaux, Grenade, Verdun, St. Nicholas, Auvillas, Valence, Leirac, Agen, Porte St. Marie, Aguillon, Tonneins, Marmande, St. Baſile, la Réole, St. Macaire, Langon, Cadillac, Rions, Caſtres. Then aſcending the Dordogne, which falls into the Garonne, are the following caſtles: St. André, Libourne, Caſtillon, St. Foy, Bergerac, la Linde, Limeul, St. Cyprian, Dommes, Soulliac. Some of theſe being Engliſh and others French, carried on a war againſt each other: they would

would have it ſo; for the Gaſcons were never, for thirty years running, ſteadily attached to any one lord. True it is, that the whole of Gaſcony ſubmitted to king Edward and to his ſon the prince of Wales, but the country afterwards, as has been clearly ſhewn in this hiſtory, revolted from thoſe Engliſh maſters. King Charles, ſon to king John of France, gained by his wiſdom, prudence, kind treatment and great gifts, the affections of their principal barons, ſuch as the count d'Armagnac, the lord d'Albreth, and others, whom the prince of Wales loſt through his pride.

I, the author of this hiſtory, was at Bordeaux when the prince of Wales marched to Spain, and witneſſed the great haughtineſs of the Engliſh, who are affable to no other nation than their own; nor could any of the gentlemen of Gaſcony or Aquitaine, though they had ruined themſelves by their wars, obtain office or appointment in their own country; for the Engliſh ſaid they were neither on a level with them nor worthy of their ſociety, which made the Gaſcons very indignant, as they ſhewed on the firſt opportunity that preſented itſelf. It was on account of the harſhneſs of the prince's manners that the count d'Armagnac and the lord d'Albreth, with other knights and ſquires, turned to the French intereſt. King Philip of France, and the good John his ſon, had loſt Gaſcony by their overbearing pride; and in like manner did the prince. But king Charles, of happy memory, regained them by good humour, liberality and humility. In this manner the Gaſcons

love to be governed. King Charles, the more firmly to ſtrengthen the connection, married his ſiſter, the lady Iſabella de Bourbon, to the lord d'Albreth; by whom he had two fine children, which cauſes love to endure the longer.

True it is, that when I lived among theſe lords at Paris, I once heard the lord d'Albreth uſe an expreſſion that I noted down. I believe it may have been ſaid in joke: however, it contained, in my opinion, much truth and good ſenſe. A knight from Brittany, who had borne arms for him, inquired after his health, and how he managed to remain ſteady to the French: when he thus anſwered,—'Thank God, my health is very good; but I had more money at command, as well as my people, when I made war for the king of England, than I have now; for, whenever we took any excurſions in ſearch of adventures, we never failed meeting ſome rich merchants from Toulouſe, Condom, la Réole or Bergerac, whom we ſqueezed, which made us gay and debonair, but now all that is at an end.' The knight, on hearing this, burſt into laughter and replied, 'In truth, that is the life Gaſcons love: they willingly hurt their neighbour.' On hearing this, I concluded that the lord d'Albreth heartily repented his having turned to the French, in the ſame manner as the lord de Mucident, who, when made priſoner at Yurac, ſwore to the duke of Anjou, he would ſet out for Paris and become ever after a good Frenchman. He did go to Paris, where the king handſomely received him; but

but he was not treated to his ſatisfaction, ſo that he ſlunk away from the king, and left Paris without taking leave, to return to his own country, where he again became an Engliſhman, and broke all his engagements with the duke of Anjou.

The lords de Roſem, de Duras, de Langurant did the ſame.

Such are the Gaſcons: they are very unſteady, but they love the Engliſh in preference to the French, for the war againſt France is the moſt profitable; and this is the cauſe of their preference.

CHAP. XLIV.

THE ARRIVAL OF LEON, KING OF ARMENIA, IN FRANCE: ON WHICH OCCASION, FROISSART DESCRIBES THE STATE OF GENOA IN HIS TIME, AND RELATES THE DEATH OF THE KING OF CYPRUS.

ABOUT this period, Léon, king of Armenia*, arrived in France; not indeed with a king-like ſtate, but as one driven from his throne and kingdom,

* In tom. vii. p. 494, of the Fœdera, we find Richard II. had ſettled a penſion of 1000l. yearly on Léon, the Chriſtian king of Armenia, who had been driven from his kingdom by the Turks. In former reigns, there had been frequent collec-

kingdom, which had all been conquered from him by the Turks, except a caſtle, ſituated on the ſea-ſhore, called Courth*. This caſtle is the key or entrance into Alexandria and the territories of the ſultan. The Genoeſe carry their commerce every where, by means of the duties they pay, even to the farther India, and the realm of Preſter John†: they are univerſally well received on account of the gold, ſilver, and rich merchandiſe they bring from Alexandria, Cairo, Damaſcus, or from the Saracens. It is thus the world is ſupplied, for what is not in one country is in another: but all this is well known. The Genoeſe are the moſt adventurous navigators, and are much ſuperior to the Venetians as lords of the ſea, being more feared by the Saracens than any others, for they are excellent and determined ſeamen, and one Genoeſe galley would attack and probably conquer four galleys of the Saracens.

---

tions made in England, as well as elſewhere, for ſupporting thoſe Chriſtian kings againſt the Turkiſh power, which, however, at length ſwallowed them up.—*Anderſon's Hiſt. of Commerce*, &c. vol. i. p. 213.

The Grands Chroniques de France place the arrival of the king of Armenia in 1385.

* 'Whatever may be the name of this caſtle, and wherever ſituated, I have no doubt but thoſe who are acquainted with the two Armenias, will think what our author hereafter ſays very ſtrange. It is not for me to gainſay him: I am ſatisfied, if he be conſiſtent with himſelf.—*Marginal note by D. Sauvage.*

† The Dalai Lamas was formerly denominated Preſter John; and Thibet was the country of Preſter John.

If

If the Turks and Tartars have frequently hurt Chriſtendom, the Genoeſe felt it not; for, being maſters of the ſea, they could attack the infidels, and had always fifty galleys and large ſhips guarding the iſlands of Rhodes, Cyprus, and Candia, and the ſhores of Greece, as far as Turkey, where they poſſeſs the handſome town and caſtle of Pera, ſituated on the ſea-ſhore oppoſite to Conſtantinople, which is garriſoned at their expenſe, and ſupplied with proviſion and ſtores three or four times a year.

The Turks and Tartars have often attempted to win it, but have always failed, and loſt more than they gained; for Pera is ſeated on a rock, with only one entrance, and this the Genoeſe have well fortified. The Genoeſe have alſo Jaffa, which is a ſtrong place, profitable both to them and to all Chriſtendom; for, did they not poſſeſs Jaffa and Rhodes, the infidels would invade Naples and attack Gaietta and Rome: but the ſtrong garriſons of men at arms in theſe two places, and their galleys on the ſea, hold them in check.

Theſe reaſons prevented the infidels making any excurſions, except from Conſtantinople towards Hungary; but if that noble king of Cyprus, Peter de Luſignan, had longer lived, he would have found the ſultans and Turks more employment than they had met with ſince the days of Godfrey of Boulogne. Having conquered the cities of Alexandria and Satalia, the infidels, knowing his proweſs and enterpriſe, and fearful of further loſſes from him, bargained with his brother Jacquet to

have

have him put to death; who himſelf ſlew the gallant king in his bed*.

It was an infamous act thus to aſſaſſinate the valiant king of Cyprus, whoſe thoughts were ſolely occupied, day and night, on the means of conquering the holy land, and driving out of it the infidels.

Philip de Meſieres†, being chancellor to this king of Cyprus, had engraved on a monument he erected to him‡, in the chapter-houſe of the Celeſtins at Paris, as follows:

'Peter of Luſignan, fifteenth latin king of Jeruſalem, ſince Godfrey of Boulogne, and king of Cyprus, by his magnanimous proweſs and enterpriſe, conquered in battle, with an army ſupported at his own coſt, the cities of Alexandria in Egypt, Tripoli in Syria, Layas in Armenia, Satalia in Turkey, with ſeveral other cities and towns from the enemies of the faith of JESUS CHRIST.

'*Anima ejus requiescat in pace.*'

---

* He was aſſaſſinated by two lords of his country whom he had offended. Peter tarniſhed, by his debaucheries and cruelty, the laſt years of his life, and even the glory he had acquired by his former exploits.—*Art de Verifier les Dates.*

† For further particulars reſpecting Philip de Meſieres, ſee a memoir on this ſubject by M. le Bouef, in the 17th vol. of les Memoires de l'Academie des Inſcriptions, &c. and alſo the 1ſt vol. pp. 460, 461, of les Antiquités de Paris, par M. Sauval.

‡ i. e. The king of Cyprus. In the original it ſtands, ſiſt ecrite du dit roy de Cipre *ſur ſa tombe* qui eſt au chapitre des Celeſtins, &c.

When

When the Genoeſe, who were much attached to him, and with reaſon, heard of his melancholy end, they armed ſeven galleys, and ſent them to Famagouſta, which they took by ſtorm and Jacquet in it. They over-ran the greater part of the iſland, and would have deſtroyed the whole had they not feared the conſequences; but, the towns being ſtrong and on the frontiers of Turkey, they left them in the hands of the natives. They kept poſſeſſion of Famagouſta, where they amaſſed great wealth from its plunder, which they carried to Genoa, and alſo Jacquet, who had murdered his brother, that the ſtate might determine on his deſtiny.

The late king of Cyprus had a ſon, whoſe marriage the Genoeſe procured, after which they crowned him king*. Jacquet, though ſuffered to live,

* 'Peter II. or Petrin, aſcended the throne in 1372, when twelve years of age, under the regency of his uncles James and John, to the excluſion of his mother. The day of his coronation, there aroſe a diſpute between the bailiffs of Venice and the conſuls of Genoa for precedency; and, the court having declared in favour of the Venetians, the Genoeſe revenged themſelves for this affront, in 1373, by conquering the whole iſland. Only two places made any reſiſtance, Famagouſta and Chèrines. The firſt ſurrendered the 10th October, and was pillaged during three days: the ſecond ſubmitted about the middle of March following. The king was made priſoner, but recovered his liberty by the ceſſion of Famagouſta, and the promiſe of one million of ducats to the Genoeſe.

'In the year 1375, at the ſolicitation of his mother, he cauſed his uncle John to be aſſaſſinated in his preſence, to revenge

live, was closely confined in prison. They did not yield up Famagousta; but I am ignorant if they have it at this day. This king of Cyprus died in his bed, and without heirs, to the great grief of the Genoese. I know not who now reigns there; but, the year I was in Béarn, the lord de Valenchin, a knight of that country, told me the Genoese had a great share in its government, being masters of Famagousta, and that they had crowned Jacquet* king, in default of heirs. I know not how the devil he escaped from prison, nor out of the hands of the Genoese.

---

venge the death of his father, in which this prince had been a principal actor. Peter died on the 17th of October, 1382, aged twenty-six, without leaving any children by his queen, Valentine, daughter of Bernabo Visconti.'

* 'James I. constable of Cyprus, was a hostage at Genoa, when his nephew, Peter II. died. He was sent home at the demand of his countrymen, who crowned him king. He died in 1398, aged sixty-four, leaving children by Agnes of Bavaria, his queen, John, his successor to the throne of Cyprus; Hugh, cardinal archbishop of Nicosia; Philip, constable of Cyprus; Henry, prince of Galilee; Mary, married to Ladislaus, king of Naples; Isabella, married to Peter of Cyprus; Civa died unmarried, 1393.'—*Art de Verifier les Dates.*

CHAP. XLV.

THE KING OF ARMENIA RELATES MANY STORIES OF THE TURKS AND TARTARS.

THE king of Armenia, on his firſt arrival in France, was well entertained by the king and his lords, as was proper, for he had come from a far country. They gained from him information reſpecting Greece and Conſtantinople; for he was well queſtioned concerning the power of the Turks and Tartars, who had driven him out of his kingdom. To their queſtions he anſwered, that the cham of Tartary had always made war upon him, and had at laſt overpowered him. 'And this cham of Tartary, is he ſo powerful?' 'That he is indeed; for he has, with the aſſiſtance of the ſultan, conquered the emperor of Conſtantinople.' The lords then aſked if Conſtantinople were under the law of the Tartars. 'Oh no,' replied the king; 'the cham and ſultan having continued the war on Conſtantinople for a long time, it was at length agreed, (for otherwiſe the emperor would not have had peace) that the emperor of Conſtantinople, who was ſon of Hugh de Luſignan and Mary of Bourbon, ſhould give his ſon in marriage to the cham; but, notwithſtanding this union, he was to enjoy his own laws and privileges *.

He

* Froiſſart muſt have been miſinformed; for I ſee by Anderſon's Royal Genealogies, that John Paleologus muſt have been emperor of Conſtantinople at this time. He was routed by Cantacuzenus,

He was then aſked what the count Verd de Savoye had done with his gallant company of knights, ſquires and men at arms. He replied,— 'That when the count de Savoye had come to Hungary, he had carried his war as far as he could into Turkey, but had made no great progreſs into the country; that by his proweſs he had conquered the large town of Gallipoli and Limonia *: in the laſt, he left a ſufficiency of men to guard it, and, during the life of the king of Cyprus, he had always kept poſſeſſion of it.

'The moment the ſultan and cham of Tartary heard of the king's death, they were no longer afraid of the emperor of Conſtantinople, but raiſed an army of one hundred thouſand men, which they marched to Conſtantinople, and from thence laid ſiege to Gallipoli, took it by ſtorm, and ſlew all the Chriſtians within it. They made ſo deadly a war on the emperor, that he would have loſt every thing, if it had not been for the attachment the ſon of the cham had for his daughter, whom he afterwards married.

'This is a melancholy proſpect for the times to come; for the officers of the cham are already in Conſtantinople, and the Greeks only live there as it were by ſufferance from them, if, therefore, the

---

Cantacuzenus, and reſtored by the Genoeſe, to whom he gave Leſbos. He afterwards made peace with Cantacuzenus, made him his colleague, and married his daughter. He died 1386, having reigned forty-ſix years.

* Limonia is a ſmall iſland in the Archipelago, near Rhodes, between that iſland and Stapalia.

princes

princes of the weſt do not apply a ſpeedy remedy, the Turks will conquer all Greece, and bend it to their faith and laws. They already boaſt they will do ſo; and only laugh at the two popes, one at Rome and the other at Avignon, ſaying, 'The two gods of Chriſtendom are waging war againſt each other, by which their government is weakened and eaſier to be deſtroyed;' adding, 'that thoſe who ought to attend to this, act with ſuch indifference as to leave it to its own ruin.'

The king of Armenia was next aſked if the ſultan of Babylon and the cham of Tartary were the moſt powerful princes among the infidels, known to the Greeks, on the other ſide of the mountains. 'By no means,' he replied; 'for the Turks have always been looked to as the moſt wiſe and potent in war, as long as they are under an able chief; and this they have had for theſe laſt hundred years: although the cham compleatly governs the emperor of Conſtantinople, the Turkiſh chief keeps him alſo under ſubjection. The name of their preſent leader is Amurat, a prudent and able man both in arms and council, of whom, to ſay the truth, I have not any cauſe of complaint, for he has never injured me, having carried his war againſt the king of Hungary.' 'This Amurat, of whom you ſpeak, is he then of ſuch conſequence and power, and ſo much renowned and feared?' 'Yes,' replied the king of Armenia; 'and even more than I ſay; for, if the emperor of Conſtantinople and the king of Hungary are afraid of him, the caliph of Babylon and the cham of Tartary equally dread him. It

was

was ſuppoſed, indeed I have heard it from the Tartars, that the cham would have been more hard on the emperor of Conſtantinople and that country, had he not been afraid of Amurat. He is well acquainted with his jealous temper; and that, the inſtant he finds any one more powerful than himſelf, he never reſts until he ſhall have lowered him, and brought him under his ſubjection. It was the knowledge of this that prevented the cham from doing all he could have done againſt the emperor of the eaſt.'

'Does Amurat keep on foot a large army?' 'Yes; he was not thirty years of age before he had an army of one hundred thouſand horſe, which he always kept in the field, never quartering himſelf in any large town: beſides, he had ten thouſand Turks to ſerve and defend his perſon. Wherever he marches, he carries his father with him.' 'How old is he?' 'He is full ſixty years old, and his father is ninety. Amurat loves the French language, and thoſe who come from France: he ſays he would rather ſee the king of France and his ſtate than all the other potentates of the earth. He is greatly pleaſed when any one talks to him on this ſubject, and in favour of the lords of that country.'

'Why does Amurat remain on terms with the cham ſince he is ſo great a conqueror?' 'Becauſe the cham is afraid of him, and dares not make war: there are, alſo, certain ports and towns in Tartary which pay Amurat heavy duties: they are both of the ſame faith, and will not deſtroy their law. It has been a great matter of wonder to him that Chriſtians

Chriſtians ſhould make war on each other; and he has frequently had an inclination to enter Chriſtendom and conquer all before him. It would have been to my advantage if he had conquered me rather than the cham of Tartary.' They aſked the king of Armenia, why it would have been to his advantage; who replied,—'Amurat is a man of noble birth; and, were he thirty years younger, is formed to make great conqueſts wherever he ſhould pleaſe to march his army. When he conquers any country or town, he only inſiſts on the payment of a tax, leaving every one to follow his own religion; and he has never taken any man's inheritance from him, only requiring the ſupreme government of the country. It is for theſe reaſons, I ſay, that if he had conquered Armenia, inſtead of the Tartars, he would have left me my kingdom and religion, and remained in peace, on my acknowledging him as lord paramount, like other great barons on his frontiers, Greeks and Thracians, who thus acknowledge him, to free themſelves from all danger from the caliph of Babylon and the grand cham.' 'What are the names of theſe barons?' 'I will tell you,' anſwered the king: 'firſt, there is the lord de Satalia, the lord de la Palice and the lord de Haute-loge: theſe lords and their territories, by means of the tax they pay to Amurat, remain in peace, and there is neither Turk nor Tartar that dares injure them *.' They

* Sauvage, in a marginal note, ſays he would willingly tell where theſe territories are, but he has not been able to find them out, and thinks there muſt have been ſome miſtakes in their names.

then aſked the king, if Armenia was ſo totally loſt that there were no means of recovering it. 'Yes indeed,' he replied, 'unleſs a force ſuperior to the Turks and Tartars croſs the mountains and conquer Greece; for excepting the town of Courth, which is the entrance to my kingdom, and as yet remains to Chriſtendom, the infidels have poſſeſſeſſion of all the reſt; and, where the churches uſed to be, they have placed their idols and their mahomets.' 'And this town of Courth, is it ſtrong?' 'Aye, in God's name is it,' ſaid the king of Armenia: 'it is not to be taken unleſs by treachery or a very long ſiege; for it is ſituated in a dry ſpot on the ſea-ſhore, and between two rocks that cannot be approached. Should the Turks or Tartars gain it, and another good town not far diſtant, called Aldelphe*, all Greece muſt inevitably be loſt, and Hungary beſides in a ſhort time afterwards.' The king of Armenia was aſked if Hungary were on the frontiers of the Turks and Tartars. He ſaid it was; but nearer to the Turks and the territories of Amurat than to any other potentate. 'It is very extraordinary,' they replied, 'that Amurat, who is ſo valorous, and ſuch a conqueror, ſhould leave ſo near a neighbour in peace.' 'In God's name,' anſwered the king, 'he has not for ſome time even pretended to keep peace with Hungary, but made ſuch exertions, to the injury of that kingdom, that if an unfortunate accident had not befallen him, he would at this mo-

* Aldelphe. Q. If not meant for Delphos.

ment

ment have been far advanced in that country.' 'And what was that accident?' 'I will tell you,' replied the king.

CHAP. XLVI.*

CONTINUATION OF THE INTELLIGENCE WHICH THE KING OF ARMENIA RELATES TO THE BARONS OF FRANCE.

'WHEN Amurat ſaw that all the adjoining princes feared him, and that the ſhores of the ſea as far as Hungary bounded his dominion, he determined, as the kingdom of Hungary had, by king Frederick's death devolved on the queen, o declare war and conquer it. He therefore iſſued a particular ſummons to his vaſſals throughout Turkey, which being obeyed, he began his march and encamped in the plains of Satalia, between la Palice and Haute-loge, to ſtrike more fear into his enemies. It was his intention to enter the kingdom of Hungary, notwithſtanding it is a country incloſed by high rocks and mountains, which make

* Denys Sauvage complains that he cannot underſtand this chapter, nor the accounts from the Levant. There was not any king of Hungary at that period of the name of Frederick. Lewis the great reigned in 1342, and his daughter Mary ſucceeded him 1332. I find myſelf therefore obliged, like Sauvage, to leave it as I find it.

it ſo much the ſtronger. He ſent before him ambaſſadors and heralds, with a mule laden with a grain called millet, telling them 'Go you into Hungary, to the count de Lazaran *, whoſe territories lie among the mountains of Meleabre and Robée, through which we mean our army to paſs, and tell him we order and command, if he wiſh for himſelf and country to remain at peace, that he come and render us obedience, as he knows the lords de Satalia, de la Palice and de Haute-loge have done, and lay open his country for us to paſs through. If he ſhould refuſe to obey and appear rebellious, tell him from us, that we will pour into his territories, to deſtroy them, as many heads as you will ſhew you have grains of millet in your bags.' The ambaſſadors inſtantly departed on receiving theſe inſtructions, and arrived in the territory of the count de Lazaran in Hungary: they found him at one of his caſtles called Archiforme. He received the ambaſſadors from Amurat kindly, and handſomely entertained them, but was much

* Sauvage ſays in a note, 'According to Paul Jovius and father Anthony Geoffrai, his proper name was Lazarus, deſpot or lord of Servia, formerly called by the Romans Miſſia Inferior.'

This probably is the perſon called by Froiſſart the lord de Lazaran.

'Servia made formerly part of Mœſia, Illyria and Pannonia. At the fall of the roman empire, it belonged to the Servians who had come thither from Sarmatia in Aſia. It had afterwards its own deſpots, ſome of whom depended on the kings of Hungary The laſt had the misfortune to be captured in battle, and his army cut to pieces by Amurat I. in the 14th century.'

See Servie, in the Encyclopèdie, par Ordre des Matieres.

ſurpriſep

ſurpriſed when he ſaw the mule enter his court laden with he knew not what. He at firſt imagined it might be gold or precious ſtones, which Amurat had ſent to ſeduce him to his party, and to bribe him to allow a paſſage for his army through his country; but he had reſolved, that he would never ſubmit to be corrupted by any preſents whatever.

'When the ambaſſadors had their audience, they ſpoke as follows:—'Lord de Lazaran, we are ſent hither by that high and mighty prince, our redoubted ſovereign, Amurat, lord of Turkey and of all its dependancies; and we tell you from him, that he orders you to place yourſelf under his obedience in the ſame form and manner as you know the lords de Satalia, de la Palice and de Hauteloge have done, and that you delay not coming to perform your homage to him, in like manner as your neighbours have done. You will open your country to his army if you wiſh to have peace, and by ſo doing you will greatly enjoy his good favour: but, ſhould you refuſe and prove rebellious, we are commanded to ſay, that our ſovereign lord, Amurat, will pour more heads into your country, to deſtroy it, than there are grains of millet in this bag.' Having ſaid this, he opened the bag to ſhew him its contents. The lord de Lazaran was adviſed to return a temperate anſwer, and not diſcover his thoughts at once. He replied, 'Tie up your bag: I ſee what is within it, and I have heard from you what Amurat's inten-

tions are: within three days you ſhall have an anſwer, for theſe his demands require deliberation.' They replied, 'You ſay well;' and, in confidence of having an anſwer, they tarried three days. I will now tell you what the count de Lazaran did during theſe three days: he got collected and brought to his caſtle ten thouſand head of poultry of all ſorts, which he cauſed to be ſhut up without any food whatever. On the day appointed for the ambaſſadors to receive their anſwer, he conducted them to a gallery which overlooked a court, bidding them lean over the rail, and, before he gave them his anſwer, he would ſhew them ſomething new: they, not thinking what he was about, did as he ordered. Two doors were inſtantly opened, when all this poultry, who had been ſtarving for two days, ruſhed out; and the millet bag being opened, and its contents ſcattered about, the whole was devoured in leſs than half an hour, and more would have been eaten if they could have had it.

'The count de Lazaran then, turning towards the ambaſſadors, ſaid,—'My fair ſirs, you have ſeen how the millet you have brought hither from your maſter, with many menaces, has been devoured by this poultry, who would have deſtroyed more had they had it.' 'Yes,' replied they; 'but wherefore do you mention it?' 'Becauſe you have your anſwer in what you have witneſſed, and in the fact you have ſeen. Amurat threatens that, unleſs I obey him, he will pour into my country

country men at arms without number, to deſtroy it: tell him from me, I wait for him, and that, with whatever force he come, he ſhall be deſtroyed, in the ſame manner as the fowls have devoured your millet.'

'The ambaſſadors, on receiving this anſwer, were quite penſive. They took leave of the count, and travelled by ſhort days journeys, until they came to where Amurat and his army lay. They related to him all that the count de Lazaran had done and ſaid, and that he ſeemed to hold his menaces very cheap. Amurat was very wroth on hearing this anſwer, and ſwore that things ſhould not remain as they were; but that he would enter the territories of the count whether he would or not, and lay waſte all his lands, in revenge for his inſolent anſwer.

'I will now tell you what the count de Lazaran did, ſince war had been denounced againſt him, which he knew would be ſpeedily followed otherwiſe than by words. He inſtantly made preparations of ſtores and proviſion, and ſent expreſſes to inform his knights and ſquires, and all thoſe capable of bearing arms, that Amurat was about to invade Hungary, and to order them to guard valiantly all the paſſes into the country, and join him as ſpeedily as may be, for there was no time for delay.

'Amurat remained with his army on the plains of Haute-loge. As it was to defend Chriſtendom, all the knights to whom the count had written

obeyed his orders and came to him, as did many more to whom he had not ſent, but who had heard it accidentally, to ſupport the faith and deſtroy the infidels. The count had the foreſts cut down and thrown acroſs the roads Amurat was to paſs, which he expected would have a great effect in checking the Turks on their march. The count, accompanied by ten thouſand Hungarians and as many croſs-bows, entrenched himſelf and men on each ſide of a paſs through which he knew Amurat muſt march. He had alſo with him two thouſand peaſants, armed with axes and wedges, to fell the timber and block up the road on a ſignal given. When every thing was prepared, the count ſaid,—'Without doubt Amurat will come hither, for he has ſent me word he would ſo do: be therefore ſteady and valiant in defending this paſs, for, ſhould it be won by the Turks, all Hungary is in danger of being conquered. We are ſtrongly poſted, and one man here is equal to four. It will be more for our honour to periſh in the field, defending the faith of JESUS CHRIST, than to live in bondage, under theſe dogs of infidels, notwithſtanding the courage and ability of Amurat.'

'Sir,' replied they unanimouſly, 'we will with you abide the event: let the Turks come when they will, we are ready to receive them.' The Turks were quite ignorant of all this; for the count, fearful leſt his plans ſhould be diſcovered by Amurat's ſpies, and revealed to him, had poſted ſome of his moſt confidential friends between him

him and the enemy, to prevent any communication whatever between the two armies.

'Amurat was not forgetful of his menace, but declared he would viſit the territories of the count de Lazaran, in ſuch a manner that he ſhould remember it; for he was unwilling to be thought a liar, in breaking his promiſe. Having ſelected ſixty thouſand men, for he had two hundred thouſand in his camp, he gave the command of them to four captains attached to his houſehold and faith: their names were, the duke Manſion of Mecca, the governor of Damietta, Alphalory de Samarie, and the prince de Corde, ſurnamed Brachin, to whom he ſaid, on their leaving him,—'You will march theſe men whom I put under your command, a number ſufficient to open a paſſage into Hungary, to the lands of the lord de Lazaran, which you will completely deſtroy by fire and ſword. As ſoon as I ſhall be informed of your arrival there, I will follow with the remainder of my army; for I am reſolved to have Hungary under my obedience, and afterwards the empire of Germany. The wizards of my country and the diviners of Egypt, have pronounced that I am deſtined to be king of all the world; but the place I would moſt willingly viſit is Rome; for, in ancient times, it formed part of our inheritance; and our predeceſſors have conquered and governed it ſeveral times. I will lead with me le Galifre de Baudas, the cham of Tartary and the ſultan of Babylon, who ſhall there crown me.'

The

'The captains, who were on their knees, replied, they would cheerfully obey his commands, and then marched off with the ſixty thouſand men. Among them were twenty thouſand of the moſt able and beſt armed of the Turkiſh army, who formed the van battalion. When they came to the mountains on the frontiers of Lazaran, the van, finding no one to oppoſe them, entered them, under the command of the duke of Mecca and the governor of Damietta, and paſſed the ambuſcade of the count de Lazaran. As ſoon as the count and the Hungarians ſaw they had entrapped their foe, they began to work, by cutting down the foreſt trees and laying them acroſs the road, ſo that it was quite impoſſible for the Turks to retreat or to advance, for the paſſage was entirely blocked up.

'Thus were twenty thouſand Turks incloſed, who were ſo vigorouſly attacked by the Hungarians from each ſide of the foreſt, and with ſuch good effect that all were ſlain. Not one eſcaped death, not even the two commanders. Some few attempted to fly, but were purſued through the wood and killed.

'The rear diviſion, unable to advance through the fallen foreſt, returned to Amurat, and related the unfortunate event which had happened to his army. He was very penſive on hearing it, and ſummoned his council to conſider what was to be done, as he had loſt the flower of his army.'

The

The king of Armenia having thus finiſhed his hiſtory of the defeat of the Turks, reſumed the account of his own melancholy ſituation, to the king of France and his uncles. They took compaſſion on him, becauſe he had come from ſuch a diſtant part of the world as Greece to ſeek aid and comfort; and being a king driven out of his realm, without any means of keeping up his ſtate, or even ſupporting himſelf, as his complaints evidently ſhewed. The king of France, young as he was, ſaid,—'We will, that the king of Armenia, who has come to us in hopes of aſſiſtance, have allowed him wherewithal to maintain his dignity, ſuitable to his rank, as he is a king like ourſelf; and, when we are able, he ſhall have men at arms to aid him in the recovery of his kingdom; for we have a very good inclination ſo to do, being bound to ſupport the Chriſtian faith.'

This ſpeech of the king was applauded by all. His uncles and council were willing to fulfil theſe commands; and a proper allowance was ordered to be paid the king of Armenia monthly, from the chamber of accounts, to keep up his ſtate. The ſum allowed was ſix thouſand francs yearly; and he had five thouſand preſented him, to provide himſelf with plate and other ſmaller neceſſaries. The palace of St. Ouen, near St. Denis, was likewiſe given to him for his reſidence. Such aſſiſtance did the king of Armenia receive on his firſt arrival in France, which was conſtantly increaſing.

creaſing. He was at times much with the king, particularly at all the grand feſtivals*.

---

* Sauval, in his Antiquities of Paris, copies Froiſſart in the account of the reception of the king of Armenia by the court of Charles VI.; but adds, from Juvenal des Urſins, that this prince was not ſo wretched in his fortune, having ſaved many jewels, and even ſome of his treaſure, when he fled from the Tartars. He was a fruitleſs negotiator of peace between England and France, and was ſent to Boulogne, with others, on this ſubject. He died in 1393, in the palace of the Tournelles, ſituated in the ſtreet of St. Anthony, oppoſite the royal hôtel of St. Pol, where the kings of France uſually reſided. He was buried in the church of the Celeſtins, after the manner of his own country, his friends clothed in white, carrying torches of white wax: his body dreſſed in royal robes of the ſame colour, was laid upon a white bed of ſtate, and his head encircled with a crown of gold. At this funeral ceremony many of the princes and great lords aſſiſted, and crowds of common people.

Antiquities de Paris, vol. ii. p. 251.

Hollingſhed ſays, Leo, king of Armenia, came to England and received a penſion of 1000*l.* from Richard II.: the object of his viſit was to make peace between the two countries of France and England.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

DURING THESE WARS OF THE TURKS, DISSENTIONS CONTINUE BETWEEN THE TWO POPES, URBAN VI. AND CLEMENT VII.—FRIAR JOHN DE LA ROCHE-TAILLARD DELIVERS A GOOD APOLOGUE, RESPECTING THE PAPACY, TO THE CARDINALS.

ABOUT this period, Otho of Brunſwick came to pope Clement at Avignon, to receive his pay for the war he had carried on for the pope and church againſt the Romans and Bartholomew Prignano, who ſtiled himſelf pope Urban VI. as you have before ſeen in this hiſtory. He remonſtrated with the pope and cardinals on various topics, to which they attentively liſtened: but, as for his pay, he could not obtain one penny, the treaſury being ſo empty that the cardinals were unable to get what was their due. Sir Otho, therefore, left them much diſcontented; but, before he ſet out from Avignon, they gave him one thouſand francs, which he held cheap, and the war of the pope was greatly weakened, for ſir Otho would not henceforward concern himſelf about it. Beſides, Margaret de Duras, ducheſs of Anjou, who reſided at Gaietta, ſent for his aſſiſtance againſt the Neapolitans. Sir Otho balanced for a time, not knowing which ſide to take; ſome of his council adviſing him to aid Margaret in the defence of her realm,

and

and take her to wife, as ſhe had not any objection and was of noble birth, and by this means they told him he might become king of the country: but others adviſed the contrary, leſt it might have an unfavourable iſſue; for her children by the duke of Anjou, who had been crowned king in Bari, were young, and had many relations and friends, eſpecially in the king of France their couſin-german, who would certainly ſupport their claims, as well as the lady Jane, ducheſs dowager of Anjou, who would have great weight. Sir Otho was ſo long doubtful between the two parties that at length neither had him.

About this time, the forces ſubſidized by pope Clement, under the command of the lord de Moetroye, a right valiant knight from the country of Geneva and Savoy, ſir Talebert, a knight of Rhodes, and ſir Bernard de la Salle, had ſhut up pope Urban in the city of Perugia. He was much ſtraightened, and on the point of being made captive. I was told it depended only on the payment of twenty thouſand crowns; for count Conrad, a leader of a large body of Germans, would have delivered him up to pope Clement for that ſum. Sir Bernard de la Salle was ſent to Avignon to inform the pope, and to remonſtrate with him and the cardinals on the ſubject, but in vain with regard to the money, for the court was ſo poor that he could not obtain any thing, and returned, very diſcontented, to the ſiege of Perugia. The ſiege was ſlackened on both ſides, and Urban eſcaped

eſcaped from this danger to Rome, where he remained.

I know that in times to come theſe things will be wondered at, and it will be a matter of aſtoniſhment how the church could fall into ſuch troubles and thoſe of ſo long a duration. It was a puniſhment ſent by God to make the clergy feel and conſider the great pomp and ſuperfluities they poſſeſſed: but many paid no attention to it, being ſo ſwollen with pride and arrogance, that each would imitate his ſuperiors, and thus was religion little regarded; and if the Holy Spirit, who enlightens the hearts of the devout, had not kept them ſteady, and in uniſon, it would have been ſeverely ſhaken, if not loſt. The great proprietors of land, who at the firſt were ſuch noble benefactors to the church, now made a joke of it, even at the time I was writing and chronicling this hiſtory, in the year of grace 1390; at which the commonalty were much ſurpriſed, and wondered why ſuch great lords as the kings of France and Germany, and the other princes of Chriſtendom did not provide a remedy for it. But, to ſatisfy the people and excuſe the great barons, I may ſay, that as there cannot be a yolk of an egg without its white, nor a white without the yolk, ſo neither the clergy nor the lords can exiſt independently of each other; for the lords, not being ruled by the clergy, would degenerate into beaſts.

I will ſay, that in my time I have for certain ſeen much of mankind; whether for my own amuſement, or in travelling to learn the hiſtory

of

of what paſſes in the world relative to deeds and adventures in arms, which are deſcribed in this book; but I have never met with any lord, except the count de Foix, who had not his minions, pages, and jeſters, moſt honourably entertained. The count de Foix had none ſuch; for he was naturally grave, and of great good ſenſe, which was of more value than any thing they could have afforded him. I do not ſay, that thoſe lords who are attended by minions are mad: they are worſe than mad, for they are blind having two eyes.

When information of this diſputed choice was firſt brought to king Charles of France, of happy memory, he pauſed, and left it to his clergy; who, having conſidered the matter, reſolved that pope Clement had been truly elected. To this opinion the kings of France, Caſtille, and Scotland aſſented; and, notwithſtanding the ſchiſm which was cauſed in the church, theſe three kings, being allied together, remained ſteady to Clement; but the kings of England and Portugal were of a contrary way of thinking.

The earl of Flanders had formed his creed as you have heard in this hiſtory; for he would never acknowledge pope Clement, becauſe he had, at the firſt conclave, voted for the cardinal of Bari, and becauſe, while cardinal of Geneva, he had written to the earl to ſay Urban had been legally elected pope, for which reaſon the earl of Flanders conſidered him as the true one as long as he lived. The emperor and

all

all Germany, with the king of Hungary, acknowledged Urban.

While writing of theſe diſſentions that happened in my time both in ſtates and in the church (which was ſomewhat ſhaken thereby), and it is to be underſtood that the great landed proprietors were acting like hypocrites, it comes to my remembrance how in my young days, during the reign of pope Innocent, at Avignon, there was confined in priſon a learned clerk, called Friar John de la Roche-taillade. This friar, as I have been told by ſeveral privately, for it was never talked of in public, foretold, while in priſon, many of the great events which would happen ſhortly in the world, more eſpecially thoſe that related to France. He prophecied the capture of king John of France, and the misfortunes that were to befal the church from the pride and arrogance of thoſe who governed it. It was ſaid, that during his impriſonment, he was brought to the pope's palace, when the cardinal of Oſtia, commonly called cardinal of Arras, and the cardinal of Auxerre diſputed with him on theſe ſubjects.

Friar John gave them for anſwer the following apologue: 'In former days, a bird was hatched without any feathers. When the other birds heard of this, they went to ſee him, for he was fair and pleaſant to look on. Having conſidered, that without feathers he could not fly, nor without flying live; which, however, they were determined to aſſiſt him in, for he was a prodigiouſly handſome bird; they reſolved that every bird ſhould

give him ſome of his feathers. The beſt feathered gave the moſt, ſo that he was ſoon enabled to fly. The other birds took much pleaſure in ſeeing him. When this bird ſaw himſelf thus in feather, and that all the birds paid him great honour, he grew proud, and not only held thoſe cheap who had made him ſo, but pecked and drove them from him. The birds held an aſſembly to conſider how they ſhould act, in conſequence of the treatment they received from this bird whom they had clothed, and who now deſpiſed them. The peacock ſaid, 'He is too finely dreſſed in my feathers: I will take them from him.' 'In God's name,' ſaid the falcon, 'ſo will I mine.' The other birds ſaid, they would do the ſame, and immediately began to unfeather him.

'The bird, on ſeeing this, humbled himſelf greatly, and acknowledged the honours and wealth he had received; and that his fine feathers were not his own, for he had come into the world naked and featherleſs; and thoſe who had feathered him might, if they choſe, retake them. He cried out for mercy, and promiſed, henceforward, never to riſk, by pride or preſumption, the loſs of his feathers. The gallant birds who had plucked him, ſeeing him thus humbled in his deportment, reſtored his feathers; but ſaid, on giving them back,—'We will gladly ſee thee fly among us, as long as thou ſhalt bear thyſelf meekly, for ſo it becometh thee; but if ever thou ſhalt act arrogantly, we will pluck thee bare, and leave thee in the naked ſtate we found thee.' 'Thus, my fair

ſirs,'

ſirs,' ſaid friar John to the cardinals, 'will it happen to you. The emperors, kings, and princes of the earth, have given you wealth, and power and poſſeſſions, that you may ſerve God, but you expend it in pomp, luxury, and all extravagancies. Why do you not read the life of St. Silveſter*, the firſt pope who ſucceeded St. Peter? and weigh well the conditions on which the emperor Conſtantine gave the tythes to the church. St. Silveſter did not travel with two or three hundred attendants on horſeback, but lived ſimply and retired at Rome, ſolely with his churchmen, when the angel, through God's grace, appeared, to announce that the emperor Conſtantine, then an infidel and unbeliever, had ſent for him. It had likewiſe been revealed to the emperor, by the angel of the lord, that Silveſter would put him in the way of being cured of his leproſy; for he was ſo ill of that diſorder his limbs were rotting. On his arrival, he pointed out to him his cure, by means of baptiſm. He was baptiſed and cured, which ſo ſtrongly impreſſed his mind with the goodneſs of God, that he believed, and made his empire believe alſo. He gave to Silveſter and to the church, all tythes, which he had before held himſelf, with many other rich gifts and territories, for the augmentation of our faith and church.

'It was his intention that theſe ſhould be prudently and properly governed, and not with pomp

* Silveſter was the thirty-ſecond pope.—*Art de Verifier les Dates.*

and pride as is now done; for which the Lord is wroth, and his anger will be much increaſed againſt you in times to come. Should the nobles excuſe themſelves from giving ſupport to the church, and grow cold in their devotions, and, perhaps, retake what they had given, it muſt ſpeedily be deſtroyed.'

Thus ſpoke friar John to the cardinals, who were much aſtoniſhed threat, and would willingly have put him to death, but they could not find out any juſt cauſe for it. They ſuffered him to live, but confined him a cloſe priſoner; for he propoſed ſuch deep queſtions, and examined ſo cloſely the Scriptures, that he might perhaps, had he been at liberty, have led the world aſtray. However, many things were ſeen to happen, which he had foretold in priſon, and which he proved from the apocalypſe. His proofs ſaved him ſometimes from being burnt; and ſome of the cardinals took compaſſion on him, and did not oppreſs him as much as they might have done.

We will now leave theſe narrations and return to the principal matters of this hiſtory, the affairs of Spain, Portugal, France, and England, and ſay what events were paſſing there worthy of being recorded.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

THE REASONS WHY THE PORTUGUESE PREFER THE GRAND MASTER OF AVIS FOR THEIR KING TO DON JOHN, KING OF CASTILLE, WHO HAD MARRIED BEATRICE, DAUGHTER OF DON FERDINAND, LATE KING OF PORTUGAL.

YOU have before heard how don John, ſon of don Pedro, king of Portugal, and baſtard-brother to the late king, had gained poſſeſſion of the crown, through the boldneſs of four of the principal towns in Portugal; for the nobles and knights ought not to be inculpated in the matter, as they had ever borne themſelves loyally to don John of Caſtille, who had married Beatrice, the daughter and heireſs of don Ferdinand. Many, however, were of opinion ſhe was a baſtard, being the daughter of a Portugueſe lādy, whoſe huſband, a knight of Portugal, was ſtill living*. The king of Portugal, having ſeized his wife, married her; and the knight left the country and reſided with the king of Caſtille: he never returned to Portugal, notwithſtanding his noble birth, through fear of the king.

* Ferdinand, at the concluſion of the war between him and Henry de Tranſtamare, king of Caſtille, engaged to marry Henry's daughter. This he did not perform, but married Leonora Tellez, the wife of Lorenzo d'Acunha.

This opinion of her being a baſtard was the more extraordinary, as don Ferdinand conſidered her as legitimate, having received diſpenſations from pope Urban VI. to that purpoſe. When peace was concluded between the kings of Caſtille and Portugal, don John Ferdinand Audere, who ruled the Portugueſe council, propoſed a marriage between the daughter of his king, and don John, king of Caſtille, who was at that time a widower. The council of Caſtille, when this union was propoſed, had mentioned their doubts of the legitimacy of the lady's birth; and, to ſatisfy the king of Caſtille, don Ferdinand had made his principal barons and nobles of Portugal ſwear, that after his deceaſe, they would conſider her as their queen, and would unite their kingdom to Caſtille. He had alſo forced the principal towns to promiſe the ſame, and to acknowledge the king of Caſtille as their king, under a penalty of two hundred thouſand francs.

The Liſboners, having put to death don Ferdinand Audere, becauſe he had interfered in this buſineſs, and exerted himſelf, at the king of Portugal's death, to have it confirmed, elected the maſter of Avis, and would have no other king. They ſaid, that were Portugal to be turned topſy turvy, they would never ſubmit to Caſtille, nor to the Caſtillians, ſo greatly did they hate each other. The Liſboners were the great inſtigators of this diſpute: they ſaid that the lady Beatrice could not be their queen, for ſhe was a baſtard, a thorough baſtard; and, during the life-time of

don

don Ferdinand, and now when he is dead, Lorenzo d'Acunha, the huſband of her mother, ſtill exiſts. For this reaſon, the four cities of Liſbon, Coimbra, Ourique, and Oporto, elected don John, and crowned him king of Portugal. They would have a king from among themſelves, and noticed the great affection the commonalty had for the maſter of Avis.

One of the chief cauſes for this hatred of the Portugueſe to the Caſtillians was, that after the marriage had been concluded between the king of Caſtille with don Ferdinand's daughter, and it had been agreed that Portugal ſhould, after the death of don Ferdinand, revert to Caſtille, wherever the Caſtillians met the Portugueſe, they mocked them, and ſaid, they ſhould return under their obedience whether they would or not; that they would keep them in ſubjection and ſlavery, and teach them, like Jews and ſlaves, to obey their wills.

The Portugueſe replied, they would never be under theirs nor the ſubjection of any men in the world. Owing to ſuch reproaches, they elected the grand maſter of Avis king, who was baſtard-ſon to don Pedro, king of Portugal. Don Ferdinand, during his reign, paid no attention to his brother, nor ever imagined the Portugueſe would, after his deceaſe, chooſe him their king, to the diſparagement of his daughter; but ſo they did; and don Ferdinand Audere was in the right, when he adviſed the king to have him put to death, for the people had too great an affection for him. The king would never conſent to this, ſaying that the

people had no power over the nobility of the realm; and that his ſon-in-law, the king of Caſtille, was powerful enough to puniſh any rebellion that might break out; that he had no juſt cauſe to impriſon him nor put him to death; and, beſides, his brother was of a religious order, and poſſeſſed of great wealth, without thinking of the crown of Portugal. Theſe were the reaſons why he eſcaped death.

All theſe are well known facts; for I, the author of this hiſtory, was told them by the nobles of Portugal. It was certainly ſtrange they ſhould chooſe a baſtard for their king: but they found none nearer in blood to the crown; for they declared, that the queen of Caſtille, daughter of the lady Leonora d'Acunha, being a baſtard, ſhould never poſſeſs the crown of Portugal, nor ſhould any of her deſcendants.

The count de Foix was of a ſimilar opinion, as he told the knights when he gave them an entertainment on leaving his country for Portugal; for he is perfectly well informed, though he reſides at Orthès, of every thing that paſſes in Caſtille or Portugal. When his knights departed, he ſaid,—'Gentlemen, you have not any buſineſs to interfere in the diſputes between Caſtille and Portugal; for the queen of Caſtille, daughter of don Ferdinand king of Portugal, has no claim to that crown. This war is begun fooliſhly, and with much bitterneſs: you may therefore, as well as thoſe who firſt ſtirred it up, heartily repent when it is too late.' They replied, 'that having

received

received earneſt of pay from ſo great a lord as don John of Caſtille, they were bound to ſerve him.' He then ſuffered them to go: but, as I have before related, the greater part never returned home again.

CHAP. XLIX.

FROISSART TRAVELS TO MIDDLEBURGH IN ZEALAND, TO MAKE INQUIRIES FROM A KNIGHT, WHO IS GOING TO PRUSSIA, OF THE AFFAIRS OF PORTUGAL.

WE will not yet quit the affairs of Portugal, as they ought not to be forgotten; but the grand feats of arms which took place there ſhould be chronicled, that thoſe who come after our time may find them related and written down. It would be pity they were annihilated; and it was by means of clerks of former days, who enregiſtered hiſtories, that facts are now known, for there is no memory equal to writing. In truth, I muſt ſay, and I wiſh thoſe who in after times ſhall come may know the fact, that I have taken infinite pains to ſeek out the truth of what was paſſing in my day, and have travelled through many a kingdom and over many countries for this purpoſe. I have been perſonally acquainted with many valiant men, as well in France, England, Caſtille, Portugal, as in the duchies

duchies and countries adjoining, and with their companions in war, from whom I have never failed aſking many queſtions for my information; and I have never willingly neglected, after having heard any fact, making every poſſible inquiry to know the truth of it.

During the time I reſided with the gallant count Gaſton de Foix at Béarn, I heard many of the tranſactions which had happened in Portugal; but on my return home to Valenciennes in Hainault, having reſted myſelf a while, my paſſion for the hiſtory I had begun was renewed, and I bethought myſelf that I could not impartially continue it, having only heard that ſide of the queſtion which related to the king of Caſtille. It was proper therefore, if I wiſhed to avoid partiality, to hear what the Portugueſe had to ſay, as I had liſtened to the Gaſcons and Spaniards in the caſtle of Foix, and upon the road in going thither and in returning. Indifferent as to bodily fatigue, I ſet out for Bruges expecting to meet ſome Portugueſe and Liſboners, as many of that nation are generally there. I was moſt fortunate in my journey, for it was told me, and I ſince found it true, that if I had conſidered for ſeven years, I could not have come more opportunely to Bruges than at that moment. I had only to go to Middleburgh in Zealand, where I ſhould find a valiant knight of Portugal, and of the king's council, called don Juan Ferrando de Portelet, who would give me a true account of the events that had paſſed in Portugal, having been a party

party concerned in all of them: he was but lately arrived, intending to embark for Pruſſia, whither his valour led him.

This intelligence rejoiced me much, and I ſet out from Bruges in company with a Portugueſe well acquainted with the knight. On our arrival at Sluys, we embarked, and, thanks to God, arrived ſafely at Middleburgh. I made myſelf acquainted, through my companion, with the knight, whom I found prudent, honourable, gracious and pleaſant. I remained with him about ſix days, and might have done ſo longer had I pleaſed, when the knight told me all that had happened in the wars between Caſtille and Portugal, from the death of king Ferdinand until the time he had left that country. He related it ſo clearly and fully that I had great delight in hearing him, and in writing down what he had ſaid.

When I had learnt all I wanted, and found the wind to be favourable, I took leave of the knight: he accompanied me to the veſſel, as did ſeveral rich merchants of his country, who had come from Bruges thither to ſee him, as well as other good people of Middleburgh. In his company was the ſon of the count de Novaire, in Portugal, and other knights and ſquires from thoſe parts: but greater reſpect was paid to don Juan than to any of the others: and certainly, from what I ſaw, he was very deſerving of it, for he was a handſome well made man formed for vigorous exploits.

I returned thence, through Bruges, home, where I chronicled all I had heard from don Juan Fernando de

de Portelet, relative to what had paſſed in the realms of Portugal and Caſtille, until the year of our Lord 1390.

CHAP. L.

THE PORTUGUESE, AFTER THE BATTLE OF ALJUBAROTA, SEND AMBASSADORS TO ENGLAND, TO INFORM THE KING AND HIS NOBLES OF THAT EVENT.

AFTER don John had defeated the Spaniards at the battle of Aljubarota, which took place, as you have heard, near the monaſtery of Alcobaçar, whereat where ſlain ſuch numbers of knights and ſquires from France, Gaſcony and Caſtille, he returned triumphant to Liſbon, his head crowned with laurel, like to the Roman conquerors of old. The Portugueſe highly honoured him for his courage and victory; and, after many grand feſtivals, a parliament was held by the barons, knights and magiſtrates from the principal towns, on the ſtate of the kingdom, and on the means by which they could beſt perſevere in what they had been ſo fortunate in commencing. The wiſeſt among them ſaid, now was the time to ſtrengthen themſelves, ſo that they might be enabled to withſtand the power of the king of Caſtille, and enjoy with honour to themſelves the fruits of their victory.

This

'This conference was holden in the cathedral church of St. Dominick at Liſbon, where many propoſals were made, but not ſuch as were worth recording. It was at laſt determined to ſend to the duke of Lancaſter, who claimed the crown of Caſtille, in right of the lady Conſtance, his ducheſs, eldeſt daughter to don Pedro the cruel, and indite letters to him in ſuch terms as theſe: 'That if ever he wiſhed to claim the kingdom of Caſtille, and not ſurrender his right, which had been ſome time in ſuſpenſe and nearly loſt, now was the time for him to haſten to Portugal, well accompanied by men at arms and archers.'

The count de Novaire, conſtable of Portugal, thus ſpoke at the conference: 'Since we have determined to ſend to the duke of Lancaſter, from whom we hope to have counſel and aſſiſtance, and it is the wiſeſt meaſure we can take to make us feared by our enemies, let us ſelect the beſt informed, and propereſt perſons to carry our meſſage to England, ſo that the duke my be induced to come hither with ſuch a force as may enable him, with what he receives from us, to oppoſe and conquer his enemy. We may well ſuppoſe, the king of Caſtille will call for aid from the king of France and the French, as they know not where to ſeek adventures, for there is a truce between France and England until St. John the Baptiſt's day, and peace is now eſtabliſhed between France and the Flemings, who have found them full employment for ſeveral years paſt.'

This

This ſpeech of the conſtable was much applauded, and his advice followed. It was then ordered, that the grand maſter of the order of St. James, in the kingdom of Portugal, and Lawrence Fongaſſe, an able and prudent ſquire, and who underſtood and ſpoke the French language well, ſhould ſet out for England; for, according to the opinion of the king's council, there could not be found abler men to execute this buſineſs. Letters were drawn up in French and Latin, addreſſed to the king of England, the duke of Lancaſter, and his uncles of Cambridge and Buckingham. When they had been fairly engroſſed, they were read to the king and his council, who, finding them properly done, had them ſealed and delivered to the envoys, the grand maſter of St. James and Lawrence Fongaſſe, wh engaged to carry them to England, if God permitted, and if they ſhould eſcape from enemies and robbers; for there are as many, if not more on the ſea than on land.

Having freighted a veſſel called a Lin, which keeps nearer the wind than any other, they took leave of the king, the biſhop of Coimbra, aud the council of Portugal, and embarked for England. The wind was favourable, and they were three days without ſeeing any thing but ſky and water: on the fourth, they diſcovered the land of Cornwall. By God's aid, and favourable winds, from which their mariners knew how to profit, they arrived in ſafety at Southampton, where they anchored. When they diſembarked, to refreſh themſelves in the town, they were ſummoned before the bailiff, who

who demanded whence they came and whither they were going. On anſwering that they were from Portugal, and ſent by the king and his council, they were made very welcome. After they had allowed themſelves ſome reſt, they were provided with horſes for their own uſe and that of their attendants, and with guides to conduct them to London, for they were quite ignorant of the country and roads. On leaving Southampton, they continued their journey until they arrived in London, where they diſmounted at the hôtel of Falcon, kept by Thomelin de Wincheſter, and then ſent back their horſes and guides to Southampton.

Fortunately for them, the king and his court were at the time at Weſtminſter, which rejoiced them much: being arrived at London about nine o'clock, they ſat down to dinner; when that was over, having ſelected their letters for the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, they waited on them. The duke and ducheſs were deſirous to ſee them, as they were anxious for news from Portugal. They had indeed heard ſome rumours from that quarter, but had not believed them, as they had not received any letters which tended to confirm the report.

The grand maſter of St. James and Lawrence Fongaſſe were conducted into their preſence, and the latter, on account of his facility in the French language, was the ſpokeſman. After his ſalutations, he gave the duke the letters he had brought from Portugal, who, opening them, gave the ducheſs that which was addreſſed to her: having

each

each read them, the duke ſaid, 'You are welcome, gentlemen, to this country: we will to-morrow attend the king, and you ſhall have aſſiſtance, as it is but reaſonable you ſhould.' The ducheſs, taking Lawrence apart, aſked the news of Caſtille and Portugal, and what was going on in thoſe parts. Lawrence, have made exact anſwers to all the lady's queſtions, the duke ordered wine and ſpices, of which the envoys partook, and then returned to their hôtel.

On the morrow, by ſix o'clock, they again waited on the duke, who had heard maſs, and entering a large barge, rowed up the Thames to Weſtminſter, where the king and the greater part of his council reſided.

The duke of Lancaſter made them enter the council chamber, and, addreſſing the king, ſaid, 'My lord, here is the grand maſter of St. James in Portugal, who brings you letters: will you pleaſe to ſee them?' 'Willingly,' replied the king. Upon which, the two ambaſſadors kneeling, preſented the letters, which the king having taken, he made them riſe, and then opened and read them. They gave alſo letters to the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham.

The king replied very graciouſly to the ambaſſadors, ſaying; 'You are welcome to this country, and your coming has given us much pleaſure. You will not immediately return, nor without having letters to your ſatisfaction. Make my fair uncles acquainted with your buſineſs, who will attend to it, and not allow it to ſlip their memories.'

They

They anſwered on their knees, 'Very dear lord, we will cheerfully ſo do.' They then quitted the council-chamber, and amuſed themſelves in the palace, waiting for the duke of Lancaſter, who remained in conference until high noon.

When the parliament roſe, the duke carried his two brothers, with the ambaſſadors, in his barge to dine with him. The earl of Cambridge was well acquainted with the grand maſter and Lawrence Fongaſſe, as he had known them in Portugal. After dinner, he began a converſation with them in the preſence of his brothers, and aſked about the marriage of the lady Beatrice, who was to have been his daughter-in-law, and how ſhe went on. The ambaſſadors gave ſuch anſwers as ſatisfied the company.

Before the arrival of theſe ambaſſadors, the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge had held frequent conferences reſpecting Caſtille; for the earl, as you have heard, was greatly diſpleaſed with the late king of Portugal for having remained fifteen days with his army in ſight of that of Caſtille without coming to an engagement. The earl had pointedly remarked this fault by ſaying; 'I have only with me, ſir king, one hundred lances and a thouſand archers; but I would have you and your barons know that we have unanimouſly reſolved to riſk a battle with our enemies, and abide whatever be the event God may pleaſe to ordain.' King Ferdinand replied, that neither himſelf nor council thought it adviſable to offer battle. Upon this, the earl of Cambridge left the country, carrying

rying his ſon John with him to England. When he was departed, the king of Portugal offered his daughter to the king of Caſtille, to ſtrengthen the peace, by the advice of don Fernando Audere, in whom alone he put confidence.

The king of Portugal aſked his daughter whom ſhe would prefer for her huſband, the king of Caſtille or John of Cambridge: ſhe anſwered, 'The laſt.' The king demaned, 'Why?' 'Becauſe he was a handſome youth, of her own age, and becauſe ſhe wiſhed to avoid being united to the king of Caſtille,' who, ſhe plainly ſaid, was not to her liking. The king, notwithſtanding, to preſerve peace, as their kingdoms adjoined each other, married her to the king of Caſtille.

The earl of Cambridge was alſo much diſſatisfied with don Fernando Audere, who had taken great pains to conclude a peace on the grounds of this match. He had told his brother that he much ſuſpected the Portugueſe would rebel againſt the lady Beatrice, after her father's death; for the majority of the people, although the king had eſpouſed the lady Eleanora d'Acunha, conſidered her as a baſtard; and, when he was there, great were the murmurs about it, and this was one reaſon why he had ſo haſtily brought his ſon thence.

The duke of Lancaſter, whom theſe circumſtances affected more nearly, having married the elder heireſs of the late king of Caſtille, by whom he had a daughter called Conſtance, was anxious to learn as much as poſſible reſpecting the affairs of Caſtille, and not ſuffer his claim to remain

longer

longer in a ſtate of ſuſpenſe. He perceived that he never could have a more convenient entrance into that country than through Portugal; more eſpecially as king John was ſo deſirous for him to come thither, and the king of England and his council had conſented thereto. He looked on don John as valiant and wiſe, and honoured him much for the victory he had won over the Caſtillians.

That he might gain more information as to the real ſtate of Portugal, together with the claims the lady Beatrice had on that crown, and the reaſons why the commonalty had elected the grand maſter of Avis their king, he invited the ambaſſadors to a private dinner: when it was over, he ordered all the attendants out of his apartment, and called the grand maſter of St. James and Lawrence Fongaſſe moſt kindly to him, and began to converſe on the affairs of Portugal; but, as Lawrence ſpoke French ſo fluently, he addreſſed himſelf to him, ſaying,—'Lawrence, I entreat you will relate to me every thing that has happened in Portugal ſince my brother left it; for the king of Portugal writes me word, that no one can give me ſuch exact information as yourſelf, and by ſo doing you will very much oblige me.' 'My lord,' replied the ſquire, 'your pleaſure ſhall be obeyed,' and he immediately began to this effect:

CHAP. LI.

LAWRENCE FONGASSE, ONE OF THE AMBASSADORS FROM PORTUGAL TO ENGLAND, RELATES TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER THE EVENTS WHICH HAD HAPPENED IN PORTUGAL SINCE THE EARL OF CAMBRIDGE HAD LEFT IT.

'THE kingdom of Portugal has been in great trouble ſince the departure of the earl of Cambridge; but, thanks to God, all has turned out well, and affairs are now on a ſteady footing. If the Lord had not interfered, matters muſt have ended badly, and all from the fault of don Fernando our laſt king, as was generally reported and believed by the more ſenſible part of the nation.

'King Fernando fell deſperately in love with the wife of one of his knights called Lorenzo d'Acunha, and was ſo much enamoured he would have her by force: the lady made the beſt defence ſhe could, but at length he ſucceeded, and told her he would make her queen of Portugal, for that, if he was ſmitten with her charms, it was not to lower her, but on the contrary to exalt and marry her. 'Ah, my lord!' replied the lady, with tears and on her knees, 'I beg your grace's pardon

pardon: I can never have the honour of being queen of Portugal; for you know, as well as all the world, that I have a huſband, to whom I have been married theſe five years.' 'Leonora,' ſaid the king, 'that ſhall not prevent it; for I will never have any other woman to wife ſince I have enjoyed you; but I will have you divorced from your huſband before I make you my bride.'

'The lady could not obtain any other anſwer, and related all that had paſſed to her huſband. The knight, on hearing it, was very melancholy, and bethought himſelf what was to be done: he reſolved at firſt never to quit his wife; but, ſuſpecting the king's deſigns, he ſet out from Portugal towards Caſtille, where he was well received by king Henry and appointed of his houſehold, which appointment he held during his life, and was continued in the ſame by his ſucceſſor don John.

'The king of Portugal, to gratify his fooliſh paſſion, ſent for the lady and her huſband; but the knight was gone. He then ſent for the biſhop of Coimbra, who was chancellor of the kingdom and of his council, and told him his intention of marrying Leonora d'Acunha. The biſhop was ſilent through fear, knowing the violence of the king's haughty temper; but ſir Fernando Audere, who was the king's boſom friend and counſellor, in order to pleaſe the king, ſaid, 'Biſhop, you may very well do it, and my lord will make atonement once for all.' The biſhop united them, and they

lived together. This lady was crowned queen of Portugal with as much pomp and magnificence as ever queen of Portugal was; and the king begot on her the lady Beatrice, now queen of Spain.

'True it is, that king Fernando, in his lifetime (it was before the earl of Cambridge came with his army to Portugal) ſummoned all the nobles, prelates, and principal citizens of his realm, to Liſbon, and made them all ſwear obedience to his daughter Beatrice, then only five years old; and pledge themſelves that they would acknowledge her as heireſs of the kingdom after his deceaſe. He made them take this oath, as he had ordered, whether they would or not. The greater part knew well this daughter was a baſtard, and born in adultery; for the huſband of her mother, don Lorenzo d'Acunha, reſided in Caſtille, and has outlived the king of Portugal. I believe, my lord, that had this child been a boy, the commonalty would have been more inclined towards him; for they declare they would rather die than live under ſubjection to Caſtille: Portugal and Caſtille can never be thoroughly united, for the natives of both countries hate each other, and carry on their wars with as much bitterneſs as the Engliſh and Scots.'

'The duke of Lancaſter was much delighted with this converſation, and with Lawrence Fongaſſe's manner. He ſaid,—'Lawrence, at the time you are talking of, where was don John, the preſent king?' 'By my faith, my lord,' anſwered

ſwered the ſquire, 'he was in Portugal, at the head of a noble eſtabliſhment of gentlemen, who bear an order of chivalry from beyond ſea. There are full two hundred knights of this order, who are dreſſed in white mantles with a red croſs on them: he is the chief, and called the Maſter of Avis.

'The king gave him this appointment, but thought nothing more about him; nor, indeed, did he any way concern himſelf, or intermeddle with the affairs of Portugal, nor ever form any intrigues for the crown. Certainly, had the king gueſſed that he could have been what he is now, the love he bore the lady Leonora and her daughter would have made him put him privately to death; but ſeeing him live quietly with his brother knights, without interfering in any thing elſe, he ſuffered him to go on without interruption.

'With regard to the quarrel between the Caſtillians and Portugueſe, if I ſay the truth, I muſt own the Caſtillians have been alone to blame.' 'How ſo?' aſked the duke. 'I will tell you,' replied the ſquire. 'When they ſaw the king of Portugal give his daughter in marriage to the king of Caſtille, it ſeemed to them as if he had done ſo by way of buying a peace for them, and that we were afraid of them. Upon this they grew proud and arrogant, and made uſe of ſuch ſpeeches as follow, which the Portugueſe were forced to hear: 'Oh now, ye Portugueſe, who are as ſavage as beaſts, the time is coming when we ſhall have a

good bargain of ye, for ye are our ſlaves. We will treat you like Jews, who only exiſt by our having granted them a truce, and ye ſhall be like them ſubjected to us. This ye cannot deny, ſince our king of Caſtille will become yours alſo.' With ſuchlike ſpeeches did the Caſtillians ſhew their rancour, whenever any of the two nations met, during the reign of don Fernando; and this cauſed ſo great a hatred of the Portugueſe to the Caſtillians, that when our king lay at the point of death, the citizens of the principal towns murmured much, and ſaid, 'It were better to ſuffer any thing than be under the ſubjection of Caſtille.'

'After the death of Fernando, who was buried in the church of St. Francis, by the religious of that order in Liſbon, the chief towns and caſtles cloſed their gates. The Liſboners, being acquainted with the intentions of the other three towns, Coimbra, Oporto and Ourique, ſent for don John, the preſent king, and ſaid to him,—'Maſter of Avis, we will make you our king although you be a baſtard: we think the lady Beatrice, your niece, and queen of Caſtille, is more of a baſtard than you; for the firſt huſband of the lady Leonora is now living. Since the crown is fallen between two baſtards, we will chooſe the one who will be to our greateſt advantage: the more ſenſible part of the nation is inclined to you; for never ſhall a woman bear the crown of Portugal; nor will we ever be under the obedience of Caſtille. We had rather give up all

to

to you, that you may defend us, than have the Caſtillians our maſters. Accept, therefore, this crown as our gift, for we will have it ſo.'

'The maſter of Avis did not, however, accept it at this, nor at a ſecond offer; but replied,—'My good people, I know well your affection for me: you offer me the crown and realm of Portugal: a noble offer, by declaring I have a better right to it than my niece Beatrice, the queen of Caſtille: in truth ſhe is a baſtard, the mother's firſt huſband being now in Caſtille; but there is one point you have forgotten, which is, that you alone cannot act in this matter: it is neceſſary that the nobles of the kingdom join you. 'Ha,' ſaid the Liſboners, 'we are ſure of them; for ſeveral have opened to us their minds on this ſubject, as well in this city, as in thoſe of Coimbra, Oporto and Ourique.'

'Don John replied,—'Well, be it ſo then, I am willing to comply with your deſires. You know that the lady Leonora, who ſtiles herſelf queen of this country, is in the town, and with her her grand adviſer, don Fernando Audere, who will want to preſerve the crown for the queen of Caſtille and her deſcendants; for he broke off her marriage with the ſon of the earl of Cambridge, to give her to the king of Caſtille, and patch up a peace. He will ſend, or perhaps has already done ſo, to the king of Caſtille, to haſten hither with a ſufficient force to overpower us. I know that don Fernando has in part acted as I ſay, and he

he will ſtill more exert himſelf on the day of the obſequies of my late king and brother, which will ſhortly be performed in this town, when all the nobility of the kingdom, unleſs they ſend excuſes, muſt be aſſembled.'

'Thoſe preſent anſwered, that he did not ſurpriſe them by what he had ſaid, for they well knew it was ſo; but, ſhould they hear don Fernando ſay any thing contrary to his intereſt, they would that day provide a remedy againſt it. Upon this, the meeting broke up.

'Not long after, the obſequies of the late king were performed in the church of the Franciſcans at Liſbon, where he lies, and the ceremony was attended by great numbers of the nobility, according to the invitations they had received from the queen, and Fernando Audere who governed her. The grand maſter of Avis was preſent, and many from the towns of Coimbra, Oporto and Ourique, who had aſſented to what had been propoſed at Liſbon. When the ceremony was over, don Fernando Audere entreated the nobility, who had aſſiſted in behalf of the queen, not to leave Liſbon for a day or two, that he might have a conference with them, on the means he ſhould uſe to ſend to king John of Caſtille, as his queen was now become the legal heireſs of Portugal. Many of the nobles paid no attention to what he had ſaid; for they were afraid of the people then preſent, as they had heard them declare, they would only have the maſter of Avis for their monarch; and this likewiſe

likewiſe was heard by don Fernando. He begged the nobles to ſupport him ſteadily in his attempts to bring the people to his way of thinking; but they all left him. As ſoon as the funeral was ended and the queen had returned to her palace, they called for their horſes, which the majority mounted, and ſet out from Liſbon.

'Some few, attached to the grand maſter, might remain, but they retired to their houſes, and kept within, expecting the event to happen which I am about to relate.

'The citizens of Liſbon, Coimbra, Ourique and Oporto, after the funeral, went to the cathedral which is dedicated to St. Dominick, inſtead of going to their homes, and the grand maſter with them, where they held a ſhort conference.

'My good people,' ſaid don John, 'if you wiſh to have me your king, which I think my juſt right, and are reſolved to perſevere in it, you muſt now beſtir yourſelves, and begin by acting to ſhow your ſtrength. You have ſeen how Fernando Audere is working on the nobles to ſend for the king of Caſtille, to whom he ſays the crown of Portugal now belongs in right of my niece; but I maintain that it ſhall, if you aſſiſt me, be mine; for I have a much better claim to it in every way. I am a man, and the ſon of the good don Pedro who ſo gallantly reigned over you. My niece, the queen of Caſtille, it is true, is daughter to don Ferdinand, but not in legal marriage.' The Liſboners replied,—'What you ſay is true: we will have you

you for our king: no one elſe; and we will make you ſuch, let who will urge us to the contrary. Now, ſwear before us that you will be good and merciful, and maintain ſtrict juſtice, without flattering the ſtrong more than the weak; and that you will defend, with heart and hand, in conjunction with our aid, the rights and privileges of Portugal.'

'The king replied,—'My good people, I now heartily ſwear to follow what you have ſaid; but let us haſten to the mint, where John Fernando Audere reſides with Leonora d'Acunha; for I muſt have him put to death, as he has acted contrary to our intereſts, in ſupporting the claims of others than thoſe you wiſh well to.' 'We will do ſo,' they anſwered; 'for in truth he has behaved to you like a rebel, and ſhall die for it, that thoſe who are your enemies may take example.'

'On ſaying this, the Liſboners left the church of St. Dominick, in the whole about fifteen hundred, headed by their new king, and marched through the town towards the mint, where the queen and Fernando Audere, with their attendants, lived. On their arrival, they broke open the doors, and entered the lady's apartment by force. Leonora, much alarmed on ſeeing this crowd enter her chamber, threw herſelf on her knees before don John, and with upliſted hands begged his mercy, for that ſhe was not guilty of any miſdeeds; and, as for the crown or inheritance of Portugal, ſhe had never made any claim

to

to them, as many present knew, if they would be pleased to remember. 'I entreat, therefore, you and all the company to recollect, that it was contrary to my will and wish that don Ferdinand exalted me to be his wife and queen of Portugal.'

'Lady,' replied don John, 'fear nothing, for not the least harm shall be done you: we are not come hither with such intent, but to seek that traitor John Fernando Audere, and put him to death; and then the king of Castille may revenge it if he can, for he has been his advocate too long in this country.' Those who had been ordered to do so sought the knight, whom they discovered and slew: after this, no person was injured; but they all returned peaceably to their homes, and the king retired to the palace.

'After the death of Fernando, the lady Leonora, who had been queen of Portugal, was desirous of quitting Lisbon and retiring to her daughter in Castille; for she had been so much alarmed by the murder of Fernando, that she had almost died through fear. She would not therefore remain longer in Lisbon, where she had neither peace nor respect, but sent to ask leave of the king to depart, who readily granted her request, adding, she was in the right to go away. The lady set off with her attendants, and continued her journey until she came to Seville, where the king and queen of Spain resided. She found almost all the nobility of Spain assembled there in Parliament, on the subject of Portugal; for king John declared

clared that kingdom was now fallen to him by the death of don Ferdinand, who had ſo ſettled it when he married the lady Beatrice; and, the ſtates of the country having likewiſe agreed to it, he wanted their advice how to act.

'The lady Leonora was received with joy by the king and her daughter, and many inquiries were made relative to what was paſſing in Portugal. She told them truly every thing ſhe knew, and added, that the people would aſſuredly crown the maſter of Avis king, if not prevented; for that, don Fernando Audere having been always a zealous friend to the rights of Caſtille, they had murdered him. They readily believed what ſhe ſaid, as every appearance teſtified its truth.

'Some knights and barons of Portugal, from affection to the daughter of their late king, and to keep the ſolemn engagements they had entered into at her marriage, quitted their country, and joined the king of Caſtille at Seville, leaving behind their wealth and properties. Among them were, don Pedro Percyra, grand prior of St. John, don Henriquez Manuel, count of Cintra, Juan Texeda, chancellor to the queen, and about twenty more, which emigration at the moment greatly weakened Portugal, and much pleaſed the king of Spain, who was ſtrengthened thereby.

'The king of Spain iſſued a ſpecial ſummons throughout his realm for all perſons capable of bearing arms, from the ages of fifteen to ſixty,

to

to haſten to Seville; for he was determined to enter Portugal with a force ſufficient to conquer it and make it his own. His commands were obeyed; and there were aſſembled before Seville upwards of ſixty thouſand men of every deſcription.

'Lorenzo d'Acunha, on hearing that his wife, whom the late king of Portugal had raviſhed from him and made his queen, was arrived in Caſtille, waited on ſome of the king's council by whom he was beloved, and aſked their advice in the following terms: 'My lords and aſſured friends, have I any means to obtain poſſeſſion of my wife, who has left Portugal and is now in Seville? I know that Ferdinand took her by force, and againſt her inclinations. He is, as you know, dead; and in juſtice, therefore, I ought to have back my wife: tell me, then, how I ſhould act.' They replied,—'Lorenzo, there is not any chance of your ever having her again; for you would riſk too much, and debaſe the honour of the lady, as well as that of the queen of Caſtille, and eſtabliſh her baſtardy. You ſee, that our king is determined to conquer Portugal, and add it to his crown, as appertaining to him in right of his queen. Take care not to muddle more by your claims what is already troubled enough, for you will be put to death if you perſevere. You may judge yourſelf what may be expected, if you prove the queen a baſtard, which we maintain in this country to be falſe, and that ſhe was born in legal marriage

marriage by a diſpenſation in due form from the pope.'

'What had I beſt do, then?' ſaid Lorenzo. 'The beſt way for you to act is to ſet out inſtantly for your eſtate in Portugal, and leave the lady Leonora with her daughter: we ſee no other means of ſafety for you.'

'On my troth, I believe you adviſe me like real friends,' anſwered Lorenzo. He only ſtaid three days after this converſation in Caſtille, and, having ſecretly packed up his things, rode off in haſte to Portugal, where he waited on the maſter of Avis, ſaying he was come to ſerve under him, for he acknowledged him his king.

'Don John was rejoiced at this, made him governor of Liſbon, and reſtored to him all his property. Thus, as I have related to you, my lord, was the fortune of Lorenzo d'Acunha reſtored to him.'

The duke of Lancaſter took great pleaſure in this converſation with Lawrence Fongaſſe, for he ſpoke French well, and the matter concerned him nearly. He was anxious to learn as much as poſſible, and, with great kindneſs, ſaid,—'Lawrence, ſpeak out boldly: I have not for theſe two years heard any foreigner ſo explicit, and all you ſay appears truth itſelf. Continue, therefore, I beg of you; for the king of Portugal writes me word, you are the only perſon who can give me the fulleſt information of what has happened in that country.'

'My

'My lord,' returned the ſquire, 'there have been few deeds of arms done in Caſtille and Portugal but on occaſions when I have been an actor in them; and, ſince it pleaſes you that I continue my narration, I will do ſo.

'King John of Caſtille aſſembled his forces as ſpeedily as he could, and marched with a great power before Liſbon, prior to the coronation of the king, in order to alarm the inhabitants and make good his claim to the kingdom. He advanced to Santaren, which is on the borders, and halted there two days. The garriſon and townſmen, alarmed at his numbers, opened their gates, and ſurrendered themſelves to him. When he had taken poſſeſſion and re-garriſoned the place, he marched to Leyria*, which is a very ſtrong town, and ſurrounded it. Leyria was attached to the Spaniſh intereſt, for the town formed part of queen Leonora's dower; and, at the firſt attack of the king of Caſtille, it inſtantly ſurrendered. Having left there a ſtrong body of men at arms, he advanced to Valenza d'Alcantara, and laid ſiege to it. He ſent to tell the townſmen to humble themſelves before him and receive him as their

* Leyria. Froiſſart calls it Tuy; but Tuy is a town of Spain, on the oppoſite ſide of the river Minho to Valencia. There muſt be ſome miſtakes; for the king of Spain, on leaving Seville, marches to beſiege Liſbon. He comes to Santaren: ſo far is well: but from thence he turns off to Leyria and Valenza d'Alcantara; and, when the battle of Aljubarota takes place, the Portugueſe march from Guimaraens to combat the Spaniards.

lord. The citizens replied, by adviſing him to march away to Liſbon, adding, that as ſoon as they ſhould know he had gained that town by affection or force, they would ſend him the keys of Valenza. This anſwer being agreeable to the king of Spain, he marched away. Another town called Serpa, which the king wiſhed to gain, made a ſimilar anſwer. Other towns did the ſame, ſo that he took the road to Liſbon; for he imagined, if he could conquer that city, he would ſoon maſter the remainder of the country. Wherever the king marched, he carried his queen with him, to ſhew the Portugueſe that it was in her right he claimed the crown, and that he had a juſt cauſe for ſo doing.

'Don John of Caſtille arrived with his whole army before Liſbon, and by his manner of forming the ſiege plainly ſhewed he would not break it up until he had it in his power. He menaced the maſter of Avis, who was within the town, that if he could take him, he would put him and all the other rebels to an ignominious death.

'The army of don John was very numerous; and the Caſtillians and the French, who had come to his aſſiſtance, had ſo cloſely ſurrounded Liſbon, that no one could come out or go in without danger of being taken. When any Portugueſe were made priſoners by the Caſtillians in a ſkirmiſh or otherwiſe, their eyes were torn out, their legs, arms or other members were cut off, and in ſuch maimed ſtate they were ſent back to Liſbon and bid tell their town's folk that they had been ſo treated in deſpite of the Liſboners and their maſter of Avis, whom

whom they were ſo eager to crown king; and that they would keep the ſiege until they had won the town by ſtorm or famine, when they would ſhew mercy to none, but put all to death, and give up the city to fire and flame.

'The Liſboners, however, did not revenge themſelves ſo cruelly; for, whenever they made any priſoners, their king afforded them every comfort and did not ſend them back with hurt of any ſort. This made many of the army ſay, he was a gallant fellow thus to return good for evil.

'During this ſiege of Liſbon, which laſted upwards of a year, there were every week two or more ſkirmiſhes, in which many were killed and wounded on both ſides. The town was beſieged by ſea as well as by land; and the beſiegers had plenty of all things, for proviſions came to them from different parts of Spain.

'The Spaniards made one courſe up to the very gates of Liſbon: when Lorenzo d'Acunha ſallied forth out of the barriers with his pennon, having the arms of Acunha borne before him, accompanied by many gallant friends, and excellent deeds of arms were then done with lance and dart.'

'By my faith, Lawrence,' ſaid the duke of Lancaſter, 'of all the arms, the Caſtillians and your countrymen uſe, I love the dart the beſt, and like to ſee it uſed: they are very expert at it; and I muſt ſay, that whoever they hit with it, unleſs ſtrongly armed, he will be pierced through.' 'Indeed, my lord, you ſay truly: for I ſaw more bodies transfixed at theſe aſſaults than I ever wit-

neſſed before in my life. We loſt one whom we much regretted. Lorenzo d'Acunha was ſtruck with a dart that paſſed through his plates, his coat of mail and jacket, though ſtuffed with ſilk, and his whole body, ſo that he was felled to the ground. The ſkirmiſh ceaſed on account of the dead knight; and thus was the lady Leonora made a widow, in one year, of both her huſbands.

'Lorenzo d'Acunha was much lamented, my lord, for he was valiant in arms, and prudent in council. After his death, his couſin called la Pouuaſſe d'Acunha, was appointed governor of Liſbon. He made three or four ſallies on the Spaniards, in which he was victorious.

'The ſiege of Liſbon was continued to the great diſmay of the inhabitants; for no ſuccour ſeemed likely to come to them from any quarter. When their hopes began to fail of help from England, the king was adviſed to embark for that country, as their ambaſſadors had brought intelligence thence that aſſiſtance would be ſent; and that your grace would bring reinforcements.' 'In God's name, that is very true,' replied the duke of Lancaſter; 'for I was on the point of ſailing, having every thing prepared, when the war in Flanders broke out. The men of Ghent called on England for aid; and they had given to them all, or at leaſt the greater part, of thoſe troops which I was to have led into Portugal. The biſhop of Norwich carried them with him beyond ſea, and thus retarded the expedition to Portugal.' 'I vow to God, my lord,' ſaid the ſquire, 'we in Liſbon

Liſbon thought there had ſomething happened in England to prevent your coming to us. We managed, however, as well as we could, and bore up againſt the power of the king of Caſtille, which was not ſmall; for he had upwards of ſixty thouſand men on ſea and land, and menaced daily to deſtroy us without mercy, and burn Liſbon to the ground.

'During this ſiege of Liſbon, a lord of our country called d'Acoſta, did us a notable piece of ſervice, and gained by it great renown. He freighted and armed twenty galleys at Oporto with good men at arms and proviſion, with which he put to ſea, and by the grace of God, having a favourable wind to ſecond their exertions, paſſed through the Spaniſh fleet, conſiſting of one hundred great veſſels, that were laying at anchor before Liſbon, ſo opportunely that, whether they would or not, he arrived in the port with all his galleys unhurt, carrying with him four of the enemy's veſſels which he had conquered. The inhabitants were very much rejoiced at the ſucceſs and arrival of the lord d'Acoſta.'

'By my faith,' ſaid the duke, 'this lord d'Acoſta did you indeed a great ſervice. Now, Lawrence, relate to me how this ſiege was raiſed, for I am well ſatisfied with your converſation.' 'My lord,' replied the ſquire, 'the ſiege laſted, as I have ſaid, upwards of a year; for the king of Caſtille had ſworn he would never break it up until Liſbon were under his obedience, or until ſome more powerful prince ſhould force him to it.

'Conſidering what happened, the king of Caſtille religiouſly kept his vow of not breaking up the ſiege, unleſs forced to it by a more powerful lord, as I will explain. A moſt deſtructive peſtilence burſt out in his camp, ſo that perſons died ſuddenly whilſt in converſation with each other. Upwards of twenty thouſand were carried off by this plague; which ſo much alarmed the king, that he was adviſed to break up the ſiege, and retire to Santaren, or elſewhere, and diſband his army until the diſorder ſhould be checked. He conſented to this very unwillingly; for he had ſolemnly ſworn he would never leave the place until he had won it by fair or foul means; but he was forced to it by the principal lords in his army, who preſſed him to march to Santaren.

'My lord, we Portugueſe have always thought, and have pubicly ſaid, that the Almighty, to afford us aſſiſtance, had, out of his grace, ſent this peſtilence among our enemies; for thoſe in the city wherein we were incloſed never felt the ſmalleſt attack from any ſuch ſickneſs, nor did we loſe a man.

'Our king when he ſaw the Caſtillians marching away, made the townſmen and garriſon of Liſbon arm, and, ſallying out on horſeback, fell on the rear of thoſe who were not in good array, broke their ranks, killed and wounded great numbers, and captured many of their ſtores. He alſo iſſued a proclamation, that no one, under pain of death, ſhould touch or carry into Liſbon any of the proviſion the Spaniards had left in their camp, but that every thing ſhould be burnt, that the town might

might not be infected. All the proviſion and ſtores were given up to the flames; but I believe, whereever any money and plate were found, better care was taken of them.

'The king of Caſtille, on his arrival at Santaren, which is on the borders of his realm, remained there for ſome time. He made the moſt earneſt ſolicitations to France for ſuccour, but more particularly to Gaſcony, Béarn and the county of Foix, whither he ſent three horſes laden with nobles of Caſtille and florins, as an advance to knights and ſquires, for he well knew he could not by any other means induce them to quit their caſtles or country.

'The courage of the barons and knights of Portugal was much exalted when they found the king of Caſtille had retired from Liſbon, which he had beſieged for upwards of a year; but more eſpecially the commonalities of Oporto, Ourique and Coimbra. They took counſel together, and inſtantly determined to crown the maſter of Avis king; for they had, through their love and good pleaſure, already raiſed him to that honour, ſaying it was the common wiſh of the country, and that God would that he ſhould be crowned, for he had diſplayed his virtues to the Caſtillians.

'It was proclaimed throughout the country that all intereſted ſhould be at Coimbra on a day, when the maſter of Avis would be crowned king of Portugal. All the ſe[illegible] and, conſidering the ſize of the country, a numerous body, attended the coronation was performed by the biſhops and p[illegible]

great pomp, in the cathedral church of Coimbra dedicated to St. Mary, on Trinity-day in the year of grace 1384. The king on that day created ſixty knights, as well of his own as from foreign countries.

'There were magnificent feſtivals at Coimbra, which laſted for two or three days. The barons, counts, knights and ſquires, who held fiefs of the crown, renewed their homage; and the king ſwore to govern the realm with juſtice, and to maintain all their rights. The people ſwore to obey faithfully the king and his heirs after him, whether male or female, and never to deſert him until death. Thus paſſed the coronation of the king of Portugal.

'The king of Caſtille, on hearing that the Portugueſe, and particularly the commons, had crowned the maſter of Avis king, and had ſworn to him homage and fidelity, was more penſive than before; for he did not imagine they would have been in ſuch haſte to crown him, as he had in his army ſo many of the nobles of Portugal. He ſaid to thoſe near him,—'I ſee clearly that by fair or foul means I muſt conquer what is my own, if I wiſh to poſſeſs it; for there will never be any peace between Caſtille and Portugal until the Portugueſe have made amends for what they have done.'

'After the coronation, the king went to Liſbon, where he remained, and attended diligently to the affairs of his kingdom, at the ſame time endeavouring to acquire the affection of his ſubjects. He ſent knights and ſquires to all his garriſons on the

the frontiers of Spain, for the king of Caſtille was now returned to Seville.

'The king of Portugal ordered ſir John Ferdinand Portelet, an able and valiant knight, full of enterpriſe, to Treutouſe *, and with him two excellent knights, ſir Vaſco d'Acoſta, and his brother ſir William d'Acoſta, and two hundred good men at arms well mounted. Sir John de Pereira was ſent with fifty lances to the caſtle of Leyria, near Aljubarota; ſir John James de Saules to Valença, which is oppoſite to the town of Tuy; this place had turned to the Spaniards when they marched to Liſbon, and in it was a numerous garriſon of Caſtillians and French.

'Sir Nondeck Radigo, was ordered to Serpa with fifty ſpears: to Oporto, Coimbra and Ourique the king ſent none, for he knew the loyalty and attachment of thoſe cities to his cauſe. Thus, as I tell you, were all the ſtrong places garriſoned, and there were frequent ſkirmiſhes with one or the other; in which, as muſt happen, ſometimes one ſide gained, ſometimes another. There was, in particular, one celebrated ſkirmiſh between the garriſon of Treutouſe and the Caſtillians.'

'Ah, Lawrence,' interrupted the duke, 'do not paſs this over ſlightly, but tell me all the particulars; for my greateſt delight is the hearing of gallant deeds of arms.' 'My lord,' replied the

* Treutouſe. It is thus in all my copies, MS. and printed; but I cannot correct the miſtake otherwiſe than by ſuppoſing it to mean Eſtremoy.

ſquire,

ſquire, 'it is but right I ſhould do ſo; for I well remember every thing that happened, as I was banner bearer on that day to ſir John Ferdinand de Portelet, governor of Treutouſe, who began the ſkirmiſh.

'You muſt know, my lord, that the king of Caſtille had placed good garriſons in all his towns on the frontier, who, by collecting at times together in one body, overran and much haraſſed the country. It happened that ſeven Spaniſh captains of high birth and valour, aſſembled a body of three hundred lances, well mounted, with which they entered Portugal, and made a great booty of pillage and priſoners. They might have returned into Caſtille had they pleaſed, but their pride and preſumption urged them to boaſt they would ſee what the garriſon of Treutouſe was made of. The whole country fled before them, ſo that the governor was appriſed of the invaſion. He called for his arms, on hearing the enemy were in the plain, and had his trumpet ſounded, to alarm the knights in the town. All armed in haſte, and, mounting their ſteeds, ſallied out of their place, when, on muſtering themſelves, they amounted to full two hundred ſpears. They drew up in good array, and ſhewed plainly they were in earneſt to meet their enemies. On demanding from the runaways, who were haſtening to ſave themſelves in Treutouſe, where the Caſtillians might be found, they anſwered, not far off; as they were only marching at a foot's pace, on account of the quantity of booty they had with them.

'Sir

'Sir John Ferdinand Portelet was rejoiced on hearing this, and ſaid to his companions, the brothers d'Acoſta,—'My lords, let us advance, I beg of you; for I will never enter town nor caſtle until I have ſeen our enemies, to offer them battle; and by every means attempt to recover their pillage and the priſoners they are carrying away.' He then added,—'Lawrence, diſplay my banner; for we ſhall ſpeedily come up with the enemy.' I inſtantly obeyed this order; and, as we rode on at a good pace, we ſoon ſaw the duſt the Caſtillians made. We took advantage of the ſun being in our back and overtook them.

'The enemy, perceiving us, halted, and drew up in good array, placing their priſoners and plunder on one ſide. We were ſo near each other, that we could ſpeak to them, and noticed three banners and four pennons; and we judged they were full three hundred, all well mounted. I will tell you the names of the captains: there were ſir John Radighos de Caſtenans, a baron of Caſtille, ſir Silvegrefie d'Allenes, ſir Adioutalle de Toledo, ſir Joutaile de Caſſelle, ſir John Radighos, de Deure and Dioſtenſes d'Agouſe.

'When we were thus near to each other, both parties diſmounted, and the horſes given to the pages and varlets; but before any blow was ſtruck, there was a parley held by the leaders of each troop; and, being preſent, I heard every thing that was ſaid. Sir John Portelet began, by aſking them why they had thus invaded and plundered Portugal? Sir Adioutalle replied, that they had a right to invade

vade any country they choſe, to chaſtiſe rebels; for they had been commanded by their lord, the king of Caſtille, who was the true lord of Portugal, to enter that country, and plunder it; and, the inhabitants being rebels, they were carrying them away as priſoners. 'You ſhall not carry them away, nor their property neither,' ſaid ſir John Portelet; 'for we will take them from you, as you have not any right thus to act. Do you not know that we have a king of our own, who has ſworn to govern juſtly, and puniſh all thieves and robbers? I therefore order you, in his name, to lay down all that you have pillaged in Portugal, or elſe we ſhall fight with you, having juſtice on our ſide.'

'Sir Adioutalle de Toledo anſwered,—'As for our priſoners, we will not for certain yield them up; but, in regard to other matters we will conſider of it.'

'The Caſtillian chiefs then withdrew to hold a conſultation, and plainly ſhewed, by what followed, that although they had thus vauntingly advanced to Treutouſe, they would readily have been excuſed a battle. After a ſhort delay, they ſaid, that in regard to the cattle, they had determined to give them up, as well as the horſes, and other things which would embarraſs them on their return, but that they would keep the priſoners. 'Oh but,' replied the Portugueſe, 'it ſhall not be ſo; for you muſt give up all, or fight.' The battle, upon this, commenced very ſharply, for neither party ſpared itſelf; they were both active, and the field of battle was extenſive. Javelins were thrown with

ſuch

ſuch force, that whoever they ſtruck, unleſs well armed, was knocked down. Many gallant deeds were done; and ſir John Fernando Portelet made good uſe of his battle-axe, as did the two brothers Acoſta make great havoc with theirs.

'The Caſtillians, on their part, behaved admirably; and their fighting and puſhing laſted upwards of three hours, without either ſide being ſhaken. It was wonderful how they could remain ſo long a time under arms, but their anxiety to leave the field with honour ſupported them; and I muſt ſay, that both nations are hardy in fight, more particularly when they feel the neceſſity of it. They were ſo long and ſo equally engaged, that any one who had ſeen them would not have known which ſide would be victor. However, thanks to God, no banner nor pennon was damaged in our army; but thoſe of our adverſaries began to give way, which greatly encouraged our men, who were now as freſh as ever, and, ſhouting out 'St. George for Portugal!' broke through the ranks of the Caſtillians, and began to knock down on all ſides. Such deadly ſtrokes were given with battle-axes and leaden mallets, that they were completely defeated. The pages, ſeeing the diſcomfiture of their maſters, took advantage of their horſes and galloped off. Of the ſeven captains only one eſcaped, and he was indebted for it to his good page, who, perceiving him hard preſſed, brought him a horſe, and, having mounted him, led him out of the battle, ſo that Joutalle de Caſſelle that day received a moſt eſſential ſervice from his page. All the reſt were put

to

to death, for quarter was ſhewn to none. Thus were the Caſtillians defeated by ſir John Fernando Portelet, though they were at leaſt two to one more in numbers, on a Wedneſday, in the month of October, near the town of Treutouſe, in the year of our Lord 1384.

'When all was over, and the field clear, our men mounted their horſes, and gave liberty to all whom the Caſtillians had captured: they alſo allowed them to carry away as much of the plunder as they pleaſed; but the cattle, which amounted to more than eight hundred, were driven to the town, as a ſupply for the garriſon. On re-entering Treutouſe, we were received with ſo much joy, that the inhabitants could not make too much of us, for having freed the country of its enemies. All who heard of this battle praiſed us moſt highly for our valour.

'We had another ſucceſsful engagement in the plains of Seville: but I will firſt relate the moſt brilliant ſucceſs that has, for theſe two hundred years, ever happened to a king of Portugal, and which our king had, about four months ago, when the enemy were upwards of four to one, all of them excellent men at arms and of high renown, which makes our victory the more glorious. But I fancy, my lord, you have heard enough of this battle before; and, being now ſufficiently tired, I had better end the converſation

'Oh by no means,' replied the duke: 'continue your narrative, for I ſhall cheerfully liſten to you. In truth, I have in my houſehold a herald, called

called Derby, who was, as he ſays, preſent at this battle, and tells us that our countrymen performed wonders; but I doubt it much, for I cannot conceive that any numbers could have been there, as my brother Cambridge, when he left Portugal, brought back all the Engliſh and Gaſcons who had accompanied him. There are many heralds ſuch liars, they exaggerate or depreciate according to their affections or diſlikes; and, ſince theſe boaſted exploits cannot have been forgotten, I ſhall thank you to be very particular about them, whenever you ſpeak of that part of the battle.'

'On my troth,' anſwered Lawrence, 'there were not with our king, at the battle of Aljubarota, more than two hundred foreigners, including Engliſh, Gaſcons and Germans. The ableſt captains among them were two Gaſcons, and a German from the duchy of Gueldres, whoſe names were, ſir William de Montferrand, and Bernardon, Gaſcons, and Albert the German. There were a few Engliſh archers; but I never heard any name of note except of two ſquires, Northbury and Hartſel, who aſſiſted at the council whenever the king had it aſſembled.'

'Now relate to me how this famous battle was fought,' ſaid the duke. 'Willingly,' replied the ſquire, 'for it was for this I was ſent hither. I have already told you, that before the coronation of our king at Coimbra, the king of Caſtille had raiſed the ſiege of Liſbon, on account of the great mortality in his army, and had retired to Santaren. He was greatly mortified when he heard of the coronation

coronation of king John, in oppoſition to his claim on Portugal in right of his queen, and was adviſed to ſend every where for men at arms, eſpecially to France, as the French had before been their allies in the wars of his father the late king. His council ſaid; 'My lord, you only want one ſucceſsful battle over the Portugueſe to have them under your ſubjection; for that kingdom is, as you know, much divided in regard to the perſon to whom the crown belongs. You have now with you its principal nobles, who have acknowledged your right, which is aſſuredly of great importance to your war. If you march to combat this baſtard of Portugal, whom the commonalty have crowned king, before he be reinforced by the Engliſh, you will conquer him, and the country be your own, for it is not of that extent but we can ſoon overrun it.

'The king of Caſtille ſent envoys to France, Poitou, Brittany, Normandy and many other places where he thought it probable men at arms would come to ſerve him, but more particularly into Béarn, whence indeed numbers of gallant knights and ſquires did come. From that country there were more than from any other; and the army amounted, when at Santaren, to upwards of ſeven hundred lances and thirty thouſand Spaniards, all well mounted, and eager to do us miſchief.

'News was ſoon carried to Portugal of the great power the king of Caſtille had collected, and that he intended to renew again the ſiege of Liſbon.

The

The king held a council to conſider how he ſhould act; when the nobles declared for marching to meet their enemies, and not ſhutting themſelves up in any town of the kingdom; for, if they were incloſed, they muſt remain ſo, and the Caſtillians in the mean time, would overrun the country at their eaſe, and in the end ſtarve them into ſubmiſſion. But if they marched, and poſted themſelves advantageouſly to wait the enemy, it would be the moſt adviſable; 'for,' added they, 'we know, my lord, that you will never enjoy peaceably the crown we have placed on your head before you have had a battle, and have once or twice defeated your adverſary, the king of Caſtille, and all the force he can bring againſt you. If we gain the victory, the kingdom is yours; and, ſhould we be overthrown, it will ſtill remain in ſuſpenſe. It is by far more honourable to ſeek our enemies than wait to be ſought for; and many are the inſtances where the firſt have had the advantage over the latter. We therefore adviſe you to ſend to all from whom you expect aſſiſtance.'

'You ſay well,' replied the king, 'and I will follow what you recommend.' He iſſued his ſummons for his ſubjects to meet him at Oporto on a fixed day; but you muſt know that thoſe to whom he had thus written neither obeyed nor paid any attention to his orders: for the country were not unanimous in their choice of a king, and thus diſſembled to ſee which of the two kings would be victorious. Indeed, ſome of the nobility had even

joined the king of Caſtille, thinking his the juſter cauſe.

'Notwithſtanding this, the king of Portugal aſſembled all the forces he could muſter at Coimbra. To ſay the truth, thoſe of the higheſt birth and of the greateſt weight in Portugal were attached to him through perſonal affection: he had full five and twenty hundred knights and ſquires, and about twelve thouſand infantry. He appointed the count de Novaire conſtable, and ſir Aleyne Pereira marſhal of the army, both of them able and valiant knights, who knew well how to lead an army to battle.

'They left Coimbra and took the road towards Aljubarota at a gentle pace, on account of their heavy baggage following them. They ſent forward their ſcouts to obſerve the diſpoſition of the enemy's army. Sir John Fernando Portelet had not joined the king, but remained in the caſtle of Ourem, five leagues from Aljubarota, not knowing, I believe, that an engagement was ſo near at hand.

'I can readily ſuppoſe the king of Caſtille had early notice of our march, which gave him and his army, as they ſhewed, much pleaſure. He was adviſed to haſten to meet us and give us battle, eſpecially by the Gaſcons, who were eager for it, and requeſted to lead the van, which they obtained. Sir William de Montferrand, who was on our ſide with forty lances, had told us truly when he ſaid, 'Be aſſured you will ſoon have a battle,

ſince

ſince you have Gaſcons oppoſed to you, for they like nothing better.' The king lodged on the morrow with his whole army at Leyria, two leagues from Aljubarota, where, on the next day, we came and fixed our quarters. The Caſtillians followed us, and encamped on the ſpot we had left, for they well knew by their ſcouts our line of march.

'My lord, the Portugueſe have always had great confidence in God, and in the good fortune which would attend them at Aljubarota; and it was for this reaſon they had now there encamped themſelves.' 'Aye,' ſaid the duke, 'pray tell me why.' 'Willingly,' anſwered the ſquire.

'In former days, Charlemagne, who was king of France and emperor of Germany and Rome, and a great conqueror, overthrew, at Aljubarota, ſeven infidel kings, ſlaying upwards of one hundred thouſand of theſe unbelievers, as it is fully related in all our old chronicles. By this defeat, he won the city of Coimbra, and all Portugal, which he turned to the Chriſtian faith: and, in honour of this victory over the infidels, he erected and endowed a large monaſtery for black monks, the revenues of which they were to receive as long as they ſhould reſide in Portugal.

'There was alſo another celebrated battle at this place about two hundred years ago, which was won by the brother of a king of Caſtille, called the count of Portugal; for at that time there were no kings of Portugal. There fell out a deadly hatred between theſe two brothers, cauſed

by a diſpute in the diviſion of the countries, ſo that there was not any chance of peace without the event of a battle being firſt tried. The Portugueſe were as warm in the matter as the count, and declared they would rather be put to death than become ſubject to Caſtille. They therefore marched, in battle-array, to meet the king at Aljubarota. The king of Caſtille came thither in ſuch force that his army amounted to more than ten times the Portugueſe, whom he held in the utmoſt contempt. The battle took place on the plains of Aljubarota, and was very bloody; but, in the end, the Portugueſe gained the day, defeating the enemy and making their king priſoner. By this capture, the count of Portugal obtained whatever terms of peace he deſired, and the boundaries of the two kingdoms were firmly eſtabliſhed.

'The Portugueſe, ſenſible that their victory was owing to God's mercy, in enabling ſo few to overcome ſuch numbers, were deſirous to illuſtrate their country, and had their count crowned king by the nobles and prelates, in the city of Coimbra. They carried him in triumph throughout the kingdom with a crown of laurel on his head, as a token of victory, like to that which kings were uſed to wear in former times, and ever ſince that day Portugal has had its king: and know, my lord, that the Portugueſe, ſooner than be under the ſubjection of the Caſtillians, would look for the moſt diſtant relation of any of their kings who had died without iſſue.

'When

'When king John of Portugal was arrived at Aljubarota, all theſe old ſtories were told him. While the conſtable and marſhal were arranging their men, ſir John Fernando de Portelet arrived with his forty lancemen, having left the caſtle of Ourem that morning. His coming gave pleaſure to all, and he was poſted in the diviſion near the king's perſon.

'When our army was drawn up in proper array, and we were waiting for our enemies, whoſe numbers and ſtate the ſcouts had been ſent to obſerve, the king advanced to the centre, and, having ordered ſilence, ſaid,—'Gentlemen, you have crowned me your king: now ſhew your loyalty; for, ſince I am on the plains of Aljubarota, I will never retreat until I have combated our enemies.' The army unanimouſly anſwered,—'My lord, we will remain ſteady to you, and, be aſſured, will never turn our backs.'

'The two armies approached, for the Caſtillians were deſirous of battle, as they plainly ſhowed. Our ſcouts were ordered to examine them narrowly, as to number and order, that we might take meaſures accordingly. They were more than three hours returning, and we began to fear we had loſt them. At laſt they came back with particular accounts of the enemy's ſtrength. They ſaid there were in the van battalion at leaſt ſeven thouſand men armed from head to foot, in the handſomeſt manner poſſible: in that of the king, thirty thouſand horſe, and all well armed. When our men and their leaders heard the numbers of

the enemy, and how they were marching, the van battalion being two leagues in advance of the main body with the king; for the Gaſcons and foreigners were not on good terms with the Caſtillians; they reſolved to keep in a compact body, within their intrenchments, and to form two wings, with the men at arms, who amounted to about twenty five hundred, in the rear of the wings. You would there, my lord, have witneſſed a fine order of battle, and men ſhewing great courage. The king commanded, under pain of death, that no one ſhould be ranſomed, if the day were ours, but that all ſhould be put to death. This was wiſely done; for our lords ſaid, that if we occupied ourſelves in making priſoners, we ſhould think of nothing elſe, and riſk the loſs of the day: it will be much better to combat vigorouſly, than attend to the dictates of avarice by making priſoners, and ſell ourſelves, like men, whoſe all is at ſtake.

'Our enemies now were advancing in as cloſe order as poſſible juſt before us. They diſmounted, and, driving their horſes away, laced their plates and helmets very neatly, and, with vizors down and preſented lances, marched to us very boldly: in good truth, there were the flower of chivalry and ſquireſhip, as was very apparent.

'Between us was a ditch, not ſo wide but a knight could leap over it, which was of ſome advantage to us; for our wings lanced very ſharp darts as the enemy attempted to paſs it, which wounded ſeveral ſo ſorely, they were checked in the attempt.

When

When they had all croſſed it, the battle raged; for they imagined the king of Caſtille, with the main body, were cloſe behind them, but it was not ſo, and they were all ſlain before his arrival. The manner of this happening was as follows:

'They were ſurrounded, as it were, by thoſe called the commonalty of our country, who, coming on their rear, attacked them ſharply with axes, whilſt our men at arms, that were quite freſh, charged them in front, and drove them back into the ditch they had croſſed. In leſs than half an hour the buſineſs was over, and all this body, of four thouſand good men at arms, were put to death: none were ranſomed; for whenever any of ours wiſhed to ſhew quarter to his priſoner, he was ſlain while in his hands. Thus did this ſlaughter befal the van battalion: not one eſcaped.

'Shortly after, the king of Caſtille and his army, conſiſting of thirty thouſand men well mounted, came up, but it was now night, and they were ignorant of the loſs of their van. They were deſirous of diſplaying their horſemanſhip, and, by way of gallantry, more than five hundred leaped over the ditch; but, my lord, not one of them ever returned back again. Among them that were thus ſlain were ſome of the higheſt rank, the moſt anxious for deeds of arms, and ſeveral of thoſe noblemen who had left Portugal to ſerve under the king of Caſtille. Our men, on ſeeing the enemy thus defeated, advanced, and croſſed the ditch, now nearly filled with water, from the number of

bodies which had choked up the current; they then mounted their horſes and purſued the enemy, who had taken flight; but it laſted not long, for it was ſoon ſo dark they were afraid of following them raſhly, leſt they might fall into ſome ambuſcades: beſides, they were not ſo well mounted as the Caſtillians. Had it been otherwiſe, they would have ſuffered more, and their king been either ſlain or made priſoner; but the obſcurity of the night, and the badneſs of our horſes, ſaved them.

'I will now mention thoſe who fell in this battle; and to begin with the Portugueſe who had changed ſides, don John Alphonſo Serole, the grand prior of St. John in Portugal, don Alvares his brother, with ſeveral more. Of Spaniards don Pedro of Arragon, ſon to the conſtable; don Juan, ſon to don Tello, and don Fernando, ſon to don Sancho, both brothers in law to the queen; Diego Manrique, preſident of Caſtille; the marſhal Carillo; the admiral Juan de Fovar; Pedro Alvarez Pereira, grand maſter of Calatrava; the grand maſter of St. James, with others. Of French, ſir John de Ris; ſir Geoffry de Ricon; ſir Geoffry de Partenay; ſir Eſpaignolet d'Eſpaign; ſir Reginald de Soulier, ſurnamed Limouſin, marſhal of the king of Caſtille's army. From Gaſcony and Béarn lay dead, the lord de Béarn; the lord de Mortan; the lord de Bringolles; ſir Raymond d'Eurach; ſir Berchand de Varuge; ſir John Aſolme; ſir Raymond de Valentin; ſir Adam de Mouraſſe; ſir Meuvent de Sarement;

ſir

ſir Peter de Sarembiere and many more, to the amount, in all, of upwards of twelve hundred gentlemen, knights and ſquires.

'I will now name what nobles of our party were ſlain: firſt, the count de Novaire, conſtable of Portugal; Galopes Portelet; Peter Portelet, and Agalip Fernando Portelet his brother, who was by the king's ſide, at his bridle: le Pouuaſſe d'Acunha; Egeas Toille de Podich d'Aſſue; Vaſco Martin de Melx; his ſon Vaſco Martin, who was killed that day by a dart paſſing through his body. There were alſo among the dead Gouſſelenas de Merlo; Alve Porie, marſhal of the army, an excellent knight; Radighos Pereira; John James de Salve; John Radigos, couſin to the king; Daminondeſque; Radigo; Radiges de Valeronceaux, and Mendignes de Valconſiaux.' He was here interrupted by a burſt of laughter from the duke; and Lawrence aſked, 'My lord, what makes you laugh ſo heartily?' 'Why! have I not ſufficient cauſe? for I never in my life heard ſuch a catalogue of ſtrange names as you are repeating.' 'On my faith,' replied the ſquire, 'theſe are all proper names in my country, and we have ſome you would think more ſtrange.' 'I believe it,' ſaid the duke; 'but, Lawrence, what became of the king of Caſtille after this defeat? Did he never attempt to rally his men? Did he ſhut himſelf up in any of his towns? Did not the king of Portugal purſue him?' 'Ho, my lord, we remained that night on the field of battle, and until noon the next day, when we marched to Leyria and from thence to Coimbra.

'The

'The king of Caſtille fled to Santaren, where he entered a barge, and, followed by fourteen others, embarked on board a large veſſel, and went by ſea to Seville, where the queen was. His army was diſperſed in all directions, ſo that it was impoſſible to rally them, for their loſs had been great. They will be long before they recover it: indeed they never will, unleſs ſuccoured by the king of France *. It is to counterbalance this alliance

* Don John, in commemoration of this event, founded the beautiful monaſtery and church of Batalha. It has been magnificently deſcribed by Mr. Murphy; and I copy a note from his publication, page 28.

'The following account is given of this battle by Emanuel de Faria, in his hiſtory of Portugal:

'The king of Portugal, underſtanding the approach of the Caſtillians, drew together his forces from Coimbra, Oporto and other places, and marched out of Guimaraens to give them battle. On the morning of the 14th Auguſt 1385, he entered the plains of Aljubarota, where he knighted ſeveral gentlemen. The Caſtillians at firſt intended to march directly to Liſbon, yet, after ſome conſultation, they reſolved to engage. The forces on both ſides were very unequal: the Caſtillians are reported to have been thirty thouſand ſtrong, and the Portugueſe but ſix thouſand five hundred, beſides having ſome local diſadvantages. The ſun was ſetting when theſe two unequal armies engaged. The Caſtillians, at the firſt charge, broke the vanguard of the Portugueſe; but the king coming up, his voice and example ſo re-animated his men that in leſs than an hour the multitudinous army were put to the route. The king of Caſtille, who headed his troops, being troubled with an ague, was forced to take horſe to ſave himſelf. Moſt of the Portugueſe who ſided with Caſtille, and who were in front of the army, were put to the ſword, for no quarter was given them. The royal

alliance that the king of Portugal and his council have ſent us hither, to renew and ſtrengthen our connection with the king of England and your lordſhip.' The duke ſaid,—'Lawrence, you ſhall not leave this country without having ſatisfactory anſwers to carry back; but tell me about the engagement you hinted at, which the Portugueſe had with the Spaniards near Seville, for I love to hear of feats of arms, though I am no great knight myſelf.'

'After the glorious victory which king John had gained at Aljubarota, he returned in triumph to Liſbon, not hearing of the Caſtillians or French collecting in any bodies to continue the war.

'The king of Caſtille, with his queen, left Seville, and went to Burgos, and the remains of his army ſhut themſelves up in different caſtles and towns. The garriſons of both ſides frequently made war on each other. It chanced that the count de Novaire, conſtable of Portugal, entered Caſtille, not far from Seville, having with him about forty ſpears: he intended riding to Valverde, having heard there were in that town two hundred men at arms. When arrived at the barriers he made a diſplay of his ſtrength, as a ſignal that he

---

royal ſtandard of Caſtille was taken, but many pretending to the honour, it could not be decided by whom. The number of the ſlain is not exactly known, though very great on the part of the Caſtillians. Of their cavalry three thouſand are ſuppoſed to have periſhed, and many perſons of diſtinction. This is the famous battle of Aljubarota, ſo called, becauſe it was fought near a village of that name.'

wiſhed

wiſhed for battle; but thoſe within remained ſtill, and ſeemed to pay no attention to him, though they were ſecretly arming and preparing themſelves.

'Our people, having paraded before the place ſome time in vain, turned about and began their retreat homeward at a foot's pace. They had not marched a country league before they ſaw the whole garriſon of Valverde following them full gallop. They were led by a gallant man at arms, Diego de Padilla, grand maſter of the order of St. Jago, who brought them handſomely to the charge. The conſtable and his men inſtantly diſmounted, and and gave their horſes to the pages and varlets: having graſped their ſpears, they drew up in a line. The Caſtillians, who were very numerous, wanted to capture their horſes and varlets, ſaying, 'Let us ſeize their horſes: we cannot more effectually diſtreſs them than to make them return on foot:' but the grand maſter would not conſent. 'We will not do ſo,' ſaid he: 'if we have the horſes, we will have their maſters alſo; for we will fight them, and therefore diſmount: they cannot withſtand our numbers.'

'While the Caſtillians were thus conſulting, our men, without paying any attention to their horſes, ſeeing a ſmall brook in their rear, croſſed it quietly and poſted themſelves on its bank. The enemy, having obſerved this, repented not having inſtantly made the attack; but, thinking they could ſoon defeat them, they began the combat by lancing darts, and whatever elſe they could lay hands on,

ſo

ſo that it laſted from noon to evening. The conſtable, ſeeing the enemy had expended all their artillery, and had not wherewithal to fight, croſſed the rivulet with his banner diſplayed and attacked them with lances. They were ſoon broken and in diſorder; for, being tired by the weight of their armour, they could not withſtand our charge, nor, from weakneſs, aſſiſt each other.

'They were ſpeedily vanquiſhed: the grand maſter with ſixty more were left dead on the field, and the reſt took to flight, We recovered our horſes, and many others which the Caſtillians had rode thither. What is your opinion, my lord? did not our men behave gallantly?' 'That they did, by my faith,' replied the duke.

'By ſuch feats of arms, and conqueſts, have the Portugueſe entered the career of glory, ſince the acceſſion of don John to the crown of Portugal. They ſay God is with them, and is their help, in maintaining their rights. Indeed, my lord, they never fail declaring that God is on their ſide; for ever ſince the death of king Ferdinand, in all matters of arms they have been concerned in, whether of conſequence or not, victory has been for them. The count de Foix, who at this day, is one of the moſt potent and wiſe lords, ſays, as we have been told by thoſe from his country, that fortune ſides with Portugal; and that, if his knights would have liſtened to him, they would never have left Béarn to fight againſt the king of Portugal.

'My lord, our king is wiſe and prudent: he fears and loves God, and has an affection for the church,

church, which he exalts as much as in his power. He is frequently on his knees in his oratory and hearing divine ſervice, and is very ſtrict in never being diſturbed whilſt at prayer, whatever may be the buſineſs. He is a learned man, and underſtands ſome little of aſtronomy; but, above all, he will have juſtice adminiſtered impartially in his dominions, and the poor maintained in their rights. I have now, my lord, told you every thing, according to your requeſt, relative to our king and country, as I was charged to do when I left it; and you will give me ſuch anſwers as may be agreeable to you.'

'Lawrence, I before told you, and I now repeat it, that your coming hither and your converſation have given me great pleaſure. You ſhall not depart without having every point of your demands fully anſwered.'

'I thank you, my lord,' replied the ſquire. Upon this, the doors of the apartment were thrown open, and wine and ſpices were brought in, of which the ambaſſadors having partook, they departed to their hôtel of the Falcon to repoſe themſelves.

END OF VOL. VII.

Brooke, Printer,
Paternoster Row.

Works lately published by LONGMAN, HURST, REES, *and* ORME, *Paternoster-row.*

A HISTORY of IRELAND, from the earlieſt Accounts to the Accompliſhment of the Union with Great Britain in 1801. By the Rev. James Gordon, Rector of Killegny in the Dioceſe of Ferns, and of Cannaway in the Dioceſe of Cork. In Two Volumes Octavo, price 1l. 1s. in Boards.

The HISTORY of EGYPT, fram the earliest Accounts of that Country till the Expulſion of the French from Alexandria, in the Year 1801. By James Wilſon, D. D. In Three Volumes Octavo, price 1l. 4s. in Boards.

The HISTORY of the REIGN of GEORGE III. to the TERMINATION of the late WAR. To which is prefixed, a View of the Progreſſive Improvement of England, in Proſperity and Strength, to the Acceſſion of his Majeſty. By Robert Biſſet, LL. D. Author of the Life of Burke, &c. &c. &c. In Six Volumes Octavo, price 2l. 12s. 6d. in Boards.

"Dr. Biſſet's Hiſtory is highly praiſe-worthy—it narrates with greater detail and completeneſs than Macfarlane, Belſham, or Adolphus, the tranſactions of the preſent reign. The ſtyle is natural, yet elegant; the information abundant, yet ſelect; the criticiſm loyal, yet liberal. In ſhort, it appears to us more likely than any of the rival hiſtories to annex itſelf to Hume and Smollett, as the regular and generally received continuation of the Hiſtory of England."—*Annual Review, Vol.* 2.

"We muſt recommend this as a work replete with both information and amuſement—and while it is free from any ſpirit of party, it breathes throughout a firm attachment to tempered freedom and the ſpirit of the Britiſh Conſtitution, a ſincere regard for the Britiſh character, and a juſt veneration for the rights of reaſon, of religion, and morality." *Literary Jour. Vol.* 3 *p.* 405.

*** For other very favourable Accounts of this Work, ſee the Monthly Review for October, and the Britiſh Critic for November, 1804; and the Anti-Jacobin Review for November, 1803.

LETTERS on the STUDY and USE of ANCIENT and MODERN HISTORY. Containing Obſervations and Reflections on the Cauſes and Conſequences of thoſe Events which have produced any conſpicuous Change in the Aſpect of the World, and the general State of Human Affairs. By John Bigland. The Third Edition. In One Volume, Demy Octavo, embelliſhed with an elegantly

gantly engraved Head of the Author. Price 10s. 6d. in Boards.

"Mr. Bigland displays in this Volume a well cultivated and comprehensive Mind. His style is generally correct; his information is extensive: and the many pertinent remarks and inferences with which he has enriched this summary of general history, meet our cordial approbation."

Monthly Review, June 1804.

"We are well pleased with this publication, which, founded on the authority of the most celebrated historians, exhibits a very useful manual for the younger student. It is written with great vigour and perspicuity; nor do we see any sentiments obtruded, against which, as they relate either to religion or politics, it appears necessary to caution the young reader. It is a useful undertaking, well executed."—*British Critic, July*, 1804.

"This little historic digest, collected from most unexceptionable authors, is executed with great neatness and propriety. The divisions, or "periods," are clear and indiscriminated. The different historic details are distinct and perspicuous; the reflections just and appropriate. On the whole, the letters claim our approbation."—*Critical Review, July* 1804.

LETTERS on the MODERN HISTORY and POLITICAL ASPECT of EUROPE: exhibiting the Nature, Causes, and probable Consequences of the grand Contest between Great Britain and France, and the political Circumstances of the different Nations which compose the European System. Illustrated with Historical and Geographical Observations. By John Bigland. In One Volume Octavo. Price 7s. in Boards.

"The letters in this volume are sixteen in number, and they discuss, in turn, almost all the great questions which can be agitated by politicians of the present hour. The principles of the author are every where sound and patriotic, and his knowledge is surprisingly extensive." *British Critic, May* 1805.

NOTES on the WEST INDIES, written during the Expedition under the Command of the late General Sir Ralph Abercromby: including Observations on the Island of Barbadoes, and the Settlements captured by the British Troops upon the Coast of Guiana. Likewise Remarks relating to the Creoles and Slaves of the Western Colonies, and the Indians of South America; with occasional Hints regarding the Seasoning, or Yellow Fever of Hot Climates. By George Pinckard, M.D. of the Royal College of Physicians, Deputy Inspector-General of Hospitals to his Majesty's Forces, and Physician to the Bloomsbury Dispensatory. In Three Volumes Octavo, price 1l. 10s. in Boards.

NOV 17 1954